



Gc  
929.2  
K81061k  
2025011

M. L

REYNOLDS HISTORICAL  
GENEALOGY COLLECTION



ALLEN COUNTY PUBLIC LIBRARY



3 1833 01306 2366







30

THIRTY ANCESTORS

OF

RICHARD HENRY KOCH

1939

---

J. F. SEIDERS — PRINTING  
POTTSVILLE, PENNA.

P 733

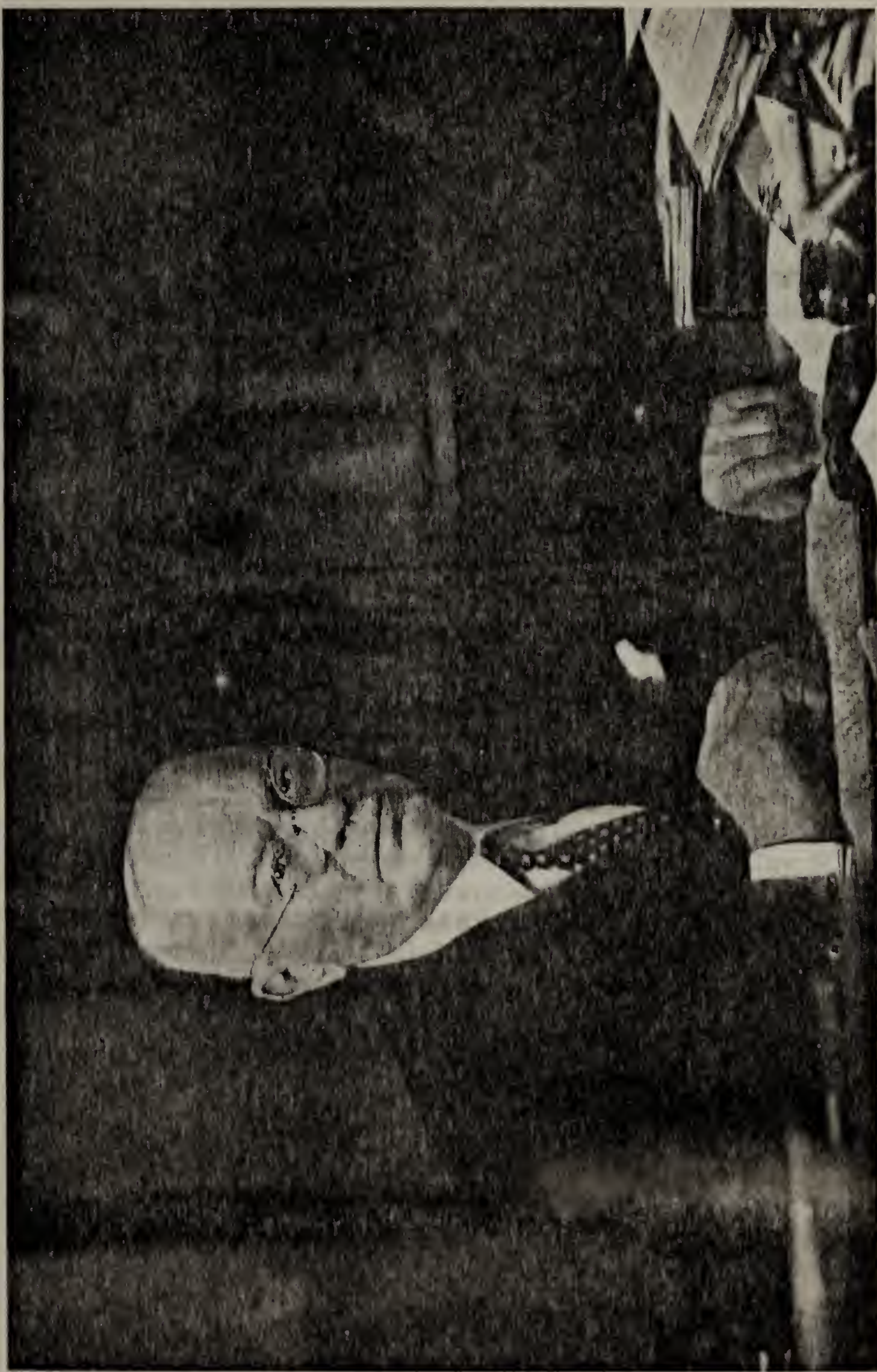
78-8172 9





Rec'd Jan 5-1979

2025011



TAKEN IN MY OFFICE NOVEMBER 2, 1937





ADDITIONAL LIST OF DISTRIBUTEES OF  
"THIRTY ANCESTORS OF RICHARD HENRY KOCH"

- 98 LOUISE KOCH WAITT.....Philadelphia, Pa.  
99 MRS. S. ELIZABETH SEIBERT.....Tamaqua, Pa.  
100 MRS. WILLIAM FISHER.....Quarryville, Pa.  
101 HARRY WARREN KOCH, JR.....Philadelphia, Pa.  
102 MYSELF.  
103 MRS. EDGAR S. GARMEN.....Coatesville, Pa.  
104 MR. GEORGE N. LEFEVRE.....Strasburg, Pa.  
105 HISTORICAL SOCIETY OF MONTGOMERY COUNTY..Norristown, Pa.  
106 HON. FREDERIC A. GODCHARLES.....Milton, Pa.  
107 HON. RALPH BEAVER STRASSBURGER.....Norristown, Pa.  
108 HON. C. HALE SIPE.....Butler, Pa.  
109 REV. P. C. CROLL, D.D.....Womelsdorf, Pa.  
110 ASHLAND FREE PUBLIC LIBRARY.....Ashland, Pa.  
111 THE INSTITUTE OF AMERICAN GENEALOGY.....Chicago, Ill.  
112 ILLINOIS STATE HISTORICAL LIBRARY.....Springfield, Ill.  
113 THE NEW YORK GENEALOGICAL & BIOGRAPHICAL SOCIETY  
New York City, N. Y.  
114 NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY LIBRARY.....Evanston, Ill.  
115 THE NEW YORK HISTORICAL SOCIETY....New York City, N. Y.  
116 THE UNIVERSITY OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK,  
NEW YORK STATE LIBRARY.....Albany, N. Y.  
117 JOSEPH F. SEIDERS, *Printer*.....Pottsville, Pa.  
118 THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY.....New York City, N. Y.

NOTE:—Nineteen more copies than I had ordered were published. Hence this additional list of distributees.

RICHARD HENRY KOCH.



## CONTENTS

<i>Chapter</i>	<i>Page</i>
INTRODUCTION .....	5
I. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND .....	10
II. TEN FAMILY STOCKS .....	43
III. THE KOCH FAMILY .....	48
IV. THE NEUFANG FAMILY .....	89
V. THE BOCK FAMILY .....	122
VI. THE BOLICH FAMILY .....	146
VII. THE BECK FAMILY .....	162
VIII. THE LAUK FAMILY .....	182
IX. THE BECKER FAMILY .....	201
X. THE FISHER FAMILY .....	204
XI. THE HAIN FAMILY .....	217
XII. THE FAUST FAMILY .....	223
XIII. MY DEPARTED WIFE .....	236
XIV. MYSELF .....	268
LIST OF DISTRIBUTEES .....	325





## INTRODUCTION

Because many suggestions and requests have been made that I set down in permanent form, for the information of my kinsfolk, the knowledge that I have respecting many of my ancestors in America, I shall here attempt to do so. Hitherto I have not had at my command the time required for the purpose. They desire only facts, and the facts will be stated as I personally know them, or as I actually believe them, to be true. Family tradition is not always reliable; but, when documentary evidence can be found to sustain it, the tradition may be properly committed to paper for preservation. To find that documentary evidence took much time. It is scattered far and wide and is generally found in small bits.

But, before I commit to paper what I learned by tradition and found by investigation, I will write a chapter on Historical Background. The cumulative happenings, theories, and causes that finally resulted in the discovery of America and its colonization, and more especially the colonization of Pennsylvania under the proprietary government of William Penn and the treaties there made with the Indians have, for many years, been of gripping interest to me. And since every one of my immigrant ancestors was a pioneer in the settlement of Pennsylvania, I think some reference to those cumulative happenings, theories, causes, discoveries, settlements, and treaties will constitute a proper beginning for this book. Therefore, the first chapter will be so headed.

One evening, long ago, when sitting in my library with my wife, I said to her: "Annie, I'd give one hundred dollars apiece for the full name of each of my unknown ancestors running back through ten generations." But,





after a moment's further consideration, I said to her: "I've changed my mind." "Why?" came her prompt interrogatory, and I replied: "Because that would not only make me a pauper, but it would keep me such for the balance of my lifetime." "How so?" she asked, and I said, "Because ancestors multiply in geometrical progression and in the tenth generation ago I had 1,024 ancestors, in the ninth generation I had 512, in the eighth 256, and so on down to the one immediately before me when there were only two, my father and mother, my nearest and last ancestors. So you see that in ten generations I have had 2,046 ancestors, and that, at one hundred dollars apiece for the name of each one that I know nothing about, it would cost me over two hundred thousand dollars."

If it so happened that no relatives were inter-married among the 1,024 ancestors in the tenth generation before me, I would have commingled in myself at least 1,024 different strains of blood. Well could the Psalmist exclaim, "I am fearfully and wonderfully made!"; and Socrates could say, "Know thyself." It just seems impossible for anyone to know himself, because he knows not enough of his forbears to say what is combined in his own being and true character. When I hear a person boast of what he would have done immediately under a given set of circumstances, I am somewhat amused because no one can tell just what he would have done in another one's place when suddenly confronted by an unknown and unexpected set of circumstances.

Whence we have come is not really as important as whither we are going; but, as one may be entirely certain respecting the former for some generations before himself, there is no harm in endeavoring to ascertain one's pedigree as far back as possible. The highest authority exists for interest in genealogy: Genesis: Chapters 5, 10, and 11; Matthew: 1, and Luke: 3.





But all people do not seem to take much interest in their genealogy. I have known some who could glibly give the pedigree of a certain horse or a dog but did not know the maiden names of their own grandmothers. Man o' War's pedigree is said to be known through twenty-two generations—a period of two hundred and fifty years. I worked hard to trace mine back for about two hundred and seventy-five years with only six generations before me, and, even at that, I cannot give all the names.

I know nothing to be ashamed of respecting any of my ancestors; hence, this effort to gratify those whose suggestions and requests prompt me to write this book. A certain Irishman said, "A family tree is a fine thing if it's not too shady." And as my knowledge and research have disclosed nothing shady, I venture to proceed in the hope that my experience may not be like the man's who said he "had spent \$2,000.00 to have his ancestors looked up and then spent \$2,000.00 more to have them shut up."

I know the names of only ten family stocks among my ancestors, four on my father's side and six on my mother's side. My inability to read German well and my very limited knowledge of its vocabulary prevent my looking up old original church, legal, and other records in that language, in order to gain knowledge of births, baptisms, marriages, deaths, wills, estates, etc. But what is found in the following pages may suffice as a beginning for those who desire to make further investigation in this country and in Europe.

Chapter II will briefly show my descent from the ten family stocks that have thus far become known to me. I will then treat each stock in a separate chapter first by taking my paternal side and then my maternal side, to be followed by a chapter on my departed wife, and ending with a chapter on myself. I shall name collateral





relations only as far as I have learned of them in a rather casual way, or shall name sources for such information. Many of my requests for information remain unanswered; otherwise, some lists would be longer. The incomplete family trees may induce others to make them complete respecting any particular omitted kinsfolk in whom they have an interest.

This book is prepared for free distribution among such of my relatives as suggested the writing of it and among a few others who, I think, will be interested in its contents and may desire to have it for preservation. With all such the frequent use of the pronoun in the first person will be excused.

In the back of this book will be found a number of blank pages so that each personal owner of this book may note genealogical data which are of special interest to himself, or herself, but are not found in this book. For instance, my granddaughter, Suzanne Boone, can note her genealogy on her father's side, and, if she ever has descendants of her own, their names, dates of birth, marriages, etc., can be noted for a number of generations to come. In this book she will find the names of sixty-three of her ancestors—that is, the names of thirty of my ancestors, the names of twenty-nine of my wife's ancestors, the names of myself, my wife, and her parents. By adding, on the said blank pages, the names of her father's ancestors, as far as he can get them, she may have the names of more than eighty ancestors. Similar owners can do the same thing respecting the several lines from which they spring.

The time and money spent in the preparation of this book are considerable, but my compensation is complete in the satisfaction that I have done the work as well as I can with the data obtained. It is, therefore, cheerfully submitted for the perusal and charitable criticism of





those whose interest in it induces them to give it their attention.

I have not done all the work alone when gathering the data found in this book, and I must express my appreciation for the help that I have received from my dear old friend, the Rev. P. C. Croll, D.D., of Womelsdorf, Pennsylvania, and Mrs. Mary Owen Steinmetz of Reading, Mrs. Catherine S. Lee of Lebanon, Miss Lottie M. Bausman of Lancaster, Mrs. Claire R. Shirk of Harrisburg, and Charles F. Snyder of Sunbury, who are well-known genealogists in their respective localities.

RICHARD HENRY KOCH.

Pottsville, Pa.

February 18, 1939.



## CHAPTER I

### HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

To the learned, this chapter may seem both commonplace and out of place. However, the reason for its being here will be found stated in the second paragraph of the Introduction in this book.

Marco Polo, a native of Venice, travelled in Asia in the latter part of the thirteenth and in the early part of the fourteenth centuries, and his reports greatly stimulated trade between the people of Europe and Asia and added considerable to the knowledge of geography. But, after the fall of Constantinople in 1453 and its occupation by the Turks, trade from the rest of Europe into Asia and the East Indies through territory of the Ottoman Empire was completely stopped. Another route to the East then became the subject of great interest to many tradesmen and certain navigators. For years attempts to sail around Africa and to the East failed because the frequent and severe storms in that quarter of the world could not be weathered by navigators with the ships in that period of time.

The earth was then supposed to be flat, save by a few, of whom Christopher Columbus was the most ardent. He was born in Genoa ten to eighteen years before the fall of Constantinople, and in early life had become a navigator. Study and observation convinced him that the earth is spherical and not flat, and that a western route to the East Indies was open across the Atlantic Ocean. He tried in his own country to get the means to fit out an expedition for the purpose of sailing across the Atlantic Ocean to find the East Indies, but failed. He then sought help in Portugal, England, and Spain. In Spain his theory of the shape of the earth received some atten-







tion, and Ferdinand, the King, referred the matter to a council of learned men for investigation and report. The council was composed mostly of ecclesiastics, with the result that the ecclesiastics refuted the theory of the world's roundness by the citation of numerous Scriptural texts. The council concluded that the theory and scheme of Columbus were foolish and impossible, and "not becoming great princes to be engaged in on such slender grounds." So Columbus decided to apply to the King of France. On his way to France he fell in with the confessor of Queen Isabella of Spain and so deeply impressed him that the priest induced Columbus to forego his trip to France and to apply to Queen Isabella for help. Columbus was very religious and so was the Queen, and he suggested to her confessor and to the Queen the idea that the peoples found by sailing to the west should be Christianized. The Queen supplied Columbus with the means to put himself in condition to appear at Court. All at the Court were opposed to his views excepting the Queen, and she finally said that she would undertake the enterprise herself and would pledge her crown jewels to raise the necessary funds for the purpose. This was in 1492, seven years after Columbus had first begun to seek aid in Spain for his contemplated expedition.

He set sail from Spain on Friday, August 3, 1492, and, on Friday, October 12, 1492, landed on an island of the Bahama group and named it San Salvador. After his return to Spain in 1493 the news of his discovery spread rapidly over Europe, and many expeditions of discovery went, within the next hundred years, from various countries in Europe, across the Atlantic in search of a short route to the East and to the East Indies, or to explore whatever land might be found in the west. Others sought a route to the East by sailing round South Africa or north of Europe.





John Cabot and his son Sebastian, Venetians by birth, but residents of England, discovered the continent of North America before the end of the fifteenth century; and Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese navigator, sailed round the Cape of Good Hope in 1497 and thence over the Indian Ocean to Calicut on the western coast of the India Peninsula. The report of the latter's achievement was made in Europe upon his return in 1499, after an absence of twenty-six months. One of the later expeditions sent from Portugal accidentally discovered the coast of Brazil when on its way round South Africa. So that, within the space of less than a decade, the theretofore unknown West Indies and the continents of North and South America became revealed to the civilized world.

Fifteen years before the fall of Constantinople, Johann Gutenberg, a German, invented the art of printing. In consequence thereof, the reports of all subsequent discoveries soon found their way into print, and the movement toward the Reformation was so greatly stimulated and advanced that, within a quarter century after the first discovery by Columbus, Martin Luther nailed his ninety-five theses on the door of the Schlosskirche in Wittenberg on the 31st of October, 1517, and the greatest religious controversy in the history of the human race took its beginning. It was subsequently followed by the worst fanaticism and religious persecution that have marked and marred the history of Europe. Taken together, the invention of printing, the discovery of America, the courageous action of Martin Luther, and the circumnavigation of the earth by an expedition which sailed from Spain in 1519 under the command of Ferdinand Magellan, suggest to my mind that day when the Creator said, "Let there be light; and there was light." A new world had certainly come to the knowl-





edge of mankind—a spherical one instead of a flat one, and many human minds became unfettered.

After the fall of Constantinople the Portugese, who as early as 1454 had been attempting to get to the East by sailing round the south of Africa, were by Pope Nicholas V given the sole right to discover and trade in that direction; and, soon after Columbus made his report in 1493, Pope Alexander VI gave to the Spanish, because of the discoveries of Columbus, the sole right to discover and trade west of a line running north and south one hundred leagues to the west of the Azore Islands. However, such edicts did not stop the Italian, the French, the English, the Dutch, and other navigators from making voyages to the west on their own account.

The Spanish carried on their explorations and colonizations within the tropics and some degrees north of them and found their way far into the interior of the American continent. Espejo, in 1582, settled Sante Fe, New Mexico, one hundred years before William Penn's first colony settled at Philadelphia. Jacques Cartier, sailing under the French flag, found the St. Lawrence River in 1534 and the next year went up that stream as far as the present site of Montreal. His discovery resulted in French colonization along the St. Lawrence River early in the next century, and Frenchmen later found their way to the Great Lakes, to the Allegheny, the Ohio, the Illinois, and the Mississippi Rivers, arriving at the last in 1680. Mexico had become a Spanish province as early as 1521. Colonization by the Spanish and French long preceded that of the English who established their first permanent settlement at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607, under the leadership of Captain John Smith. Two attempts by Sir Walter Raleigh to establish settlements at Roanoke Island as early as 1585 and 1587 had failed.

In 1608 the Dutch East India Company enlisted the services of Henry Hudson, an English navigator, to find





a passage to the East by going round the north of Europe. His instructions were positive and definite, but, when he arrived at Nova Zembla, he was stopped by the ice, and, then, in disregard of his instructions, he turned to the west and finally arrived on the coast of Maine. But he kept on until he discovered the Hudson River, the Delaware Bay, and part of the coast of Virginia in 1609. In consequence of Hudson's reports, the Dutch, who were traders, artisans, and seamen, established a trading post on Manhattan Island in 1614. They traded with the Indians by exchanging trinkets, etc., for furs.

A number of English refugees in Holland, learning of the Delaware Bay and River, concluded to settle in that part of the world, but they received no encouragement in Holland for fitting out an expedition. They then returned to England and fitted out two ships there, but one of them was soon found unseaworthy. The other one, the *Mayflower*, proceeded alone for the Delaware Bay; but, because of storms and poor navigation, the "Pilgrim Fathers" landed on the coast of Massachusetts in December, 1620, and formed the first permanent English settlement on that part of the continent. It is impossible to conceive how different might be the history of America and even of the world, as we now know it, if the Pilgrim Fathers, who started for the shores of the Delaware, had landed there instead of on the inhospitable coast of Massachusetts. Had the territory of Pennsylvania been settled by the colonists who sailed on the *Mayflower*, such a set of circumstances as combined to bring into the world James Otis, Samuel Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Daniel Boone, and a host of others, and later Abraham Lincoln, would hardly have arisen, and America's history might have been very much changed. I feel sure, at least, that such a small affair as the writing of this book would never have taken place.





In 1623 the Dutch determined to colonize in America, and their expeditions landed on both the North and South Rivers, later known as the Hudson and Delaware Rivers. They, therefore, founded their colonies between two English colonies, namely, the one at Jamestown, Virginia, and the other at Plymouth, Massachusetts. But, because of the discoveries of John and Sebastian Cabot in 1497 and 1498, the English claimed all the territory which the Dutch had taken into their possession.

Although the population of Sweden at that time averaged only about three to the square mile, some Swedes, with a few Finns, took it into their heads to colonize in America for the purpose of carrying on the fur trade and raising tobacco and silk, and in 1638, six years before William Penn was born, said Swedes and Finns, and possibly a few Germans, planted a colony near the present site of Wilmington, Delaware. In the course of a few years they settled at different places along the Delaware River, extending from the site of New Castle in Delaware to some distance above the mouth of the Schuylkill River in Pennsylvania; Upham, now known as Chester, being their uppermost village or town.

But, as the Dutch claimed that territory because of Hudson's discoveries, there was much dispute and controversy between those rival claimants until, finally in 1655, the Dutch went with sufficient force to the Swedish settlements and completely subjugated them. At that time the total number of Swedes, Germans, and Finns in the country amounted to only a few hundred and their conquest by the Dutch was simple and easy. Finally, in 1664, the English, who were envious rivals of the Hollanders in the commercial world, warred against them and came to America in comparatively great force and subjugated the Dutch without even firing a shot, and the New Netherlands and New Amsterdam became New York. The Dutch had called their territory New Neth-





erlands, and the town on the Island of Manhattan they had called New Amsterdam. The conquest of the Dutch by the English ended Dutch colonization in North America, and the English then controlled the Atlantic coast between the lands claimed by the French in the north and the lands claimed by the Spanish in the south. The conquest of the Dutch in America was in the early part of the war between Holland and England. Later, the Dutch fleet, under the command of Heer Van Opdam, was defeated in 1665, on the North Sea off Lowestoft, by Sir William Penn, Admiral of the English fleet under the Duke of York. That war ended two years later when a Dutch fleet sailed up the Thames River and compelled the English to seek peace.

Charles II, King of England, appreciating the services of Admiral Penn, then deceased, and acknowledging a debt of sixteen thousand pounds due to his estate, in settlement thereof, gave to William Penn, the son and heir of Admiral William Penn, a Royal Charter as proprietary and governor of the Province of Pennsylvania, so named in honor of William Penn's father, although the grantee strongly objected to the name because of its seeming vanity. The charter was signed on the 4th of March, 1681. The purpose of the grant appears in part, at least, in the preamble of the charter, as follows:

Whereas, our trustie and well beloved subject, William Penn, Esq., son and heir of William Penn, deceased, out of a commendable desire to enlarge our English Empire, and promote such useful commodities as may be of benefit to us and our Dominions, as also to reduce savage natives by gentle and just manners to the love of civil society and Christian Religion, hath humbly besought leave of us to transport an ample colony unto a certain country hereinafter described, in the parts of America not yet cultivated and planted; And hath likewise besought our Royal Majesty to give, grant, and confirm all the said country, with certain privileges and jurisdictions requisite for the good government and safety of said country and colony to him and his heirs forever.





The grant was for:

All that tract or part of land in America, with all the islands therein contained, as the same is bounded on the East by Delaware River from twelve miles distance Northward of New-Castle Town unto the three and fortieth degree of Northern latitude if the said River doth extend so far Northwards; But if the said River shall not extend so far Northward, then by the said River so far as it doth extend, and from the head of the said River to the Eastern bounds are to be determined by a meridian line to be drawn from the head of the said River unto the said three and fortieth degree, the said lands to extend Westwards five degrees in longitude, to be computed from the Eastern Bounds, and the said lands to be bounded on the North by the beginning of the three and fortieth degree of Northern Latitude, and on the South by a circle drawn at twelve miles distance from New Castle Northwards, Westwards unto the beginning of the fortieth degree of Northern Latitude; and then by a straight line Westwards to the limit of longitude above mentioned.

By virtue of said charter William Penn, his heirs, and assigns, became the true and absolute proprietaries of all the lands and dominions above indicated, and they were given free, full, and absolute power

to ordeyne, make, Enact and under his and their Seales to publish any Lawes whatsoever, for the raising of money for the publick use of the said province, or for any other End apperteyning either unto the publick state, peace, or safety of the said Countrey, or unto the private utility of perticular persons, according unto their best discretions, by and with the advice, assent and approbacon of the freemen of the said Countrey, or the greater parte of them, or of their Delegates or Deputies, whom for the Enacting of the said Lawes, when, and as often as need shall require. Wee will, that the said William Penn, and his heires, shall assemble in such sort and forme as to him and them shall seeme best, and the same Lawes duely to execute unto, and upon all people within the said Countrey and limitts thereof.

Further provision was made in the charter for the Government of the Province, but the exercise of the law-making power was subject to approval by the Privy Council, and a transcript or duplicate of all laws had







to be transmitted and delivered within five years of the making thereof to the Privy Council, for the time being. The charter, *inter alia*, said:

And if any of the said Laws within the space of six months after they shall be so transmitted and delivered, be declared by us, our heirs and successors, in our or their Privy Council, inconsistent with the sovereignty or lawful prerogative of us, our heirs or successors, or contrary to the faith and allegiance due to the legal Government of this realm, from said William Penn or his heirs, or of the planters or inhabitants of the said Province, and that thereupon any of the said laws shall be adjudged and declared to be void by us, our heirs or successors, under our or their Privy Seal, that then and from thence forth such Laws concerning which such judgment and declaration shall be made shall become void, otherwise said laws so transmitted shall remain and stand in full force according to the true intent and meaning thereof.

Penn's motives were to found a free commonwealth on liberal and humane principles, to provide a home for persecuted Quakers of whom he was a leader. His first colonizers sailed from England in October, 1681, and landed at Upham, now the city of Chester, on the 11th of December. His cousin, William Markham, who was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of the Province, preceded the colonists and arrived at Boston in June, whence he went to New York and, as early as August, to the settlements then existing along the Delaware River.

Penn wrote a letter to the colonists saying: "I hope you will not be troubled at your change and the King's choice, for you are now fixed at the mercy of no Governor that comes to make his fortune great; you shall be governed by laws of your own making and live a free, and, if you will, sober and industrious people. I shall not usurp the rights of any or oppress his person." He later sent them a frame of government, dated April 25, 1682. It provided for a Provincial Council and General Assembly, and, for those days, was a form of government that appealed to men seeking freedom.





He appointed commissioners to select a site on the Delaware River and to lay out a city, for which he had conceived the name of Philadelphia. The winter of 1681-82 was so severe that nothing was done until after the river cleared itself of ice in the following spring. Then the site for the city was selected and the work of laying it out was begun by the commissioners. A piece of ground two miles long, extending from the Delaware River to the Schuylkill River, was selected, surveyed, and laid out to the width of a mile, extending from Vine Street to South Street. The plan was finished in 1683. By an Act of February 2, 1854, the boundaries of the city were extended so as to embrace the whole of the territory of the county of Philadelphia.

Penn came to Pennsylvania in 1682 and built for himself a little brick house in the city of Philadelphia in the center of the block bounded by Market, Chestnut, Front, and Second Streets, where it stood until 1884, when it was removed to Fairmount Park. Prior to sending his first colonists to the Province, he sold to certain first purchasers in England many thousands of acres of land whose locations were to be fixed later, and agreed with such purchasers to let them respectively have, as a small part of their purchases, lots in the city and the liberty to also receive a small section of land immediately outside of the city limits. The latter lands were called "Liberties," and those north of the city were called "Northern Liberties." The location of the remaining acreage of the first purchasers, which was to be ninety per cent thereof, was to be selected and fixed later elsewhere in the Province.

Soon after Penn obtained his Royal Charter he prepared a circular letter for the people of England, descriptive of the great advantages to be found by settlers in Pennsylvania. It was later translated into French, German, and Dutch, and widely distributed in





the countries where those languages were spoken. Penn had spent some time in France, Germany, and Holland years before 1681 and was well-known to many of the people in those countries. His circular soon had the desired effect in Germany. One group of Germans purchased from Penn's agents in Germany fifteen thousand acres of land on March 10, 1682. Another group purchased three thousand acres, June 11, 1683, and in May or June of that year Francis Daniel Pastorius purchased fifteen thousand acres, and soon set sail for Philadelphia, where he arrived on the 20th of August. He had only twelve German immigrants in his party at that time but was soon joined by others. Those Germans settled at Germantown. They were the first German colonizers in America. That was but the beginning of German immigration. So many Germans came here afterwards that, in 1717, James Logan, Secretary of the Province, remarked, "We have of late a great number of Palatines poured in upon us without any recommendation or notice, which gives the country some uneasiness, for foreigners do not so well among us as our own English people."

In September of that year, after three ship loads of unknown Palatines had landed in Philadelphia and became scattered in the Province, it was ordered "that the Naval Officer of the Port be required not to admit any inward bound vessel to an entry, until the master shall first give an exact list of all their passengers imported by them."

But the order of the Council was not complied with. So in 1727 an Act was passed requiring the masters of all vessels importing passengers from Continental Europe to make complete lists of such passengers, giving their names, nationality, and occupations, and further requiring all males aged sixteen years and upward to take and subscribe an oath of allegiance to the British







Crown, upon their arrival. A subsequent Act required each passenger also to take and subscribe to the oath of abjuration. A Naturalization Act had been passed in 1700, but was repealed by the Queen in Council.

Had the captains and masters of vessels complied fully with the law, their lists would now be of inestimable value. Most of their lists are still preserved, but very many of them disclose only part of the information that they ought to contain. The captains' lists that are still preserved and the lists of the signers of the oaths of allegiance and abjuration were published by the Pennsylvania German Society in three volumes in December, 1934. Nothing similar in kind or value to those three volumes has been heretofore published in this country. The work is entitled *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*. The number of German immigrants who could write their own names in the eighteenth century, as evidenced by the last two named lists, shows a degree of intelligence among those people that is surprising for their day and generation. They were not "Dumb Dutch"; they were intelligent and wise enough to go into the hinterland where the hard woods grew on ground underlaid with limestone and where they and some of their descendants became, and are today, the best farmers in America.

German influence gradually became a matter of much concern to the English people in the Province. So many had arrived that it was enacted, May 10, 1729, "That every person being an alien, born out of the allegiance of the King of Great Britain and being imported or coming into this Province by land or water shall pay a duty of forty shillings." But that law was soon repealed. In time, the great majority of the people who lived in what later became Berks County were Germans, and the language of those people persists even now in a great part of eastern Pennsylvania. However, not all Germans





came into the Province through the port of Philadelphia. Some of them entered through New York or ports south of Philadelphia and later came into Pennsylvania. Nor did all the Germans remain in Pennsylvania after they entered it; some went into provinces to the south, and later many others migrated to the west.

Although William Penn's Royal Charter made him, his heirs, and assigns, the sole and absolute proprietaries of all the land in the Province of Pennsylvania, he felt that the Indians who lived within the Province had, by natural right, a prior claim to the land, and he, therefore, ordered that no lands should be occupied by any colonists until the Indian title thereto had been first acquired by the proprietaries.

There were many tribes of Indians, but there were only two general kinds that made up the different tribes. Those general kinds were the Algonquin and the Iroquois. They differed in their languages and certain other respects. Those of the Algonquins who lived in New Jersey and in southeastern Pennsylvania were known as the Lenni Lenapi, or Delaware Indians. They consisted of three groups or tribes who were known as the Unami, or Turtle; the Unalachtigo, or Turkey, and the Munsee, or Wolf. The Wolf occupied the mountainous lands and were the most warlike. Lenni Lenapi means "original people," a race of human beings who are the same as they were in the beginning—unchanged and unmixed.

The Iroquois lived in the northern part of the Province and in New York. To them belonged the Senecas, Mohawks, Oneidas, Onandagos, Cayugas, and later the Tuscaroras. Those six tribes formed a powerful confederacy known among the white people as the Six Nations. As such Confederacy they assumed an overlordship in the affairs of the Lenni Lenapi. The Tuscaroras did not belong to the Confederacy until about 1712. They had





migrated from the south into the Province of Pennsylvania.

The purchases of lands from the Indians were numerous. The Dutch and the Swedes had made such purchases long before Penn's colonizers landed here. But it seems that, as new colonizers came, new settlements had to be made with the Indians; and, as the subdivisions of the Lenni Lenapi were numerous even among the general tribes mentioned, purchases became necessary from the chiefs of those smaller subdivisions or tribes. In a very long footnote beginning at page 105 in the Second Volume of *Smith & Reed's Laws of Pennsylvania*, one will find references to over thirty deeds and about nine treaties that figured in the acquisition of Indian titles in the Province of Pennsylvania. But I shall refer to only a few deeds and treaties in order to show how gradually colonization proceeded in Pennsylvania.

William Markham, Penn's first Deputy Governor, procured the first deed from the Indians on July 15, 1682. It was signed by five chiefs in their own behalf and in behalf of nine other chiefs, and, on the first day of the following August, that deed was endorsed by six other chiefs who had not been present when the original deed was executed by or on behalf of the fourteen chiefs. The first deeds all related to land in or near the vicinity of Philadelphia.

Penn's famous personal treaty with the Indians, which was made under a large elm tree that became a historical landmark, did not take place until June 23, 1683. That tree was blown down in a storm in March, 1810, and, many years ago, a grandson of the owner of the land on which the tree stood, when it was destroyed by the storm, gave me a chip of the tree. The tree was two hundred and eighty-three years old when it was destroyed.

The limits of the grants from the Indians were sometimes very indefinite, as, for instance, the deed of July







30, 1685, which was signed by five chiefs, was "for all the land beginning at the hill called Conshohocken on the River Manaiunk, alias Schuylkill, from thence extending a parallel line to Macopanackhan (Chester Creek) by a southwesterly course, and from the Conshohocken hill to the Pemmapecka, by the said parallel line northeasterly, and so up along the said Pemmapecka Creek, as far as the Creek extends, and so from thence northwesterly, back into the woods, to make up two full days' journey as far as a man can go in two days from the said station of the parallel line at Pemmapecka; as also beginning at the said parallel at Macopanackhan, and so from thence up said creek as far as it extends, and from thence northwesterly back into the woods to make up two full days' journey as far as a man can go in two days from the said station of the said parallel line at the said Macopanackhan."

Another deed, made October 2, 1685, signed by thirteen Indian Chiefs, conveyed the land extending from the north side of the Delaware between Duck Creek and Chester Creek "backwards as far as a man could ride in two days with a horse." On September 17, 1718, seven Delaware Chiefs, in order to clear up disputes, signed a deed of release "for all lands situate between the two rivers, Delaware and Susquehanna, from Duck Creek, to the mountains on this (the south) side of Lechay." That means all the land between said two rivers and south of what is now known as the South Mountain. The mountain in those days was called the Lechay, or Lehigh, Hills. Consequently, such places as the sites of Easton, Bethlehem, Allentown, Reading, Lebanon, etc., were not yet within Penn's purchases. The deed of release in 1718 settled the undefined boundaries which prior deeds had fixed by a man's journey on foot or with a horse through the woods for one or more days.





But some settlers did not confine themselves within the limits of the said purchases. They frequently settled upon lands reserved by the Indians and thereby created much dissatisfaction. Such was the case in the basin of the Tulpehocken Creek in Lebanon and Berks Counties, and later elsewhere.

In 1709 Queen Anne shipped to New York two thousand, eight hundred and fourteen German refugees who had come to England to escape poverty and persecution in their own country. They settled along the Hudson River and some of its branches. Their treatment as colonists was hard to be endured, and, in 1723, some of them found their way down the Susquehanna River as far as the mouth of Swatara Creek and thence up that stream and across the divide into the Tulpehocken basin, where they settled. Others from New York joined them later. Among the latter was Conrad Weiser, who came in 1729. I shall refer to Conrad again hereafter.

As the Tulpehocken lands were outside of the lands released in 1718, Sassoonan, Sachem of the Schuylkill Indians, in 1728, bitterly complained of the encroachments thereon, and the matter remained unsettled until after the arrival of Thomas Penn in 1732, when on the 7th day of September in that year, Sassoonan, Sachem of the Schuylkill Indians, and six other Delaware Sachems made a grant of land in the Schuylkill River basin consisting of all those lands situate, lying on or near the River Schuylkill or any of its branches, streams, fountains, or springs between the mountains called Lechay to the south, and the hills or mountains called Kekachtanemin (The Blue) on the north, and between the branches of the Delaware River on the east and the waters falling into the Susquehanna River on the west. The territory so described lies between the South Mountain Gap below Reading and the Blue Mountain Gap above Hamburg, and extends east and west of the





Schuylkill River, including the basins of all the creeks flowing into the Schuylkill River between said gaps.

The purchase just referred to was later ratified by several other Indian Chiefs, Sachems, or Kings, who had not been present when the deed was executed in 1732. But the Indians were still dissatisfied. The French had been instilling the idea of resistance into the minds of the Delawares, and, when the proprietaries failed to compose their demands, they complained to the Iroquois.

When Conrad Weiser was a boy, he had lived for about a year with the Mohawk Indians, had been adopted by them, was given an Indian name, and could speak their language. So when the deputies of the Five Nations in New York, in October, 1736, answering the complaint of the proprietaries, went to Philadelphia to make a treaty respecting lands in the Susquehanna basin, Conrad Weiser was present and acted as interpreter, and they executed a deed dated October 11, 1736. But on their way back to New York, those Indian Chiefs stopped several days with Conrad Weiser at his home at Tulpehocken; and he got them to sign a deed on October 25, 1736, "for all the lands lying within the bounds and limits of the government of Pennsylvania, beginning eastward on the river Delaware, as far northward as the said ridge or chain of endless mountains, as they cross the country of Pennsylvania, from the eastward to the west." The endless mountains mean the Blue Mountain. They further agreed "never to sell any of their lands to any but the proprietors, or children of William Penn." Some of my ancestors settled on the land described in the deed that Conrad Weiser obtained from the Indians, October 25, 1736.

But the Delawares were unwilling to submit to such overlordship of the Six Nations. The Delawares contended that, although the Six Nations might have control of the Susquehanna basin, they had no control whatever







of the Delaware basin. In 1737, the Delawares remonstrated that many colonists encroached on their Minissink lands, which were in the Lehigh basin above what was called the Forks of the Delaware. The proprietors then produced a copy of an old deed which they said had been signed by the Indians on August 30, 1686, but which was lost, and claimed that its provisions included the Minissink lands because, in the deed, the land extended back into the woods "as far as a man can go in one day and a half." After the lapse of over fifty years, there was none among the Delawares that could deny the making and delivery of such a deed, and they agreed that the walk should be made on the nineteenth day of September of that year, 1737. A chestnut tree above Wrightstown, Bucks County, was fixed as the starting point. The sheriff of the county and the surveyor-general of the Province supervised the walk. The proprietaries had advertised for expert walkers, and a way was blazed through the woods and cleared of brush. The walker who would go the farthest in the day and a half was to receive five pounds in money and five hundred acres of land. Three competitors for the prize appeared, and the walk began on the appointed day in the presence of a number of Indians and others as witnesses. The three rival walkers, who were all famous backwoodsmen, walked so fast that the Indians could not keep up with them and protested that they were running and not walking, and most of them left, alleging that the walk was cheating them. Before the end of the day on which the walking began, one of the competitors succumbed and had to give up. He never regained his health. The next morning the second competitor fell into a creek, became stricken with blindness, and died in three days. The remaining walker, Edmund Marshall, was the only one of the three that finished, and, when he did, he was well nigh exhausted. The walk was on a comparatively straight line and ended





on the mountain near the site of Mauch Chunk. Marshall had walked about sixty-five miles in a day and a half. This transaction is known in history of "The Walking Purchase," and, in my judgment, casts a reflection on the whites; the Indians were clearly outwitted and defrauded. The Indians claimed that the walk was intended to be up along the Delaware River, whereas it was up into the interior, and they did not expect it to extend more than about thirty miles. The Indians insisted, also, that the line from the end of the walk should be the shortest distance to the Delaware River, but the whites ran the line to suit themselves from the end of the walk; they made it terminate where the Lackawaxen Creek empties into the Delaware River, a point sixty-six miles north of the end of the walk and about fifteen miles in a line northwest of Milford, in Pike County. The nearest air-line distance from the end of the walk to the Delaware River is just about one-half of the distance fixed by the proprietaries.

The colonials, by perpetrating such outrageous frauds upon the Delaware Indians, unfairly obtained many square miles of territory now within the counties of Northampton, Lehigh, Carbon, Monroe, and Pike, and the outrage rankled in the breasts of the Delaware Indians ever afterwards. They refused to give up possession of so much land, and the Colonial Governor sent a message to the Six Nations to force the Delawares to abandon the land. Pursuant thereto, many Delaware and Iroquois Chiefs met the colonial authorities in Philadelphia in July, 1741. The complaints of the colonists were submitted and discussed, after which Canassatego, a powerful chief of the Six Nations, said to the Governor: "That they saw the Delawares had been an unruly people, and were altogether in the wrong; that they had concluded to remove them, and oblige them to go over the river Delaware, and quit all claim to any lands on





this side for the future, since they had received pay for them, and it is gone through their guts long ago." Then, addressing himself to the Delawares, "in a violent and singular strain of invective," he said, "they deserved to be taken by the hair of the head, and shaken severely, till they recovered their senses, and became sober; that he had seen with his eyes a deed signed by nine of their ancestors above fifty years ago for this very land, (1686), and a release signed not many years since, (1737), by some of themselves, and chiefs, yet living, (Sassoonan and Nutimus were present,) to the number of fifteen and upwards; but how come you," continued he to the Delawares, "to take upon you to sell lands at all? We conquered you; we made women of you; you know you are women, and can no more sell land than women; nor is it fit you should have the power of selling lands, since you would abuse it. This land that you claim is gone through your guts; you have been furnished with clothes, meat, and drink, by the goods paid you for it, and now you want it again like children as you are. But what makes you sell lands in the dark? Did you ever tell us that you had sold this land? Did we ever receive any part, even the value of a pipeshank, from you for it? You have told us a blind story, that you sent a messenger to us, to inform us of the sale, but he never came amongst us, nor we ever heard any thing about it. This is acting in the dark, and very different from the conduct our Six Nations observe in the sales of land. On such occasions they give public notice, and invite all the Indians of their united nations, and give them all a share of the present they receive for their lands. This is the behaviour of the wise united nations. But we find you are none of our blood; you act a dishonest part not only in this, but in other matters; your ears are ever open to slanderous reports about your brethren. For all these reasons *we charge you to remove instantly; we don't give you liberty*





*to think about it.* You are women. Take the advice of a wise man, and remove instantly. You may return to the other side of Delaware where you came from, but we do not know whether, considering how you have demeaned yourselves, you will be permitted to live there, or whether you have not swallowed that land down your throats, as well as the land on this side. We therefore assign you two places to go to, either to *Wyomen* or *Shamokin*. You may go to either of these places, and then we shall have you more under our eye, and shall see how you behave. *Don't deliberate, but remove away,* and take this belt of *wampum!*" He then forbade them ever to intermeddle in land affairs or ever thereafter to pretend to sell any land and commanded them, as he had something to transact with the *English*, immediately to depart the council.

The Delawares had no alternative but to abandon all that territory to the white people. Then they complained of white settlers in the valley of the Juniata River, and the Colonial Governor promised to have the settlers removed. The Delawares and the Shawnees used that valley as a hunting ground, and the Six Nations also used it at times, but after the treaty of 1742, white people crossed the Blue Mountains and settled there notwithstanding the earnest protests of the Indians. Then the Seneca Tribe of the Six Nations sent deputies to Philadelphia in 1749 to lodge complaints. They contended that, as the Blue Mountains were the line of division, the line could not be mistaken by the whites, and that their encroachments upon Indian territory, made by bad and wicked people, were without any justification whatever. The Governor promised relief, and the Senecas departed, but on their way back they were met by deputies from the remaining Five Nations, and all went to Philadelphia in August, 1749. Including the chiefs, the number of Indians were two hundred and eighty. Canas-





satego again acted as spokesman. The chiefs belonged to the tribes of the Six Nations, the Delawares, and the Shawnees.

As a result of this conference, a treaty was made and a deed was executed on the 22nd of August, 1749, for the consideration of five hundred pounds, conveying to the proprietaries all the land "Beginning at the hills or mountains called in the language of the Five Nations Tyanuntasachta, or Endless Hills, and by the Delaware Indians, Kekactany Hills, on the east side of the river Susquehanna, being in the northwest line or boundary of the tract of land formerly purchased by the said proprietaries from the said Indian Nations, by their deed of the 11th of October, 1736: and from thence running up the said river by the several courses thereof, to the first or nearest mountain to the north side or mouth of the creek called in the language of the said Five Nation Indians, Cantaguy, and in the language of the Delaware Indians Maghonioy, and from thence extending by a direct or straight line to be run from the said mountain on the north side of the said creek to the main branch of Delaware river, at the north side of the mouth of the creek called Lechawachsein, and from thence to return across Lechawachsein creek aforesaid down the river Delaware by the several courses thereof to the Kekachtany hills aforesaid, and from thence by the range of said hills to the place of beginning, as more fully appears by a map annexed; and also all the parts of the rivers Susquehanna and Delaware from shore to shore which are opposite to said lands, and all the islands in said rivers, &c."

It will be apparent that this deed conveyed to the whites all the land between the Susquehanna and Delaware Rivers north of the Blue Mountain and up to a line extending from the mouth of the Mahanoy Creek in Northumberland County to the mouth of the Lacka-





waxen Creek in Pike County. The territory embraces all of the counties of Schuylkill, Carbon, and Monroe, most of Pike, and a large part of Dauphin, Northumberland, Columbia, Luzerne, and Lackawanna Counties. Up to the time of making that deed in 1749 the Blue, or Endless Mountain, was the outer limit of Anglo-Saxon civilization in the Province of Pennsylvania, although a considerable number of white people, among whom were German immigrants, had moved into the territory some years before that deed and treaty were made. The making of the treaty of 1749 was dominated by the Six Nations, and most of the Delaware Indians were much dissatisfied with it.

Upon the making of the treaty of 1749 the Provincial Governor again offered to remove the whites from the valley of the Juniata. But the governor's proclamation for that purpose was disregarded by the white settlers. Finally, the King of England directed a more general treaty to be made with the Indians, because French influence among the Delawares, Shawnees, and other Indians against the English was beginning to manifest itself. So a meeting was arranged with the Six Nations at Albany in July, 1754. It was attended by many chiefs and resulted in a deed to the proprietaries for "all the lands lying within the said Province of Pennsylvania, bounded and limited as follows, namely, beginning at the Kittochtinny or Blue hills on the west branch of the Susquehanna river, and thence by the same, a mile above the mouth of a certain creek called Kayarondinhagh; thence northwest and by west as far as the said Province of Pennsylvania extends to its western line or boundaries; thence along the said western line to the south line or boundary of said Province; thence by the said south line or boundary to the south side of the said Kittochtinny hills; thence by the south side of the said hills to the place of beginning."





Kayarondinhagh is what is known as Penn's Creek, which enters the west branch of the Susquehanna at Selinsgrove. Much dissatisfaction arose among the Indians respecting the purchase of 1754. It was general, according to the journal of Conrad Weiser. They disputed the northern line; they were undoubtedly right, and they threatened to keep the whites off their land. They were tired of remonstrating against encroachment by the whites. After the treaties of 1749 and 1754, most of the Delaware and Shawnee Indians moved to the Allegheny and Ohio river basins, where many of them readily fell under the influence of the French, who encouraged them in every way to avenge the injustice done them by the English. The French claimed those basins of land.

In the winter of 1753-4 Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia sent George Washington on a mission of protest to the French against their encroachment on English territory. He went as far north as Fort Le Boeuf, now Waterford, on French Creek, where he found in command St. Pierre on December 12, 1753, to whom he delivered his message. But it availed nothing. The French were not to be scared away from the land which they claimed.

When Washington returned to Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia, he advised the building of a fort where Pittsburgh now stands. And the erection of a fort was begun there by the English in 1754, but the French drove them away and completed the fort for themselves and called it Fort DuQuesne, after the Governor-General of Canada. Thereupon Governor Dinwiddie sent soldiers that year under the command of Colonel Frye, with Washington second in command, to recover the fort. Colonel Frye died on the way, and Washington became chief commander. When Washington got to a place known as Great Meadows he learned of the approach of a strong force of French and Indians and hastily pre-





pared to defend himself by building what is known in history as Fort Necessity.

There he was savagely attacked by a largely superior number of French and Indians, and, on the 4th of July, 1754, was obliged to capitulate. That was the beginning of what is known as the French and Indian War, which finally resulted in not only changing the map of North America, but also that of Europe. With the end of that war in 1763, French domination in the St. Lawrence and Ohio river basins and in the region of the Great Lakes came to an inglorious end.

The defeat in the battle at Great Meadows in 1754 caused the English government to send trained soldiers to America under the command of General Braddock in the following year, to resist French aggressions. Braddock started out in the spring of 1755 to capture Fort DuQuesne. He would not be told by George Washington how to fight Indians in the woods, and, when he got within ten miles of the fort, he was surprised by the French and Indians, who were concealed in the woods, and met a most disastrous defeat on the 9th of July, he being among the slain.

The victory of the French and Indians over Braddock and his trained regulars caused them to think they could drive the English into the sea. And the Delawares and Shawnees concluded that the time had arrived for them to avenge the injustice they had suffered when they were obliged to leave their fine hunting grounds in the east and move to the west. But the Six Nations did not join the French. Had they done so, no one can say how the French and Indian War would have terminated. To Conrad Weiser, whose Indian name was Tarachawagon, belongs very much credit for influencing the Six Nations to withhold their support from the French. He was their true friend. His standing with the Six Nations may be inferred from the fact that, when a long conference was





held at Lancaster in the summer of 1744 to treat with the Six Nations respecting the release of lands in Maryland and Virginia, Conrad Weiser, as chief interpreter and negotiator, signed with his Indian name, Tarachawagon, the deed of release dated June 22. In one of his speeches at the Lancaster conference, Canassatego, chief of the Onandago Indians, said: "We hope Tarachawagon will be preserved by the Great Spirit to a good old age. When he is gone under the ground it will be then time to look out for another and no doubt that amongst so many thousands as there are in the world are such men to be found who will serve both parties with the same fidelity as Tarachawagon does. While he lives there is no room to complain." 2025011

Conrad Weiser was always an interpreter at conferences with the Indians in Pennsylvania. Cadwallader Colden, in his *History of the Five Nations*, pays high tribute to Weiser's influence and integrity. The confidence of the Indians in him was absolute. His friendship for the Indians is clearly manifested by the fact that Indian chiefs were often his guests and that several are buried close to his own grave near Womelsdorf. There was no Englishman in the province who exercised such a beneficial influence upon the Indians as the German, Conrad Weiser. It has been said that through his influence the United States became Saxon instead of Latin. George Washington, standing by his grave in November, 1793, said, "Posterity will not forget him." His homestead stands within a beautiful little State Park about a mile east of Womelsdorf in Berks County, Pennsylvania, and his grave is within a few yards of the house.

The defeat of Braddock in 1755 served as a signal to the Delawares and Shawnees to act. And act they did. They began on the 16th of October, 1755, by the massacre of twenty-five white men, women, and children on Penn's Creek, where they had settled much against the protest





of the Indians, who claimed that the land was outside of the purchase and treaty of the previous year. Massacres by the Indians then became the order of the period, and the vicinity of the Blue Mountains, all the way from the Delaware to the Susquehanna and beyond it, was the field of very much of their nefarious and bloody business. In that field and time, some of my pioneer ancestors lived. Once begun, Indian massacre of the colonists continued from time to time for several decades. The colonists were murdered, or taken captive, and their houses, barns, and other buildings were destroyed by the incendiary's torch. However, not all of the Delaware Indians were so engaged. Some of them who had become Christianized lived in peace near the colonists.

In order to protect the colonists, the colonial government established frontier forts along both sides of the Blue Mountain between the Susquehanna and Delaware Rivers and elsewhere in the Province. One of these forts, known as Fort Lebanon, was located on Bohundy, or Pine, Creek about one mile east of where the borough of Auburn stands and a few miles from the site of Orwigsburg. The fort was begun in the latter part of 1755 and was most likely finished in December of that year.

The colonists cannot be held wholly blameless for the trouble that arose between themselves and the aborigines. The Indians had not advanced beyond the paleolithic age; they knew absolutely nothing of metals or any of the uses to which metals can be put. Only sticks, stones, and bones were the rude implements at their command. A few native fruits, nuts, and vegetables, birds, fish, snakes, and wild animals were their sources for the supply of food. They felled no forests and cleared no land. Here and there they raised beans and maize on small treeless areas. They knew little about the preservation of foods, and, often in the winter time, were confronted with starvation. Their shelters were caves and rude structures





made of sticks, weeds, and the skins of wild beasts. So far as its benefits are concerned, the invention of fire is the greatest, and, in all respects, the most common in the history of the human race; and, fortunately, the poor Indian had acquired knowledge enough to create fire and to put it to some use. Otherwise, he could never have lived for a single year in our latitude. Here the Indians lived, rarely molested until after white men suddenly appeared like an apparition. The Indians treated the strangers as supernal and with a degree of kindness and trustfulness that tested the true character and mission of the colonists. But the colonists did not stand that test, notwithstanding their intellectual culture and professed Christianity. The Indian believed in the Great Spirit and had a sense of fairness, honor, and justice. At the conference at Easton in November, 1756, Teedyuscung, the last Delaware King, said to Governor Denny: "A bargain is a bargain. Though I have sometimes had nothing for land I have sold but broken pipes or such trifles, yet when I have sold them, tho' for such trifles, I look upon the bargain as good. Yet I think that I should not be ill-used on this account by those very people who have had such an advantage in their purchase, nor be called a fool for it. Indians are not such fools as to bear this in their minds." He further said: "... you should look into your own hearts and consider what is right and that do." The Indian knew what was right and what was wrong; and, after he fully appreciated the fact that, when half-crazed with rum designedly furnished by the white man, he had often been foully overreached and defrauded, he tried to avenge himself in the only way known to him. As to the recovery of his lands, he was utterly without remedy in the courts of law, although he was justly aggrieved; and, in the forum of conscience, found himself perfectly warranted in resorting to savage warfare for his own satisfaction. Fraud had deprived him of his Happy Hunting Grounds, an overwhelming





power had forced him to follow the course of the sun, and he determined to fight as best he could on his way to its setting place out in the western sea.

And those in authority among the colonists were fully conscious of such fraud and injustice on their own part. In June, 1757, the Assembly of Pennsylvania, answering a statement that had been made by the Governor in the previous year to the then Assembly, *inter alia*, said: "It is rendered beyond contradiction plain, that the cause of the present Indian incursions in this province, and the dreadful calamities, many of the inhabitants have suffered, have arisen, in great measure, from the exorbitant and unreasonable purchases *made; or supposed to be made* of the Indians, and the manner of making them.— So exorbitant, *that the natives complain they have not a country left to subsist in.*" And General Gage in 1758, in a letter to John Penn, who was then Governor, said: "The encroachments made upon the *Indian* lands, for which they could obtain no justice, with the daily threats of more invasions of their property, lost us the affection of the savages before, *and was the principal reason for their throwing themselves into the arms of the French for protection. From hence arose the hostilities they committed upon us* in 1754 and 1755, and the war that followed. The same causes will have the same effects." Governor Penn admitted the just causes of the complaints of the Indians for past injuries, but was willing only "to protest their persons and properties for the future," but not to remove the causes of the complaint.

I have already said that not all of the Delaware Indians warred against the colonists after the defeat of General Braddock in 1755, but most of them did, and Teedyuscung was for a short time one of their leaders.

After the Delawares were ordered by the Six Nations in 1742 to move to Shamokin or to Wyoming, Teedyuscung in due time became the chief, or king, of those who





lived on the Susquehanna from Shamokin northward. Shamokin was where Sunbury now stands, and Teedyuscung had his home there. Some time prior to that he had, under Moravian influence, embraced Christianity, but later renounced it.

Robert Hunter Morris was Deputy Governor of the Province when the French and Indian War began and, through messengers, arranged with Teedyuscung for a conference at Easton, in July, 1756, for the purpose of re-establishing peace. The conference was held with Teedyuscung and fourteen other chiefs. The Governor insisted upon the return of all white captives as a condition of peace, and the conference adjourned for a future meeting to be attended by more chiefs. In the meantime Governor Morris was superseded by William Denny. Denny requested the Indians to come to Philadelphia for the next conference, but they refused. Teedyuscung sent, through Conrad Weiser, to Lieutenant Governor Denny this message: "Brother, you remember very well that in time of distress and danger, I came here at your invitation. At Easton, we kindled a small council fire . . . . If you should put out this little fire, our enemies will call it only a jack-lantern, kindled on purpose to deceive those who approach it. Brother, I think it by no means advisable to put out this little fire, but rather to put more sticks upon it. And I desire that you will come to it (at Easton) as soon as possible and bring your old and wise men along with you, and we shall be very glad to see you here." Governor Denny complied, and they met at Easton in 1757. At that conference the Walking Purchase was much discussed and also other matters of difference between the Indians and the colonists. The conference ended with presents of the value of four hundred pounds to the Indians, a declaration of peace, excepting with those Indians who refused to lay down their arms, and a promise by the Indians to restore the





white captives. Teedyuscung said: "I will use my utmost endeavors to bring you down your prisoners."

But Teedyuscung worked on the Six Nations to attend another council at Easton, and a fourth council was held there in October, 1758, attended by more than five hundred Indians representing all of the Six Nations, the Delawares, Conoys, Tuteloes, and Nanticokes, and the Governors of Pennsylvania and New Jersey and their retinues. It was a Grand Council. The matters considered by it were the Albany Purchase of 1754, the complaint of the Munsee Clan of the Delawares, respecting lands in New Jersey, and again the Walking Purchase.

The Iriquois did all they could at that Grand Council to humiliate Teedyuscung for what they regarded as his presumptuousness, but the latter's alertness and wisdom and the skillful maneuvers of interpreters Conrad Weiser and Andrew Montour, coupled with the remarks of the two Governors, happily saved the day; and the Grand Council ended peaceably on the 26th of October. By the treaty then made, the lines fixed by the treaty of 1754 were greatly changed. The land covered by the treaty of 1758 included the land now comprising the counties of Perry, Fulton, Juniata, Snyder, Bedford, Blair, Huntingdon, and Mifflin, and part of Franklin.

Having been driven from pillar to post in search of a place for his permanent home, that great chief answered his traducers at that Grand Council by, *inter alia*, saying: "Let the matter now be cleared up in the presence of our brothers, the English. I sit here as a bird on a bough. I look about and do not know where to go. Let me therefore come down upon the ground and make that my own by a good deed, and I shall then have a home forever: for if you, my uncles, or I die, our brethern, the English, will say they bought from you, and so wrong my posterity out of it."





Teedyuscung was an eloquent orator, a sincere and able diplomat and a loyal friend of the English. His efforts in behalf of the English during the French and Indian War were of inestimable value to them. He was a truly great man, and I am very glad that his services to the colonists are commemorated by a beautiful bronze statue of him in Fairmount Park, Philadelphia. He had a very sad ending. Some of his Iriquois enemies set fire to his home when he was there in a drunken stupor on the 16th of April, 1763, and he was cruelly burned to death.

The French and Indian War was ended by a treaty made February 10, 1763.

But Indian outrages upon the colonists did not end with the French and Indian War. Many Indians had sided with the English in that war under the promise made by the English, that, if they would help to defeat the French, the lands occupied by the French in the Ohio basin could be occupied by the Indians alone. However, that promise was disregarded, and what is sometimes called Pontiac's Conspiracy, but better known as Pontiac's War, ensued as a result. Besides, Indian depredations occurred in Pennsylvania for more than a score of years after the termination of the French and Indian War.

In 1768, another treaty was made with the Indians. The land obtained by that treaty extended across the entire Province, all the way from Wayne County to Greene County, embracing territory now within twenty-one counties of the State.

Even after the Revolution, to wit, October 23, 1784, another, the final treaty, was made with the Indians, covering all the remaining land within the State. The land described in that treaty composes either in part or entirely twenty-two counties.





The little corner along Lake Erie which forms part of Erie County lay outside of the Province and was ceded to Pennsylvania by the United States in 1792.

From the foregoing, it will be noted that the making of treaties with the Indians to settle land titles in the Province of Pennsylvania extended over a period of one hundred and two years, from 1682 to 1784.

Penn's Charter empowered him, his heirs, and assigns to divide the province into towns, hundreds, and counties, and to erect and incorporate towns into boroughs, and boroughs into cities. So, in 1682, Penn organized the first three counties, namely: Bucks, Philadelphia, and Chester, each of them fronting on the Delaware River and extending to the outer limits of the Province. Chester County was by far the largest. In the course of time, those three counties became divided and subdivided until the counties in Pennsylvania now number sixty-seven instead of three. Lancaster County was organized in 1729 as the fourth county. York County came next in 1749. Then followed Cumberland County in 1750, which was succeeded by Berks and Northampton Counties in 1752. Other counties of interest in this narrative are Montgomery, organized in 1784, Dauphin in 1785, Schuylkill in 1811, and Lebanon in 1813. Schuylkill County was taken out of Berks and Northampton Counties, and Lebanon County was taken out of Lancaster and Dauphin Counties.





## CHAPTER II

### TEN FAMILY STOCKS

All of my immigrant ancestors came to Pennsylvania at various times long before the Revolutionary War. But I am sure of the surnames of only ten of my family stocks: Koch, Neufang, Bock, Bolich, Beck, Lauk, Becker, Fisher, Hain, and Faust. Thus far I have learned the full maiden name of the wife of only one of my immigrant ancestors. Therefore, I can treat certainly of only the ten family stocks already mentioned. In the separate chapters relating to the ten family stocks will be found, I think, a sufficient warrant for each chapter. No effort will be made to ascertain the names of European ancestors of my immigrant ancestors, but when known the names will be given.

The purpose of this chapter is simply to show, in the briefest manner, as far as now known to me, the full names of my ancestors in America, and one or two in Europe, and the years of their birth and death. The figure in parentheses following each name will indicate the generation of that person, with the possible exception of Balthaser Neufang who probably was of the second generation, and excepting also Valentine Lauk and Johan Henrich Becker who may not have come to America.





PATERNAL ANCESTORS		Born	Died
KOCH			
Johann Henrich Koch (1) .....	1660	17—	
Married ————— .....		—	
Henrich Koch (2) .....	1715	17—	
Married Anna Catherine ? .....		—	
(See text)			
William Koch (3) .....	1747	1832	
Married Maria Magdalena Neu-			
fang (2) .....	1766	1837	
Henry Koch (4) .....	1791	1867	
Married Susanna Bock (3) .....	1797	1886	
Daniel Koch (5) .....	1816	1903	
Married Mary Ann Beck (4) .....	1818	1888	
Richard Henry Koch (6), the author.	1852	19—	
NEUFANG			
Balthaser Neufang (1) .....	—	1788	
Married Elizabeth .....	—	1793	
Maria Magdalena Neufang (2) .....	1766	1837	
Married William Koch (3) .....	1747	1832	
BOCK			
Johannes Bock (1) .....	—	178—	
Married .....	—	—	
Balthaser Bock (2) .....	1746	1827	
Married Susan Margretha Bolich			
(2) .....	1755	1814	
Susanna Bock (3) .....	1797	1886	
Married Henry Koch (4) .....	1791	1867	
BOLICH			
Andreas Bolich (1) .....	—	1780	
Married .....	—	—	
Susan Margretha Bolich (2) .....	1755	1814	
Married Balthaser Bock (2) .....	1746	1827	





## MATERNAL ANCESTORS

## BECK

John Christian Beck (1) . . . . .	about 1710	1792
Married —————	—————	—————
John Philip Beck (2) . . . . .	1751	1811
Married Anna Maria Lauk (3) . . .	1756	1796
Emanuel Beck (3) . . . . .	1788	1877
Married Barbara Fisher (3) . . . . .	1792	1879
Mary Ann Beck (4) . . . . .	1818	1888
Married Daniel Koch (5) . . . . .	1816	1903

## LAUK

Valentine Lauk (1) . . . . .	16—	—
Married —————	—————	—————
Abraham Lauk (2) . . . . .	16—	1772
Married Anna Catharina Becker (2) . . . . .	16—	17—
Abraham Lauk (3) . . . . .	—	—
Married Margaret —————	—————	—————
Anna Maria Lauk (4) . . . . .	1756	1796
Married John Philip Beck (2) . . . .	1751	1811

## BECKER

Johan Henrich Becker (1) . . . . .	16—	17—
Married —————	16—	17—
Anna Catharina Becker (2) . . . . .	16—	17—
Married Abraham Lauk (2) . . . . .	16—	1772

## FISHER

William Fisher (1) . . . . .	1706	1771
Married Elizabeth Gertrude Hain (2) . . . . .	1711	1768
Frederick Fisher (2) . . . . .	1750	1828
Married Gertrude Faust (3) . . . . .	1751	1827
Barbara Fisher (3) . . . . .	1792	1879
Married Emanuel Beck (3) . . . . .	1788	1877





## HAIN

George Hain (1) .....	16—	1746
Married Veronica .....	16—	17—
Gertrude Elizabeth Hain (2) .....	1711	1768
Married William Fisher (1) .....	1706	1771

## FAUST

Peter Faust (1) .....	—	1789
Married Anna Maria .....	—	—
Anthony Faust (2) .....	—	1806
Married Elizabeth .....	—	—
Gertrude Faust (3) .....	1751	1827
Married Frederick Fisher (2) .....	1750	1822

Which shows the full names of thirty of my ancestors:

PATERNAL—1—Johann Henrich Koch, 2—Henrich Koch, 3—William Koch, 4—Henry Koch, 5—Daniel Koch, 6—Balthaser Neufang, 7—Maria Magdalena Neufang, 8—Johannes Bock, 9—Balthaser Bock, 10—Susanna Bock, 11—Andreas Bolich, 12—Susan Margaretha Bolich.

MATERNAL—13—John Christian Beck, 14—John Philip Beck, 15—Emanuel Beck, 16—Mary Ann Beck, 17—Valentine Lauk, 18—Abraham Lauk, Sr., 19—Abraham Lauk, Jr., 20—Anna Maria Lauk, 21—Johan Henrich Becker, 22—Anna Catharine Becker, 23—William Fisher, 24—Frederick Fisher, 25—Barbara Fisher, 26—George Hain, 27—Gertrude Elizabeth Hain, 28—Peter Faust, 29—Anthony Faust, and 30—Gertrude Faust.

The reader may have noted that in twelve instances the full maiden name of the wife of the ancestor is unknown to me, to wit, in the cases of Johann Henrich Koch (1), Henrich Koch (2), Balthaser Neufang (1), Johannes Bock (1), Andreas Bolich (1), John Christian Beck (1), Valentine Lauk (1), Abraham Lauk (3),





Johan Henrich Becker (1), George Hain (1), Peter Faust (1), and Anthony Faust (2),

If the full names of those twelve women were known, the title of this book would be "Forty-Two Ancestors" instead of *Thirty Ancestors*, and the title of this chapter would be Twenty-Two Family Stocks instead of Ten Family Stocks.





### CHAPTER III

#### THE KOCH FAMILY

Placing considerable reliance on family tradition, I will begin this chapter by relating some facts which I was told by my grandmother, Susanna Koch, in New Ringgold in the summer of 1875, and of which facts I then made a few lead-pencil notes that I have preserved through all the intervening years.

She said that she was born at McKeansburg in 1797 and that her husband was born in 1791; that her husband's grandfather came from Germany; that his grandfather was not in the Revolutionary War but was in the war before that war, got sick, came home and died; that he had eight children; that he was a thriftless man and his property was sold for debt; that her husband's father, William Koch, was raised at Womelsdorf; that her father, Balthaser Bock, was in the Revolutionary War one and a half years; that he came to America from Germany with his father when he was eight years old; that he was eighty-two years old when he died; that her son, Hugh, was six months old when her father died; and that "Hugh was forty-eight years old on his birthday last December" (1874); that her father played with Indian children at Hamburg; that his mother died in Philadelphia soon after landing there; that her grandfather Bock was in the war before the Revolution, and that he had two sons.

My grandmother Koch later came to Pottsville where she lived in the family of her daughter, Sarah, who was the wife of Charles T. Bowen. I saw her there and she told me that the children of her husband's grandfather







MYSELF, MY CHILDREN, THEIR SPOUSES AND THEIR CHILDREN  
IN JUNE, 1928







were three boys, named, respectively: William, Martin, and Henry, and five girls, but she did not state the order of the birth of the said eight children. She said that William Koch had lived for a time in Oley Township, Berks County; that Martin had lived near Fleetwood; that Henry "went up country," and that the five girls lived in Philadelphia. Later she again said that the father of William, Martin, and Henry Koch had lived at Womelsdorf and had died of sickness contracted in the war before the Revolutionary War, but she did not say where he lived when he died; at least I made no note of the fact if she mentioned it. Record confirmation of many of her statements inclines me to believe in the correctness of more of them and in the great probability of the correctness of all of them.

I will consider her statements of fact in a somewhat different order from that in which they have been related, but they will all receive proper attention in due time.

The name of Grandmother Koch's husband was Henry Koch, and the name of his father was William Koch. Both of those men are buried at McKeansburg, Pennsylvania. The tombstone at William Koch's grave shows that he was born near Philadelphia, April 1, 1747, and the record of the Lutheran church at New Hanover (Falkner's Swamp), near Pottstown, says that William Koch, the son of Henrich Koch, was born April 1, and baptized April 5, 1747, by the Rev. Henry Melchior Muhlenberg. Rev. H. M. Muhlenberg was the founder of the German Lutheran Church in America. William Koch died May 3, 1832. The tombstone at Henry Koch's grave shows that he was born October 5, 1791, and died February 19, 1867, and the tombstone at my grandmother's grave shows that she was born July 19, 1797, and died December 12, 1886.





Now, as William Koch was American born, we will see whether his father, Henry Koch, came from Germany as stated by my grandmother Koch.

As all immigrants from Continental Europe were obliged to come here in ships sailing under the English flag and officered by subjects of Great Britain, those in command, not always understanding the German tongue, spelled the names of their passengers according to sound. Such was the case of Alexander Hope, commander of the ship *Queen Elizabeth*, which arrived at the port of Philadelphia on the 16th day of September, 1738. On his list of the immigrant passengers in his ship, Commander Hope gave the names of Johanes Coch, aged seventy-eight, and Henrick Coch, aged twenty-three. Their names are together on that list. On the lists of that same date showing the oath of allegiance and the oath of abjuration by the male immigrants over sixteen years of age on that ship, the names of those two men are also together and were put there by themselves in their own handwriting, but they are respectively spelled, "Johannes Hennrich Koch" and "Henrich Kock."\* And I have no doubt but that they were father and son. No person seventy-eight years old was likely to venture alone in those days to settle in a savage country thousands of miles away from the place of his nativity. Johannes Hennrich Koch is the oldest male to be found among all the male immigrants whose ages were noted on the lists of the various ship captains between 1727 and 1775, and Henrich Koch is the only person of that name found on any list of immigrants arriving here prior to the first day of April, 1747, when William Koch, my great-grandfather, the son of said Henrich Koch, was born. And I am con-

---

\*All proper names will appear in this book exactly as they are spelled in the records respectively referred to when such reference is made, but all other times they will be spelled in only one way. For instance, Henrich or Henrick will be called Henry; Baltzer, Balser, Polser, etc. will be called Balthaser; Neifong, Neyfong, Newfang, Neytong, etc. will appear in their proper form as Neufang. After referring to certain records, I shall from time to time divert to make comments.





vinced that the Henry Koch who came here September 16, 1738, was the father of said William Koch. If that be correct it confirms grandmother Koch's statement that her husband's grand-father came from Germany.

In those days it was the custom to name a child after its sponsor of the same sex, and William Koch's sponsor was William Lippert, whose name also appears on the same three lists of those who came here as immigrants on the *Queen Elizabeth*, September 16, 1738. But the captain spelled the name Lepard. And he is the only person of the name of William Lippert to be found on any list of immigrants between 1727 and 1775. The name of Henry Koch's wife, the mother of William, is given in the New Hanover Church records as Anna Catherina, and the name of Lippert's wife is the same in said record. It is possible that the person who made the church record erred in putting down the baptismal names of those two women as being the same, for I am inclined to think from the facts hereinafter stated that the name of William Koch's mother was Anna Margaret, and not Anna Catherine. The same church record shows that the parents of Elizabeth Koch, born September 29, 1745, baptized October 1, 1745, were Henry Koch and Anna Margretha, the sponsors then being Henrich Vogel and wife. My cousin, Charles Howard Koch, Esq., now deceased, learned from the New Hanover Church records over forty years ago that the maiden surname of Anna Margaretha Koch, the mother of Elizabeth, there appeared as Reisin. The Germans add "in" to the surname of a female. In English we would say the surname was Reis, the "in" added to it by the Germans is simply to indicate that the person is of the female sex. The same church records further show that one Johannes Koch was born April 27, 1749, and baptized May 7, 1749, his parents being Henrich Koch and Anna Maria, his wife, thus apparently showing three Henry Kochs in a sparse population connected with the same church, in that short





interval of a little more than four years—a possible, but not a very probable fact.

In support of the thought that only two and not three Henry Kochs may be meant by the records at the New Hanover Church, I here submit other record data for the consideration of any interested reader hereof. Other records that may be found and examined by those who come after me may throw a different light on what I am noting as the result of my investigation. It must be remembered that this book is mostly a collection of data only.

The record of the Augustus Lutheran Church at Trappe, Montgomery County, also then under the charge of the Rev. Henry Melchior Muhlenberg, shows the marriage of Henrich Koch, a son of Johannes Koch, to Anna Maria Beier on December 15, 1747, and it is there noted that they lived in New Hanover Township. They were evidently the parents of the child Johannes who was born April 27, 1749, and the date of their marriage apparently proves that that Henry Koch could not have been the father of William Koch, because William Koch was born nearly nine months before the father of Johannes Koch was married. It shows, however, that there were at least two Henry Kochs in that neighborhood in said interval of time.

The records of the New Hanover Lutheran Church and the Trappe Lutheran Church show no more respecting a couple named Henry Koch and Anna Catherina, or Anna Margaret, but the New Hanover Church shows the baptism December 24, 1750, of Anna Marcreth, another child of Henry Koch and Anna Maria Koch.

I have tried to trace the couple whose names appear as Henry Koch and Anna Margretha Koch in the New Hanover Church records of 1745, or, at least, in which Margaret was part of the name of the wife. The record of Christ Lutheran Church, near Dryville, Rockland





Township, Berks County, also known as the Bieber Creek Church, shows the baptism on November 15, 1749, of Maria Elizabeth Koch, a daughter of Heinrich and his wife, Anna Margetha, nee Risin, meaning Ris. Rockland Township was not formed until 1758, when it was taken out of Oley Township. The fact that the surname of Anna Margaret, Henry Koch's wife, is given as Ris in the Bieber Creek Church record and as Reis in the New Hanover Church record, due allowance being made for the difference in spelling, persuades me beyond all doubt that those two couples were one and the same. The sound of the maiden surname of Mrs. Koch is the same in both cases. However, the correct way of spelling it originally appears to be Riss. Six immigrants of that name arrived in Philadelphia on board the *Pink Johnson* of London, September 18, 1732. (Vol. 1, *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*, pages 71, 73, 74, 75 and 77.) David Crockatt, the commander, wrote "Rise" as the name of five, and "Rice" for the sixth on his list of passengers. Those six passengers consisted of two males over sixteen, two women over fourteen, a boy under sixteen, and a girl under fourteen named Margeritta Rise. The two men could write, and, in signing the oath of allegiance, one spelled his name Riess, and the other Riss, but on the oath of abjuration both signed as Riss. And I believe the name of the girl was Anna Margaret and that she became the wife of my great-great-grandfather, Henry Koch, some years afterwards. It is very common among all parents to call a child by a single name and for the child to so call itself. It is, therefore, likely that Commander Crockatt was not given the full name of that little girl, and simply wrote it down as Margeritta, instead of Anna Margeritta. It is quite possible that those six persons belonged to the same family. The names of the men over sixteen were Christopher and Frederick, and they are together on the three lists, that of Christo-





pher being first in each instance. However, the name may have undergone a change in spelling later on, or the signatures in German of Christopher and Frederick may not have been properly read and interpreted. The census of 1790 contains no such surname as Riss, but three named Reis and one named Ries are among those who then lived in Berks County. Said census contains the names of only seven that are spelled in one of said two ways. There is one person named Risse, a resident in Dauphin County.

The record of the German Reformed Congregation at Germantown, inter alia, shows the following baptisms: 22, June, 1755, Anna P., daughter of Heinrich Koch and Margaretha; 17 January, 1758, Magdalena, daughter of Henrich Koch and Margaretha, the child having been born November 19, 1757; and 9 October, 1763, Catherine E., daughter of Heinrich Koch and Margareth, the child having been born 31 August, 1763. I also found in the same record that Henrich Koch and Magr. were sponsors for the baptism of the child of Jacob Nerack on December 3, 1758. The full name of the mother may have been *Anna* Margaret. There is nothing remarkable about the omission of part of the name. In the record of Zion's Church (the famous Red Church) in Brunswick Township, my grandfather Henry Koch's birth and baptism are noted as of October 5th and 10th, 1791, and his parents are named as William Koch and Magdalena; whereas the full baptismal name of his mother was Maria Magdalena.

I have, therefore, found five daughters whose parents were noted as Henry Koch and either Anna Margaret, or Margaret; and who were born and baptized between 1745 and 1763, and all my searches have brought to light no other Anna Margaret, or Margaret, as the wife of a Henry Koch. And the fact that Henry Koch had five daughters who, according to Grandmother Koch, lived





in or about Philadelphia apparently gives weight to my belief that the name of William Koch's mother was Anna Margaret and not Anna Catherine. My belief that the Henry Koch, whose name is found on the records of the Lutheran church at New Hanover, the Lutheran church at Dryville, and the record of the German Reformed Congregation at Germantown, was one and the same person is not shaken by the fact that Henry Koch's first five children may have been baptized by Lutheran ministers, and his last three by German Reformed ministers, when a Lutheran church was in existence in that vicinity. Henry Koch may have been out of sympathy and agreement with the so-called Lutheran church at Germantown. There was much strife in that congregation in those years, and the efforts of the Rev. Henry Melchior Muhlenberg to heal it were in vain. The congregation had in it two bitterly opposing factions whose quarrel became terminated only by the aid of the courts in 1764 (*History of Trinity Luthern Church, Germantown, Philadelphia, 1836-1936*, by Edward W. Hocker, pages 18 and 19). This may account for Henry Koch's apparent, or probable, change in his church connection, and explain why the baptism of all his children did not occur in the Lutheran church. Perhaps his wife was Reformed.

Bearing in mind the statement that the five daughters lived in Philadelphia, here is another important circumstantial fact: the name of at least one of Henry Koch's daughters, a sister of William Koch, was Elizabeth, who lived in Philadelphia, but Angelicized her name so as to make it Cook. She was married to a man named Meyer. Her brother, William Koch, my great-grandfather, was married twice. He had four daughters but no sons by his first wife. By his second wife, he had children of both sexes, and his first boy was named Jacob. The coming of that first son so pleased William Koch's sister, Elizabeth, that she presented him in boyhood with one





of the largest Bibles that I have ever seen. Jacob Koch grew to manhood but died, and his Bible then passed into the possession of his brother, John W. Koch, and is now owned by George Kramer, whose grandmother was Catheraine a daughter of said John W. Koch. Kramer lives between Orwigsburg and McKeansburg in Schuylkill County, Pennsylvania. In the Bible is inscribed in very legible English the following: "Philadelphia, October 8, 1798, this Book is a present from his Aunt Elizabeth Meyer to her nephew Jacob Cook, oldest son of her brother William Cook, as a testimony of her affection." So, according to that inscription, Grandmother Koch's statement that William Koch had five sisters and that they all lived in Philadelphia is apparently confirmed absolutely as to at least one of them. And I believe that is the Elizabeth Koch who was born September 29, 1745, and baptized October 1, 1745, as found in the records of the Lutheran church at New Hanover. I have found it nothing unusual in that century to give several children in the same family, in part at least, the same Christian name, such as we have here—Elizabeth born in 1745, and Maria Elizabeth born in 1749. Nor was it anything unusual to give but part of a Christian name to taxables, devisees, sponsors, etc. In his last will and testament the said William Koch names his wife as Magdalena and her sister as Catherine, whereas their names were, respectively, Maria Magdalena and Anna Catherine, as shown on their tombstones in the cemetery at McKeansburg, Pennsylvania.

In my searches I have found no other Anna Catherine as the wife of a Henry Koch, but I found in the will of a Henry Koch, who lived in Exeter Township, Berks County (which will was dated January 12, 1764, and probated at Reading, March 29, 1764), that letters cum testamento annexo were given to his widow Catherina. The will was signed by Henrich Koch, but he could not





have been my ancestor, although he died very soon after the French and Indian War. The devisees in his will were his son, Matthias, and his daughter, Eva, and two grandchildren, one named Maria Eva, and the other Barbara, but the name of Matthias does not match the name of William, Martin, or Henry, who were mentioned by my grandmother as the only three sons of Henry Koch. Nor is it likely that if that Henry Koch had had three sons and five daughters, he would have made devisees to only one son and one daughter. Why should he overlook William and Elizabeth if they were children of his? Besides, my ancestor's property was taken under execution and sold, if Grandmother Koch's statement is correct.

The will of Jacob Koch, of Robeson Township, Berks County, probated February 13, 1756, shows it was witnessed by a Henry Koch, and that among said Jacob's four children was a son named Henry, the oldest son. In 1762 partition of the real estate of said Jacob Koch was had, and the proceedings show that the son, Henry, was then dead. There had been three sons, Henry, Jacob, Jr., and John, and one daughter named Catherine, and the testator's widow. But, as Henry Koch was then dead, Jacob, Jr., the oldest living son, to whom the land was awarded, was directed by the order of the court to pay the dower to the widow and the owelty to the other two surviving children, thus showing that Henry Koch had died unmarried and without issue. That Henry Koch may, therefore, be eliminated from further consideration.

Now, looking for further confirmation of the tradition that I got from my grandmother respecting the three sons of my great-great-grandfather, Henry Koch, I found a Martin and a Henry Koch among the taxables in the Tulpehocken section of Berks County, where Womelsdorf is located. At that time Womelsdorf was the most





populous and best-known settlement in that part of Berks County. It was settled years before the land was released by the Indians to the Colonists, and before any Europeans lived at Reading. And the name of the place represented more country than the actual settlement. It represented the entire neighborhood. Its location was near the Tulpehocken Township line. Martin Koch was taxed as a single man in Tulpehocken Township as early as 1765 and as late as 1780. Then, the name appears among the married men in that township until 1784. But the same name also appears among the taxables in Bethel Township from 1780 to 1790. In other words, it was in both townships from 1780 to 1784. After 1790, the name disappeared from among the taxables in that section of Berks County, and was found on the list in Richmond Township until 1795. Fleetwood is in Richmond Township, and the record of Moselem Church in that township shows the baptism of Sahra Koch, a daughter of Martin Koch and his wife, Elizabeth, on December 4, 1791. In this connection it is interesting to note that the record of Christ Lutheran (Tulpehocken) Church shows the marriage of a Martin Koch, a son of Christian Koch, to Eva Batdorf on April 4, 1780. Judging from the names of the two wives, it may be inferred that there were in fact two Martin Kochs, as already indicated among the taxables in Bethel Township. No estate of a Martin Koch appears in Berks County, but I believe there were two of that name, and that the one who was taxed as early as 1765 in Tulpehocken Township, near Womelsdorf, and later in Richmond Township was a brother of my great-grandfather, William Koch. My sister, Sarah, and I both remember my father speaking of some of his Koch relatives living in Richmond Township, at or near Fleetwood after our family moved there in 1867.

As to Henry Koch, the record shows such an one on the list of taxables in Tulpehocken Township as a single





man in 1767, and he continued on that list almost continuously up to 1792, when his name disappeared in that section, and he possibly "went up country," as stated by my grandmother Koch.

As to the William Koch who, according to Grandmother Koch, was raised at Womelsdorf, and who, she said, had also lived in Oley Township, I could not find his name among the taxables anywhere in the Tulpehocken section nor in Oley Township. His father may have lived in Oley Township when Maria Elizabeth Koch was baptized in 1749, as shown by the Dryville Church records. Dryville was at that time in Oley Township. William Koch's earliest appearance on the list of taxables is in Maiden Creek Township. His name appears on the lists among the married men in that township in the years 1774, 1775, and 1778. There are no tax lists for 1776 and 1777. They may have been lost, but it is said, on what appears as good authority, that no taxes were levied in those two years. In 1779, William Koch was taxed in Brunswick Township, and he continued to be taxed, thereafter, somewhere north of the Blue Mountain until he died in Brunswick Township in 1832.

To me, the taxation of a Martin Koch and a Henry Koch in the Tulpehocken section for so many years, and finally of Martin Koch near Fleetwood, and the certainty of our knowledge respecting William Koch, taken in connection with all the other facts hereinbefore set forth, as well as those which will be hereafter stated, seem very confirmatory of the correctness of Grandmother Koch's statement to me that her husband's grandfather had three sons, named Martin, Henry, and William.

Her statement that her father, Balthaser Bock, came from Germany is confirmed by the inscription on his tombstone in the cemetery at McKeansburg. That inscription says he was born in Germany, March 30, 1746; and,





as he arrived here October 23, 1754, he was then eight years old. The inscription also shows that Balthaser Bock died June 17, 1827, in his eighty-second year, confirming Grandmother Koch's statement that her son, Hugh Koch, was six months old when her father died, because Hugh Koch was born December 18, 1826.

She is confirmed in her statement that her grandfather had two sons. Their names appear in the lists of taxables in Windsor Township, Berks County, as Henry Bock and Baltzer Bock. Chapter V will show that John Bock their father, lived in that township as early as 1759. Hamburg is in that township, so we may believe that young Balthaser Bock played with Indian children there. It is well known that not all the Indians moved out of Berks County to the Shamokin section of the State after they had been ordered so to do by the Six Nations in 1742.

In my search for corroboration of my grandmother Koch's statement that Henry Koch, her husband's grandfather, was thriftless and that his property was sold for debt, I've found only one case against a Henry Koch, to wit, in the Court of Common Pleas of Berks County. The Execution Docket shows that in 1766, a Writ of Fi. Fa. was issued in the case of E. Biddle Lodowick, assignee of Baker Monte, against Henry Koch, and that on August 16th, twenty-six acres were levied upon in Long Swamp Township, and that a Writ of Vendi Exponias was then issued returnable February 10, 1767. Long Swamp Township was formed in 1761 out of part of Rockland Township, and Rockland Township had been taken out of Oley Township in 1758. The records in the Department of Internal Affairs at Harrisburg show that a tract of land containing forty acres, situate in Long Swamp Township, was surveyed pursuant to a warrant dated July 23, 1765, granted to Henry Koch, and by sundry conveyances his right passed to Jacob Trexler, to whom





a patent was issued June 20, 1827. The defendant in the above suit was very likely the Henry Koch that I am trying to trace. It has already appeared to the reader that a certain Henry Koch apparently changed locations several times, and, like other rolling stones, gathered no moss. Inaccuracies in the statements upon which I am putting so much reliance do not lessen my belief in the general truth of them when taken as a whole. One cannot expect tradition, which is by word of mouth only, to be minutely exact.

As to Grandmother Koch's statement that her father, Balthaser Bock, was in the Revolutionary War, I have found that confirmed by other reliable family tradition as well as by local tradition. My father knew his grandfather, Balthaser Bock, and told me that the latter was in the Revolutionary War. More will be said about this in Chapter V. However, I have not found any papers among the public records to sustain the traditions. The rolls of many companies are missing. But, newspaper accounts of happenings, noted as they occurred, a hundred or more years ago, are, I believe, far more reliable than such accounts of present-day happenings, and have in many instances every sign of verity. In *The Adler* of Tuesday, June 26, 1827, published at Reading, Pennsylvania, the following notice (in the German language) respecting the death of Balthaser Bock appears:

On Sunday eight days ago, in Brunswick Township, Schuylkill County, Balthaser Bock, 81 years, 2 months and 18 days. Mr. Bock served as soldier during the Revolution in Captain May's Company under Colonel Haller in the so-called Flying Camp, and was in several battles with the British on York Island.

Captain George May lived in Windsor Township. That is where Balthaser Bock lived from boyhood, until he moved into Brunswick Township in 1790 or 1791. "York Island" is evidently intended for New York Island. More will appear on this point in the chapter on The





Bock Family, but what does appear here is sufficient confirmation of what Grandmother Koch said respecting her father's services in the Revolutionary War. The many particulars, in which I have found other statements of hers confirmed, satisfy me of the correctness of those lacking such confirmation. My grandmother was a reserved, quiet-spoken, fine, old, Christian lady, who was never given to gossip and never evinced a spirit of boastfulness in the least degree. She had no reason to invent any part of the story which she told me, and I am very sure that I have no desire either to add to or to subtract from it in any way whatever. Her statement that the father of William Koch and the father of Balthaser Bock were in the French and Indian War is a matter of interest to me, but the records of those who served in that war are too meager and unsatisfactory to be of much help, excepting in the cases where the preserved records make matters clear, dependable, and satisfactory. Where such records are lacking, tradition is all that is left. But when the sources of that tradition are as pure, undefiled, and unquestionable as the sources in this matter appear to be, to me the tradition becomes veritable history. In his introduction to his excellent recent book, *The Four Gospels From Aramaic*, George M. Lamsa asks: "But is not tradition another word for history?" and then says: "It is the living voice of the past conserving the value of its wisdom and experience . . ." And St. Luke, in the very beginning of his Gospel to Theophilus, shows that he depended to a very considerable extent upon tradition for his facts.

Prior to his moving from Maiden Creek Township into Brunswick Township, William Koch had been a private in Captain Nicholas Scheffer's company in the Revolutionary War (*Berks County in the Revolution*, by Morton L. Montgomery, pages 115 and 116). But on pages 158 and 159, Volume 5, *Fifth Series of Pennsyl-*





*vania Archives*, his name is misspelled "Kock." The appearance of such misspelling of the name of Koch occurs too frequently elsewhere in cases, that investigation clearly proves the incorrectness. Such misspelling of the name does not appear in the entire *United States Census of Pennsylvania* in 1790, and the name of William Kock appears there only once. William Koch, my ancestor, was the only other person of that name in the county of Berks in 1773, when a man of the same name, a resident of Reading, died. The William Koch of Reading was also a native of Pennsylvania, and had been in the Provincial Military Service as a private in the company of John Nicholas Weatherholdt on September 6, 1757, when he was twenty-five years old (pages 546-547, Vol. 2, *Second Series, Pennsylvania Archives*). Captain Nicholas Scheffer and twenty-one other members of his company, out of a total of thirty-five, are on the lists of taxables in Maiden Creek Township in 1775, or in 1778, or in both years. His company was mostly recruited in Maiden Creek Township, and there is no room to doubt the identity of my ancestor, William Koch, as a private in that company. On the strength of that enlistment, my cousin, Charles Howard Koch, Esq., now deceased, became a member of the Pennsylvania Society of the Sons of the Revolution in the city of Philadelphia on December 8, 1896. (See page 126, *Decennial Register of This Society in 1898*.)

An inference of probable service on the part of certain persons in the Continental Army may be drawn from the absence of their names on the lists of males over eighteen years of age recorded at the respective county seats in this state in 1777 and 1778. The lists consist of the names of all males over eighteen years old who had taken an oath of allegiance to this State before a justice of the peace in the county where the affiant resided. The total number on the recorded lists in Berks County is four





thousand, nine hundred and twenty, but the names of Henry Koch and William Koch are not found thereon. Males over eighteen years old who failed to take said oath were disqualified to hold office or any position of trust; they could not serve on juries, sue for debts, buy or sell real estate, and were disarmed. They were refused the right to be guardians, executors or administrators, were incapable of a legacy, deed, or gift, and liable to double taxes. They could not travel outside of the city or county where they lived, without being suspected as a spy or of holding principles inimical to the United States, and could be put in jail if they refused to take the said oath. But delegates in Congress, prisoners of war, officers and soldiers in the Continental Army, merchants and mariners trading in the ports of this State from foreign powers in amity with the United States and not becoming residents in this State were "declared not to be within the intent and meaning of this Act." And, as neither Henry Koch nor William Koch was within any of the excepted classes, save only "officers and soldiers in the Continental Army," there is ample ground for the inference that they were both in the army, unless they were so regardless of the law that they were in jail. Lacking proof of their oath of allegiance to the United States, the presumption of their loyalty to the State in whose territory they were born years before the Revolution stands irrebutted, and the record confirmation of army service by William Koch and Henry Koch adds to my conviction that both were in the ranks of those whose combined efforts threw off the yoke of Great Britain and established the independence of the United States of America. Henry Koch (Tulpehocken) was a second lieutenant in the Sixth Company of the Sixth Battalion in May, 1777 (Volume 2, *Pennsylvania Associators*, pages 257 to 276, and *Berks County in the Revolution*, page 65).





The said Charles Howard Koch informed me at least forty years ago that our great-grandfather, William Koch of Maiden Creek Township, was married to Phillipina Dreibelbis on the 16th of June, 1774. Miss Dreibelbis was a minor daughter of John Jacob Dreibelbis, who had lived and died in the adjoining township of Richmond. The Orphans' Court record of Berks County shows that the said William Koch became his wife's guardian on the 14th of May, 1776. William Koch's brother-in-law, Martin Dreibelbis, moved into what was then Brunswick Township, possibly as early as 1775. Dreibelbis there acquired the ground that John Fincher had occupied, and he and William Koch later laid the foundations of the present borough of Schuylkill Haven. After William Koch's first wife died, he married a daughter of Balthaser Neufang, who lived near Schuylkill Haven.

When Martin Dreibelbis moved into the vicinity of Schuylkill Haven that section was part of the township of Brunswick, but in 1790 part of Brunswick Township and part of Pine Grove Township were organized into a new township named Manheim, and Schuylkill Haven and its vicinity were in Manheim Township, where I find William Koch was taxed until about 1789. After that he was taxed in Brunswick (now East Brunswick) Township until he died in 1832. Part of the eastern boundary of William Koch's land in East Brunswick Township was the western boundary of land of Balthaser Bock. William Koch was a farmer there, and after he died his homestead of one hundred and seventy-six acres of land passed by his will to his son, John W. Koch, and later when John W. Koch died, it passed to his son, Morgan W. Koch, and from the latter to his son, Charles H. Koch, who lives there now and is one of the best-known farmers in that section of Schuylkill County. My grandfather, Henry Koch, was born on that farm, October 5, 1791. The land where William Koch lived last





has been continually and exclusively occupied by him and some of his descendants for at least one hundred and forty-seven years. William Koch owned adjoining land which extended northwardly and included the property now known as Kunkle's Mill. He had a grist-mill and a saw-mill there on the east branch of Pine Creek, but he never lived there. The grist-mill and saw-mill property was occupied for forty-eight years by my grandfather, Henry Koch, and all of his children were born there. In 1893 my father told me that the buildings that then stood there were all built by Henry Koch. Some of them may have been taken down and replaced by others since then. The new saw-mill and the large dam were put there after Henry Koch moved away. Both my grandfather and my father learned the flourmilling trade there. At the time of his death, Henry Koch lived in New Ringgold, where he had been engaged in the store business for many years.

I have not ascertained the date of the death of William Koch's first wife, nor the place of her burial, but I think she died in 1780 or 1781, because the first child by his second wife was born September 1, 1782. The second wife was Maria Magdalena Neufang, who was much his junior, she having been born April 27, 1766. She was a daughter of Balthaser Neufang, concerning whom interesting facts will be found in Chapter IV. William Koch had eight children by his second wife, and all of his children are named in his will, which is written in German. I will here set forth a translated copy of it.

TRANSLATION OF WILL IN WILL BOOK NO. 1, PAGE 154.

In the name of God Amen.

I, William Koch of Brunswick Township, Schuylkill County and State of Pennsylvania, farmer, although in body weak and old, find myself however in good memory and full understanding, therefore fully considering the fleeting nature and the shortness of this life, and the certainty of death I have therefore concluded





to make my last will and testament to order and declare as follows, namely:

My immortal soul I repose herewith into the hands of my blessed Saviour and my body to the mother earth through an orderly and Christian burial after my death.

And as regards the worldly goods and fortune with which it pleased the Lord to bless me with, I order decree and devise the same in the following wise, namely: My farm whereon I at present live in Brunswick Township, Schuylkill County, bounded by land of late Balthaser Bock, George Rausch and others containing about 176 acres, more or less, I offer, give and devise herewith to my son Johannes Koch in manner following: I offer it herewith to him for the sum of one thousand pounds good money, but out of this sum, namely one thousand pounds, he is to deduct the sum of four hundred pounds for his inheritance, according to the plan or foundation that every one of my children shall have four hundred pounds for his share of the inheritance, and it is further my will, that my son Johannes shall have to the farm every thing, my horses, cows or horned cattle, sheep, pigs, plows, harrows and all farming implements on my place, also all my household goods. This all he is to have as said for the above named sum of one thousand pounds including the farm — from which he is to deduct the sum of four hundred pounds as his inheritance, and the remaining six hundred he shall pay to my other children in manner following, namely:

My four children of my first wife namely Magdalena married to Henry Holler, Catharine, married to George Rausch, Susanna intermarried to Jacob Huntzinger and Maria married to David Kinner have already all received their full inheritance from me, namely their full four hundred pound — and according to a contract that I have with them for a piece of land which I had in the state of Ohio and which I sold to them, they still have to pay me two hundred pounds. This two hundred pounds, beside a Bond of one hundred pounds, which my son William Koch Jr. owes me on his land, and which will fall due on May 1st, 1829, will make then together with the six hundred pounds which my son Johannes Koch still has to pay — the sum of nine hundred pounds. This money my herein hereafter named Executor shall pay to my children of my second wife so that each of them shall also receive four hundred pounds. My son Jacob Koch, deceased, has received his four hundred pounds in full from me. So has also my son Samuel Koch received his four hundred pounds in full from me. So has also my son William Koch received his four





hundred pounds in full from me. My daughter Elizabeth married to Johannes Knosky has received one hundred and fifty pounds. My son Heinrich has received of me the sum of three hundred and fifty-two pounds fifteen shillings. My daughter Hanna married to Benjamin Bensinger has received from me the sum of one hundred and five pounds five shillings, and my daughter Esther married to Daniel Foltz has received of me the sum of seventy five pounds. And it is further my will that my herein hereafter named Executor, all the above named sums, which as said before, are yet to be paid to me and which reach the sum of nine hundred pounds shall collect when they are due and pay over to my children namely to those who have not as yet their four hundred pounds — he shall begin to pay to my daughter Esther married to Daniel Foltz and shall pay to her until she is equal to her sister Hanna. Then he shall continue to pay to these two yearly until they are equal to their sister Elizabeth, who is married to Johannes Knosky, and then he shall continue with them all alike to pay yearly to them all, till they all have received their four hundred pounds each, and what remains after my death and the death of my beloved wife Magdalena shall be divided equally among my children from my wife Magdalena.

Further, my son Johannes, who receives my farm, must give Bonds for the above named sum of six hundred pounds and he must pay these six hundred pounds in manner following: one hundred dollars yearly at a certain time and the first payment shall fall due on the first day of May 1829 and from then on every year a payment of one hundred dollars till the aforesaid six hundred pounds is paid. My son Johannes from the yearly hundred dollars payment shall give to my wife Magdalena always her twenty dollars so long as she remains my widow. Further it is my will and I hereby reserve for myself and my beloved wife Magdalena as also for her sister Catharine (who has been with us for so many years) the free right to live in the house where I now live as long as we live or so long as one of us live and he must further keep us good in eating, drinking, clothes, and everything we need, and in such a manner so that none will be in want and as is required by the law of this land. Should however my, in life beloved wife, Magdalena, marry after my death then she shall receive nothing from me.

Further and lastly I name, ordain and constitute herewith as Executor, to execute this my last Will and Testament, my son Heinrich Koch and witness herewith that this is the only Testament made by me and is my last Will and no other. In witness





whereof I have with my own hand signed and sealed this 25th day of August A. D. 1827.

(Signed) WILLIAM KOCH (SEAL)

Acknowledged, sealed and given over  
as the Testament and last Will of William  
Koch the testator in our presence as witness.

(Signed) Philip Hoy

(Signed) Jn Dreher

William Koch had sold to his daughter, Maria, and her husband, David Kinnear, a tract of land in Ohio. After deducting four hundred pounds from the price thereof, they still owed him two hundred pounds. My father told me that they moved to Ohio, and I have learned no more about them. He also told me that Samuel Koch, a son of William, moved to Michigan. I have learned no more about him. When the estate was finally settled each child by the second wife apparently received a little more than each of the children by the first wife had received.

Having stated what became of two of William Koch's children and his will showing that his first son, Jacob Koch, was already dead, it may be interesting to trace the other children a short distance. Magdalena Koch married Henry Haller. His father was Col. Henry Haller, a leading citizen of Reading, who had been the colonel of the Berks County regiment in the so-called Flying Camp in the early days of the Revolution. In 1779 and 1780 Colonel Haller was the wagon-master general of the Continental Army. After the Revolution he moved from Reading into Brunswick Township and lived there until he died in September, 1793. The town of McKeansburg was laid out in 1803 by Christian Kamp and Henry Haller, Jr., who was the husband of Magdalena Koch. The town was named after Governor McKean.

Catherina Koch married George Rausch. When Schuylkill County was erected in 1811, George Rausch





became one of the first two associate judges in the county. Rausch Station on the railroad south of New Ringgold took its name from Judge Rausch. John Rausch, a son of George, became sheriff of the county in 1823, and Henry Rausch in 1834. In 1861, John Rausch, another descendent of Judge Rausch, was elected sheriff. Livingstone V. Rausch, born 3 February, 1868, one of the firm of Rausch & Irish, who formerly owned and published the *Mahanoy Tribune*, was a descendant of Judge Rausch.

Susanna Koch married Jacob Huntzinger. He was elected treasurer of Schuylkill County in 1816, and again in 1822. In 1825, Samuel Huntzinger, a son of Jacob, was elected county treasurer, and in 1833, Samuel was elected register of wills, clerk of the Orphans' Court and recorder, and twenty-one years later he became prothonotary of Schuylkill County. Jacob Huntzinger, Jr., another son of Susanna Koch Huntzinger, was elected treasurer in 1840. A daughter of Samuel Huntzinger, namely, Susanna, married Franklin B. Kaercher, who at the time of his death was president of the Safe Deposit Bank of Pottsville. Mr. Kaercher was the Whig candidate in Schuylkill County and was elected treasurer in 1850. Six of his sons, all of whom I knew, became prominent people. George R. was an outstanding lawyer. He was district attorney in Schuylkill County during the trial of the Mollic Maguires, and later became the general solicitor of the Philadelphia and Reading Coal and Iron Company and the Philadelphia and Reading Railroad Company; Franklin P. was the secretary of the Philadelphia and Reading Coal and Iron Company; Samuel H. and Daniel W. were leading lawyers at the Schuylkill County Bar; William H. was a superintendent of the Lehigh Valley Coal Company, and Edward E. attained high rank as a mining engineer of the Philadelphia and Reading Coal and Iron Company.





In 1806, Elizabeth Koch, the first child of William Koch by his second wife, married the Rev. John Knoske, a Lutheran minister. He came from Prussia, where he was born June 24, 1779. When he married my great-grand aunt he served five congregations in Schuylkill County, namely: Jacob's, Hetzel's, Summer Mountain, Friedensburg, and the well-known Red Church below Orwigsburg. He lived near Friedensburg until 1811, when he went to Kutztown, where he lived until 1856, and then moved to Reading, and lived there until he died in 1859. He and his wife are buried in Charles Evans' Cemetery. While living at Kutztown he served a number of Lutheran churches in Berks County.

Hannah Koch married Benjamin Bensinger, a tailor. Esther Koch became the wife of Dr. Daniel Foltz, who died in 1830 and is buried at McKeansburg. Later she married Richard Stephens, whose son, Richard H. Stephens, was a well-known resident of Pottsville for many years. William Koch, Jr., was a farmer for a time, and then moved to Schuylkill Haven, where he engaged in business. Henry Koch, who was my grandfather, lived all his lifetime in the township of East Brunswick, where he was born. He lived at several places in the township, the last being New Ringgold, where he died. He spent his life as a farmer, a miller, and a merchant. He was sole executor of his fathers' last will and testament. John W. Koch, the youngest child of William Koch, as already stated, inherited the farm homestead and lived there for many years. He then turned the farm over to his son, Morgan, and moved to a farm near Pinedale.

After Balthaser Neufang died in 1788, his widow and William Koch, his son-in-law, were the executors of his last will and testament; and after Mrs. Neufang died in 1794, William Koch was the sole executor of her will. He was also the sole executor of the will of Martin Dreibelbis, who was his brother-in-law by his first wife. Drei-





belbis died in 1799, and was then the wealthiest man in Manheim Township. The foregoing facts, coupled with the alliances made by the daughters of William Koch, and the careers made by his own sons, seem to indicate that my great-grandfather, William Koch, commanded the respect and confidence of his fellow-men. He and two of his sons, William, Jr., and Henry, were among the most active in building the first church at McKeanburg, concerning which more will appear in Chapter V. William Koch and his second wife are buried in the cemetery connected with that church. The inscription on his tombstone is in German. Translated it reads thus:

Here Rests in God  
WILLIAM KOCH

who was born on  
1st April in  
the year of God 1747.  
near Philadelphia in  
the State of Pennsylvania. He died at the  
age 85 years 1 month  
2 days.

In that 3rd May 1832  
his earthly life ended.

Five generations of Kochs are buried in that cemetery. William Koch's second wife lies beside him, and her sister, Anna Catherine Neufang, lies next to her. As already noted, William Koch made provisions in his will for that sister-in-law. My father told me that she had always been sickly. Nevertheless, she outlived both William Koch and his wife and was nearly eighty years old when she died. Her father, Balthaser Neufang, had also expressed his solicitude for her and had made some special provision for her welfare in his will dated September 29, 1787, probated January 12, 1788.

My father, Daniel Koch, was the first child of Henry Koch (4). He was born at what is now best-known as





Kunkle's Mill on December 24, 1816. When he became sixteen years old he went to Philadelphia and worked there in a store to learn to speak English. Later he learned the grist-mill trade at home and followed it for a few years. Then, after keeping store in McKeansburg a short time, he moved to Middleport, and after keeping the leading store there until 1857 he made a trip to the territory of Nebraska, where he bought considerable land. My nephew who lives in Omaha and is a prominent business man there told us that my father donated the land for the first church in that territory, at Papillion. Some of the land he owned there was later sold to the United States Government for the site of a fort. Upon his return home in 1857 he bought a farm in Auburn, Pennsylvania, upon which we moved in January, 1858. In 1860, he, Harry Huhn of Tamaqua, and Lin Bartholmew, a prominent lawyer in Pottsville, (all Republicans) were elected members of the House of Representatives at Harrisburg. The election was sometimes locally called "The Election of the Three Lins"—referring to Lincoln, Hamlin and Lin Bartholmew. When the Confederate Army entered Pennsylvania in 1863 my father and brother, Jeremiah, enlisted with the emergency troops. Their regiment was the twenty-seventh; it retreated through Wrightsville and over the bridge to Columbia when General Early compelled it to seek safety. The company in which were my father and brother was the last to enter the bridge, and, in order to stop Early, a barrel of coal-oil was emptied onto the bridge floor and set on fire. The fire destroyed the bridge and stopped Early, who, if he had crossed the bridge, would have gone to Harrisburg and captured the capital of the State. Governor Curtin, who knew my father well, offered him a captain's commission when he appeared in Harrisburg at the head of twenty men to enlist, but father said no man on the regiment could shoot better than he could





and he wanted to carry a rifle. He was a very good marksman and knew why he wanted to carry a rifle; so he and Jerry both enlisted as privates in the same company. After Lee's defeat at Gettysburg and his retreat into Maryland the regiment was mustered out of service. My two oldest brothers, Francis and Allen, were then in the regular army, which they had entered in 1861 upon an enlistment for three years. In 1866 my father sold the farm at Auburn and bought a grist-mill near the mouth of Monocacy Creek in Berks County, to which we moved. But he soon sold that mill and bought another in Fleetwood, Pennsylvania, to which he moved in 1867. After operating that mill for sixteen years he sold it and retired at Fleetwood at the age of sixty-six.

The main purpose of this book is to trace my ancestors who were pioneers, and to conclusively show my own descent from them, but I have decided also to add to the chapter on each family stock the names of some other descendants. The family trees will not be complete. I have not tried to make them so. The family trees will show, as far as I know them, each generation by the appropriate number in parentheses immediately following each separate name; but, in addition to some names, I shall occasionally add other brief data respecting the particular individual. Figure (1) will indicate the earliest generation of which I have knowledge respecting each family stock; figure (2) the second generation, and so on.

#### THE KOCH FAMILY TREE

JOHANN HENNRICH KOCH (1), b. in Germany, 1660, arrived in Philadelphia 16 September 1738. No further information.

HENRICH KOCH (2), b. in Germany, 1715, arrived in Philadelphia with his father, 16 September 1738. He probably had a wife then who died, and I think later married Anna Margaret Riss, or Reis, or Ries (see text), who arrived in Philadelphia as a minor under 14 on 18 September 1732. Henrich Koch served in the French and Indian War and had eight children.

1. MARTIN KOCH (3), b. probably in 1741 or 1742, lived last in Richmond Township, Berks County. Know of only one child, Sarah, b. 4 December 1791.





2. HENRY KOCH (3), b. probably in 1743.
3. ELIZABETH KOCH (3), b. 29 September, 1745, m.———Meyer.
4. WILLIAM KOCH (3), b. 1 April 1747, d. 3 May 1832. See under separate heading below "William Koch (3) and Descendants."
5. MARIA ELIZABETH KOCH (3), baptized 15 November 1749.
6. ANNA P. KOCH (3), baptized 22 June 1755.
7. MAGDALENA KOCH (3), b. 19 November 1757.
8. CATHARINE KOCH (3), b. 31 August 1763.

## WILLIAM KOCH (3) AND DESCENDANTS

Was a son of Henrich Koch (2), b. 1 April 1747, d. 3 May 1832. Served in the Revolutionary War. Buried at McKeansburg, Pa. Married twice. First, PHILLIPINA DREIBELBIS, 16 June 1774, b. 175—, d. about 1780 or 1781, and by her had four daughters. Second, m. MARIA MAGDALENA NEUFANG, b. 27 April 1766, d. 14 February 1827, and by her had eight children. His twelve children were: 1 Magdalena Koch (4), 2 Catharine Koch (4), 3 Susanna Koch (4), 4 Maria Koch (4), 5 Elizabeth Koch (4), 6 Jacob Koch (4), 7 Samuel Koch (4), 8 William Koch (4); 9 Henry Koch (4), 10 Hannah Koch (4), 11 Esther Koch (4), and 12 John W. Koch (4). The known dates of the birth of some of these twelve children and the order in which they are named in William Koch's will incline me to think that the children are here named in the order of their birth.

1. MAGDALENA KOCH (4), b. 177—, d.———; m. HENRY HALLER, a son of Colonel Henry Haller.
2. CATHARINE KOCH (4), b. 177—, d.———; m. GEORGE RAUSCH, one of the first associate judges in Schuylkill County.
3. SUSANNA KOCH (4), b. 19 April 1779, d.———1868; m. JOHN JACOB HUNTZINGER, b.———1778, d.———1862. Children: (A) Samuel Huntzinger (5), (B) Jacob Huntzinger (5), (C) William Huntzinger (5), (D) Elizabeth Huntzinger (5).

(A) SAMUEL HUNTZINGER (5), b. 20 October 1800, d. 5 August 1867; m. Eleanor Wollison, b.———d.———. Children:

(a) ELLEN HUNTZINGER (6), m. Joseph John McGinness.

(b) SUSANNAH CAROLINE HUNTZINGER (6), b. 17 May 1823, d. 27 June 1900; m. Franklin B. Kaercher, 5 September 1844, b. 18 September 1821, d. 29 August 1881. Children:

(1\*) George Ringgold Kaercher (7), b. 1 November 1845, d. 19 September 1890; m. Annette Hughes, 3 August 1885, b. 29 January 1851, d. 15 May 1933. Children:

Frances Kaercher (8), b. 28 June 1886; m. George M. Keiser, 20 July 1920, b. 19 December 1879, d. 25 May 1924. Children:

George Michael Keiser (9), b. 15 September 1921; Edward Kaercher Keiser (9), b. 23 October 1924.

George H. Kaercher (8), b. 20 May 1888, m. Mary Elizabeth Bealm.

(2\*) Franklin Pierce Kaercher (7), b. 7 April 1848, d.———, m. Helen Reilly.

(3\*) Samuel Huntzinger Kaercher (7), b. 28 September 1850, d. 16 October 1913; m. Rannie Althouse, b. 22 July 1873, d.———. One son:

Philip Kaercher (8), b.———d.———.





## THE KOCH FAMILY

(4\*) William H. Kaercher (7), b. 14 September 1852, d.———; m. Hannah Brown, 18 June 1878.

(5\*) Ida Louise Kaercher (7), b. 21 March 1855, d.———, m. Frank N. Day. Children:

Frank Day (8), Mary Day (8), Alfred Day (8), Samuel Day (8), George Day (8), Pardee Day (8).

(6\*) Ellen Catharine Kaercher (7), b. 21 May 1857, d. 6 January 1861.

(7\*) Edward Edgar Kaercher (7), b. 20 June, 1859, d.———; m. Catharine Troutman, b.———d.———. Children:

Gertrude Kaercher (8), b.———d.———, m. Christian H. Dreshman. Children:

Gertrude K. Dreshman (9), m. Frederick Yuengling. One child:

Frederick George Yuengling (10).

Catharine K. Dreshman (9), m. William Thomas.

(8\*) Susan Caroline Kaercher (7), b. 24 February 1862, m. Rev. James P. Hawkes, 1 April 1888.

(9\*) James McClellan Kaercher (7), b. 7 August 1863, d. 22 November 1863.

(10\*) Daniel Webster Kaercher (7), b. 28 February 1867; d. 20 January 1935; m. Mary Krebs, 17 December 1891.

(c) CATHARINE HUNTZINGER (6), who married Henry Edmonds. Their children were:

(1\*) Hon. George Washington Edmonds (7).

(2\*) John Edmonds (7).

(3\*) Samuel Edmonds (7).

(4\*) Franklin Spencer Edmonds (7), m.———Beitler.

(d) WILLIAM HUNTZINGER (6).

(e) JAMES M. HUNTZINGER (6).

(f) GEORGE W. HUNTZINGER (6).

(B) JACOB HUNTZINGER (5), b. 6 November 1807, d. 26 April 1892; m. Elizabeth Krebs, b.———1810, d. 1 August 1894. Children:

(a) ELIZA LOUISA HUNTZINGER (6), b. 14 October 1829, d. 3 June, 1923; m. Colonel Henry L. Cake, b. 6 October 1827, d. 26 August 1899. Children:

(1\*) Clara Margaret Cake (7), m. John H. Stidfole.

(2\*) Sarah Elizabeth Cake (7), m. Dr. Albert A. Seibert.

(3\*) Edith Jane Cake (7), m. Siston J. Miller.

(4\*) Henry W. Cake (7).

(b) HENRY HALLER HUNTZINGER (6).

(c) WILLIAM FRANCIS HUNTZINGER (6).

(d) JACOB ALBERT HUNTZINGER (6).

(e) and (f), two other children who died in infancy.

(C) WILLIAM HUNTZINGER (5), m.———had a number of children. Among them PHOEBE HUNTZINGER (6) who married George Ryon, a lawyer in Shamokin, Pa., and there were intermar-





riages, I think, of William Huntzinger's descendants in the families of Werner, Hoy, Dettra and others.

(D) ELIZABETH HUNTZINGER (5), m. Stephen Balliett.

4. MARIA KOCH (4), b. about 1780, m. David Kinnear. Moved to Ohio.

5. ELIZABETH KOCH (4), b. 1 September 1782, d. 16 February 1868; m. Rev. John Knoske, 1 July 1806, b. 24 June 1779, d. 24 September 1859. Buried Charles Evans Cemetery, Reading, Pa. Children:

(A) WILHELMINA KNOSKE (5), m. David Hottenstein.

(B) LOUISA KNOSKE (5), m. John Trago.

(C) ELIZABETH KNOSKE (5), m. Benjamin Miller.

(D) MARIA KNOSKE (5), m. Skiles Trago.

(E) WILLIAM KNOSKE (5).

(F) EDWARD KNOSKE (5) was captain in the Union Army in the Civil War. m. Catharine Bower. Children:

(a) J. CHARLES KNOSKE (6).

(b) J. WILLIAM KNOSKE (6).

(c) HARRISON KNOSKE (6), m. Clara Troutman.

(d) LOUISA E. KNOSKE (6), b. 2 March 1858, m. William H. DeLong. One child:

(1\*) Katie Elda DeLong (7), m. Dr. Oscar F. Kunkel. Children:

Alton DeLong Kunkel (8) and Lester DeLong Kunkel (8).

(G) CHARLES KNOSKE (5) and (H) and (I) two children who died in infancy.

6. JACOB KOCH (4). He was the first son of WILLIAM KOCH (3). Is mentioned in the will of William Koch as having been dead when the will was made, 25 August 1827. Have not located his grave. No further information.

7. SAMUEL KOCH (4). Have very little information. He married, moved to Michigan, and changed his name to Cook.

8. WILLIAM KOCH (4), b. 9 November 1789, d. August 1875. First married Anna Maria Bolich, b. 10 January 1791, d. 27 January 1829. Children:

(A) ISAAC KOCH (5), b. 5 March 1815, d. 11 May 1827.

(B) CATHARINE KOCH (5).

(C) WILLIAM W. KOCH (5), married second, Brigetta Shaeffer, b. 19 December 1804, d. 24 June 1894. Children:———

(D) LEWIS B. KOCH (5), b. 1 March 1831, d. 1 August 1860.

(E) ELIZABETH KOCH (5), b. — August 1836, d. ————1837.

(B) CATHARINE KOCH (5), daughter of WILLIAM KOCH (4), b. 24 April 1816, d. 24 July 1873; m. John Dewald Deibert, b. 1 May 1806, d. 8 October 1861. Children:

(a) MARY C. DEIBERT (6), b. ————d. ————; m. Rev. Alfred A. Yeiser, b. 18 October 1841, d. 29 February 1876. One son:

(1\*) Dr. ————Yeiser (7).

(b) ROBERT DEIBERT (6), b. 22 December 1846, d. 24 June 1847.





## THE KOCH FAMILY

(c) EMMA DEIBERT (6), b. ————185—, d. ————.

(d) JOHN T. DEIBERT (6), b. — April 185—, d. 22 January 1937;  
m. Ella Hannum. Children:

(1\*) John Melville Deibert (7), (2\*) Arthur Deibert (7), (3\*)  
Allen Deibert (7).

(C) WILLIAM W. KOCH (5), son of WILLIAM KOCH (4), b. 15  
January 1824, d. 6 October 1890; m. Catharine Kerschner, b. ————  
1827, d. ————1917. Children:

(a) SALEM W. KOCH (6), b. 1840, d. 1916; m. Anna Maria  
Bolich, b. 1848, d. 1919.

(b) WESLEY KOCH (6).

9. HENRY KOCH (4), son of WILLIAM KOCH (3), b. 5 October 1791,  
d. 19 February 1867; m. Susanna Boch, 21 May 1815, b. 19 July 1797, d.  
12 December 1886. Children: (A) Daniel Koch (5), (B) Benjamin  
Koch (5), (C) Mary Ann Koch (5), (D) Catharine Koch (5), (E)  
Hugh Koch (5), (F) Sarah Koch (5), (G) Amanda Maria Koch (5),  
(H) Henry Koch (5), (I) Charles Richard Koch (5), (J) William  
Jefferson Koch (5).

(A) DANIEL KOCH (5), son of 9 HENRY KOCH (4), b. 24 Decem-  
ber 1816, d. 7 January 1903; m. 24 October 1839, Mary Ann Beck, b.  
28 January 1818, d. 26 August 1888. Both buried at Fleetwood, Pa.  
Children:

i. HARRIET KOCH (6), b. 17 January 1841, d. 30 December 1916;  
m. Benjamin Jacobs, 12 March 1865, b. 7 January 1842, d. 2 May  
1934. Lived at Bala, Pa. Both buried at Westminster Cemetery,  
Lower Merion Twp., Montgomery County, Pa. Children:

a. Mary Georgiana Jacobs (7), b. 31 March 1867.

b. Sallie Geneveria Jacobs (7), b. 2 February 1870.

c. Hester Zorah Jacobs (7), b. 6 February 1874; m. William  
Wilde, 11 October 1894, b. 31 December 1872, d. 2 November 1911;  
m. John M. Bossard, 16 August 1916, b. 23 February 1876. Live  
at Bala, Pa.

d. Henry Daniel Jacobs (7), b. 28 March 1877, d. 23 July 1927;  
m. Florence Hill, 12 January 1894, b. 19 January 1875. Children:

1. Leroy Benjamin Jacobs (8), b. 24 April 1895; m. Anna  
Slemmer, 1 March 1917. Children:

(A) Leroy Benjamin Jacobs (9), b. 2 February 1920.

(B) Clarence Earl Jacobs (9), b. 3 February 1922.

(C) Amanda Florence Jacobs (9), b. 28 March 1924.

(D) Elison Jacobs (9), b. 5 October 1925.

(E) George Jacobs (9), b. 21 December 1930.

2. Clarence Earl Jacobs (8), b. 28 July 1898; m. Edna Mae  
Jones, 6 September 1917, b. 24 February 1900.

(A) Evelyn Mae Jacobs (9), b. 27 June 1924, d. 12 April 1926.

(B) Robert Earl Jacobs (9), b. 26 September 1926.

(C) Richard Leonard Jacobs (9), b. 27 October 1929.

3. Ralph Richard Jacobs (8), b. 11 January 1904; m. Anna Mae  
Kaelin, 5 September 1924. Children:





- (A) Miriam Mae Jacobs (9), b. 16 August 1925.
- (B) Marguerite Jacobs (9), b. 28 August 1926.
- (C) Kathleen Jacobs (9), b. 15 August 1928.
- 4. Elanor Jacobs (8), b. 21 November 1905, d. 4 March 1916.
- e. Catharine Irene Jacobs (7), b. 28 October 1880; m. George L. Walters, 10 May 1913, b. 23 May 1875.
- f. Richard Allen Jacobs (7), b. 6 April 1883, m. Margaret Schaaf, 24 September 1910. Children:
  - 1. Harriet Lavina Jacobs (8), b. 15 June 1912; m. Carl Wagner, 2 March 1934.
  - 2. Georgianna Geneveria Jacobs (8), b. 15 September 1916.
- ii. FRANCIS DANIEL KOCH (6), b. 21 August 1842, d. 5 December 1917; m. Martha Jane Huff, 17 January 1865, b. 4 January 1843, d. 28 October 1916. Served throughout the Civil War, captain Company I, 48th Regiment, Pa. Veterans Volunteers. Severely wounded at the battle of Fredericksburg, 13 December 1862. Lived at Conshohocken. Buried at Roxborough, Pa. Children:
  - a. Allen Andrew Grant Koch (7), b. 2 February 1868.
  - b. Minnie Anderson Koch (7), b. 13 August 1870, d. 12 June 1873.
  - c. Howard Clancy Koch (7), b. 6 October 1873; m. Eva Colen, 3 July 1895, b. 21 April 1874. Conshohocken, Pa. Children:
    - 1. James Francis Koch (8), b. 24 February 1896; m. Elinor E. W. Smyth, 21 October 1920, b. 7 October 1896. Live at Hazleton, Pa.
  - (A) Mary Louise Koch (9), b. 7 October 1922.
  - (B) James Francis Koch (9), b. 12 February 1927.
  - 2. William Clayton Koch (8), b. 22 November 1897; m. Marie Urich, 12 June 1926, b. 12 October 1896.
  - 3. Helen Elizabeth Koch (8), b. 19 July 1905; m. Matthias Elias Nuttila, 16 March 1935, b. 25 March 1902.
  - d. Benjamin Daniel Koch (7), b. 22 January 1875; m. Laura Heidler Shenk, 27 December 1900, b. 4 April 1871. Live in Conshohocken, Pa. Children:
    - 1. Anna Martha Koch (8), b. 17 October 1901, d. 26 July 1902.
    - 2. Benjamin Carl Koch (8), b. 23 October 1903; m. Carlستا Eve Edinger, 12 October 1929, b. 10 July 1902.
    - (A) Robert Carl Koch (9), b. 7 August 1935.
    - 3. George Walton Koch (8), b. 23 March 1905; m. Barbara Caroline Boston, 3 October 1931, b. 13 August 1905.
    - (A) Barbara Carol Koch (9), b. 24 June 1934.
    - 4. Harold Christian Koch (8) b. 21 February 1907; m. Violet Berger Blouch, 10 October 1931, b. 19 October 1904. He is a Methodist minister. Live in Pine Grove, Pa.
    - 5. Elizabeth Shenk Koch (8), b. 21 September 1911.
  - e. George Richard Koch (7), b. 22 July 1877; m. Elizabeth Josephine Kramer, 22 September 1909. Conshohocken, Pa.
    - 1. John Lindauer Koch (8), b. 18 November 1914.
    - 2. George Richard Koch (8), b. 10 July 1920.
    - 3. James Reed Koch (8), b. 26 September 1922.





## THE KOCH FAMILY

iii. ALLEN KOCH (6), b. 10 February 1844, d. 31 March 1911. Lived in Omaha and is buried there. Served three years in Civil War, Company I, 48th Regiment, Pa. Veteran Volunteers. m. Flora Jane Whittimore, b. 3 November 1853, d. 17 January 1884; buried at Ashland, Nebraska. m. Orianna Adell Wetmore, 15 September 1886, b. 4 August 1863.

a. Marie Koch (7), b. 30 August 1880; m. William Carleton Slater, 18 September 1901, b. 25 September 1878. Live Cleveland, Ohio.

b. Henry Allen Koch (7), b. 27 June 1887; m. Katherine Esmond Denny, 11 February 1926, b. 26 March, 1900. Lives in Omaha, Nebraska.

1. Henry Allen Koch, Jr., (8), b. 17 November 1929.

2. John Foresman Koch (8), b. 25 May 1938.

c. Richard Wetmore Koch (7), b. 19 February 1903; m. Virginia Claire Schertz, 7 December 1935.

iv. JEREMIAH KOCH (6), b. 27 October 1845, d. 16 March 1904. Member 27th Pa. Emergency Troops, 1863; m. Margaret McMichael, 22 October 1873, b. 24 March 1856. Lived at Columbia, Pa.

a. Zora Koch (7), b. 5 February 1875; m. John Norris Mowery, 2 June 1902, b. 24 December 1873. Live in Worcester, Mass.

b. Bertha Koch (7), b. 24 October 1880, d. 7 April 1926.

c. Erna Koch (7), b. 24 September 1885; m. Dr. Harry Corbett Stover, ———, b. 12 August 1878.

1. Esther Koch Stover (8), b. 29 March 1905; m. Earl Henry Springer, 28 March 1931, b. 21 July 1904.

v. ALBERT KOCH (6), b. 24 November 1847, d. 6 April 1853.

vi. SARAH MARIA KOCH (6), b. 26 March 1850; m. Dr. Levi R. Lentz, 20 May 1869, b. 23 December 1836, d. 27 May 1902; m. Joshua Pitt Felt, 22 August 1912, b. 1845, d. 3 July 1919. Now lives in Reading, Pa.

a. Oliver Lentz (7), b. 26 August 1872; m. Susanna Elizabeth Berkholder, b. 5 January 1892. Live in Reading, Pa. He is a lawyer.

1. Dorothy Berkholder Lentz (8), b. 24 July 1911; m. Harold H. Christian Hausen, 17 February 1934.

(A) Linda Ann Hausen (9), b. 18 February 1935.

(B) Sue Mame Hausen (9), b. 20 July 1937.

2. Sarah Berkholder Lentz (8), b. 20 August 1913; m. William Henry Wilson, 2 May 1935.

(A) Patricia Wilson, b. — May 1937.

vii. RICHARD HENRY KOCH (6), b. 2 April 1852; m. ANNIE SUSAN PHILLIPS, 30 September 1884, b. 22 April 1862, d. 14 July 1925. Taught school eight years, became a lawyer, was Judge of Court of Common Pleas 21 years and 3 months in Schuylkill County, became a Retired Judge 2 January 1932. Lives in Pottsville, Pa.

a. Leroy Phillips Koch (7), b. 11 July 1885, d. 27 May 1886.

b. Roscoe Richard Koch (7), b. 17 June 1887; m. Mary Louise Smyth, 30 June 1915, b. 21 July 1888. Live in Haverford, Pa.





1. Richard Henry Koch, II, (8), b. 2 March 1918.
2. Mary Louise Koch (8), b. 10 March 1924.
- c. Helen Elizabeth Koch (7), b. 17 July 1889; m. Dr. Joel T. Boone, Commander U. S. Navy, 20 June 1914, b. 29 August 1889. Doctor Boone was physician to President Hoover and assistant physician to Presidents Harding and Coolidge.
1. Suzanne Boone (8), b. 22 May 1920.
- d. Marshall McKinley Koch (7), b. 24 September 1891; m. Mary Elizabeth Von Kaentzel, 21 July 1921, b. 15 January 1900. Live in Denver, Colorado.
1. Richard Collier Koch (8), b. 23 June 1922.
2. Marshall Koch (8), b. 19 February 1924.
3. John Allen Koch (8), b. 19 February 1924.
- e. Mary Marjorie Koch (7), b. 22 September 1893; m. John Parke Hood, Jr., 8 August 1917, b. 21 April 1893. Lives in Pottsville, Pa.
1. John Parke Hood, III, (8), b. 21 February 1919.
2. Marjorie Hood (8), b. 20 December 1921.
- viii. EMANUEL KOCH (6), b. 3 March 1854, d. 1 July 1922; m. Ida Barbara Schnur, 12 August 1884; divorced; m. Caroline Frederic Forstmeyer, 18 November 1899, b. 15 September 1859, d. 14 February 1935. Lived at Koch Ridge, Arkansas, the place taking its name from him.
- a. John Richard Glen Koch (7), b. 20 May 1885; m. Lorraine A. Archer, b. ————1883, d. 25 June 1935. Lives at Bakersfield, California.
- ix. ARENIUS GLENN KOCH (6), b. 3 April 1856; m. Sarah Barbara Hottenstein, b. 10 October 1863, d. 18 November 1932. Lives at Charlotte, N. C.
- a. Maze Koch (7), b. 21 September 1886, d. 21 September 1887.
- b. Lynn Jairus Koch (7), b. 4 August 1885; m. Elizabeth S. Fisher, nee Fenstermacher, 28 September 1907.
- c. Mary Barbara Koch (7), b. 17 June 1888; m. 20 August 1921, Gene E. Kemp, b. 2 November 1891. Live in Charlotte, N. C.
- x. CATHARINE MARY KOCH (6), b. 8 June 1859, d. 2 February 1937; m. Oscar I. Melot, 4 November 1882, b. 15 March 1858, d. 13 May 1927. Lived in Fleetwood, Pa. Both are buried there.
- a. Grace Koch Melot (7), b. 9 September 1883.
- b. Scott Melot (7), b. 25 December 1884; m. Mary A. Carl, 24 January 1910, b. 20 March 1884. Live in Kutztown, Pa.
1. John Oscar Melot (8), b. 12 May 1911.
- c. Earl Daniel Melot (7), b. 1 June 1891; m. Mabel A. Savage, 20 September 1913, b. 5 October 1893.
1. Ruth Ellen Melot (8), b. 9 November 1914.
- d. Ruth Rebecca Melot (7), b. 18 May 1897; m. William Lease Wahl, 21 February 1920, b. 13 October 1895. Live in Fleetwood, Pa.
1. William Jacob Wahl (8), b. 4 May 1921.
2. John Jacob Wahl (8), b. 17 July 1924.





## THE KOCH FAMILY

xi. AMBROSE ELLSWORTH KOCH (6), b. 14 June 1864, d. 1 November 1914. Lived in St. Louis, Mo. Is buried there. m. Emily Dallimore.

a. Glen D. Koch (7), b. 26 March 1890, d. 9 October 1925.

(B) BENJAMIN KOCH (5), son of 9 HENRY KOCH (4), b. 1 February 1819, d. 24 June 1898, m. Lucy Dreher. Children:

(a) AMANDA KOCH (6), b. ————d. ————. In 1865 married Joseph Frederici, b. February 1841, d. April 1922. Children:

(1\*) John Frederici (7).

(2\*) Frank Frederici (7).

(3\*) Gertrude Frederici (7), m. Abraham Wenn.

(b) CATHARINE KOCH (6), b. 25 December 1844, d. September 1911; m. George D. Moyer, 25 December 1863. Children:

(1\*) Levera K. Moyer (7), b. 10 November 1865; m. Dr. Isaac Plymire. One child:

Mabel K. Plymire (8), b. 12 July 1891.

(2\*) Howard K. Moyer (7), b. 16 September 1867; m. Minnie A. Linder. One child:

Catharine Elizabeth Moyer (8), b. 2 August 1887, d. 24 June 1930, m. Colonel Marion Gray. Children:

Barbara Gray (9), b. 1 January 1924; Kathryn Gray (9), b. 5 May 1930.

(3\*) Laura A. Moyer (7), b. 25 April 1870, d. 12 November 1933; m. David R. Schall.

(4\*) Morris K. Moyer (7), b. 24 May 1873.

(5\*) Mason K. Moyer (7), b. 5 August 1875, m. Eva Sorber. Children:

George D. Moyer (8) and Lawrence Moyer (8).

(c) MARY KOCH (6), m. Thomas Ebeling.

(d) HENRY KOCH (6), b. 5 May 1851, d. ————; m. Victoria Susanna Bower (Barr), b. 21 December 1851. Children:

(1\*) Nydia Koch (7), m. Joseph Feindt.

(2\*) Mamie Edith Koch (7), b. 1 October 1875; m. George Arlington Bossler, b. 27 May 1874. Children:

Edith Augusta Bossler (8), m. Frank Green.

Margaret Arline Bossler (8), m. James Craig Buick. Children:

Richard Bossler Buick (9), Margaret Roberta Buick (9), James Arlington Buick (9), Janice Louise Buick (9).

Vivian Catharine Bossler (8), m. Edwin Dages.

(3\*) Florence Louise Koch (7), m. Everett Waitt.

(4\*) Harold H. Koch (7), m. Emma Moore.

(e) DANIEL KOCH (6), b. 9 March 1853, d. 13 April 1932; m. Mary Alice Yost, b. 9 April 1855, d. 15 August 1936. One child:

Laura Alberta Koch (7), b. 17 October 1877; m. Chauncey M. F. Egel, b. 14 September 1877, d. 29 September 1934.





BENJAMIN KOCH (5) married Hannah Fleim after his first wife died, and by her had three children:

(f) ELIZABETH KOCH (6), b.———, m. Samuel Bock. Two children:

Clayton Bock (7) and Eugene Bock (7).

(g) SUSAN KOCH (6), b.———, d. 12 August 1938, m. Charles S. Kline.

(h) EDWARD KOCH (6), b.———d.———, m. Bella Schroepe.

(C) MARY ANN KOCH (5), daughter of 9 HENRY KOCH (4), b. 13 August 1822, d. 29 March 1879; m. Eli Miller, b. 28 January 1817, d. 5 March 1879. Both buried at McKeansburg. They had six children:

(a) FRANCIS MILLER (6), b.———d.———, m. Catharine Hummel. Children:

Oscar, George, Charles, Richard, Albert, Virginia and Anna.

(b) WILLIAM H. MILLER (6), b. 3 December 1847, d. 26 August 1875. First married Cordelia Yost. One child:

Harvey W. Miller (7), b. 19 May 1873, d. 4 September 1885.

Second married Ella Reed. Four children:

Laura Miller (7); Elva Miller (7), m.———King. Two children. Nellie Miller (7), William Miller (7).

(c) WINFIELD SCOTT MILLER (6), b. 18 January 1853, d. 10 November 1935; m. Victoria Bensinger, 16 August 1856. Her mother was a Schuster. Children:

Agnes Miller (7), Sarah Miller (7); Mary Miller (7), m. George Irvin; Charles E. Miller (7); Catharine Miller (7), m. Charles Fisher; Irvin Miller (7), Archibald Miller (7); Harriet Miller (7), m. Roy Guilford; Edgar S. Miller (7), Franklin E. Miller (7), Lester Miller (7).

(d) CHARLES R. MILLER (6), b. 1858, m. Mary Hoy. Is a doctor who practices at Harrisburg, Pa. Children:

Maude Miller (7), m. Whiteman; Florence Miller (7), m.———Carr.

(e) ELLA MILLER (6), b. 1855, d. 1921. Buried at McKeansburg.

(f) ANNIE MILLER (6), b. 16 April 1860; m. Thomas B. Dreher, b. 7 October 1859, d. 30 July 1938. Children:

1. Ralph Dreher (7), b.———, d. (aged 27).
2. George Dreher (7), died when a baby.
3. Nellie Dreher (7), died in childhood.

(D) CATHARINE KOCH (5), daughter of 9 HENRY KOCH (4), b. 1 May 1825, d. 14 September 1864; m. William Shuman, b.———, d. 5 July 1868. Children:

(a) ELIZABETH ANN SHUMAN (6), b. 26 January 1850; m. John Allen Stephens, b. 28 November 1872, d.———. Children:

1. Henrietta Esther Stephens (7), b. 17 October 1873, d. 18 August 1876.
2. Allen Clinton Stephens (7), b. 8 September 1875, m. Isabel Buch. Children:





## THE KOCH FAMILY

- 1\* Sarah Elizabeth Stephens (8), b. 20 May 1902.  
 2\* John Buch Stephens (8), b. 18 August 1904, d. 10 May 1905.  
 3\* Isabel Adella Stephens (8), b. 11 July 1906.
3. Charles Shuman Stephens (7), b. 7 October 1877, d. 1 February 1907.
- (b) CHARLES SHUMAN (6), m.———.  
 (c) EMMA CATHERINE SHUMAN (6).  
 (d) WILLIAM SHUMAN (6).  
 (e) MARY SHUMAN (6), b. 3 February 1859, m.———Hodge.  
 (f) SARAH ALICE SHUMAN (6), b. 12 October 1861, d.———.
- (E) HUGH KOCH (5), son of 9 HENRY KOCH (4), b. 18 December 1826, d. 26 August 1885. Served in the Union Army in the Civil War. m. Fietta Rebecca Moser, b. 22 August 1830, d. 25 October, 1911. Children:
- (a) AGNES KOCH (6), b. 1852, d. 1934; m. Josiah Franklin Horn, b. 1853, d. 1921. Children:
- 1\* Margaret Horn (7).  
 2\* Ira Horn (7), m. Cora Melfy. One child:  
 Franklin Horn (8).
- (b) ESTHER KOCH (6); m. William Reed, d. 10 March 1935. Seven children:
- 1\* Herbert Reed (7), m. Mary Bartges.  
 2\* Claude Reed (7).  
 3\* Raymond Reed (7), m. Elva Krop. Four children:  
 1. Robert Reed (8), 2. Leona Reed (8), 3. Edith Reed (8), 4. Margaret Reed (8).  
 4\* LeRoy Reed (7), m. Edith Dietrich. One child:  
 Ira Reed (8).  
 5\* Howard Reed (7).  
 6\* Cyrus Reed (7), m. Cora Meekes. Two children:  
 1. William Reed (8) and 2. Esther Reed (8).  
 7\* Huber Reed (7).
- (c) ISAAC H. KOCH (6), b. 1858, d. 1908; m. Mary Ellen Bauscher, b. 1859. One child:  
 Sadie Koch (7), m. Dr. John A. Stevens. Four children:  
 Dorothy Edna Stevens (8), m. Donald H. McClain. One child:  
 Sandra Jean McClain (9).  
 Florence Mary Ellen Stevens (8).  
 John Alfred Stevens, Jr., (8).  
 Robert William Stevens (8).
- (d) MARY KOCH (6), m. Rev. William Penn Barr.  
 (e) ALLEN E. KOCH (6), m. Elizabeth Becker. Eight children:  
 (1\*) Mabel Koch (7), m. Marvin Smith. Two children:  
 Marvin Smith (8) and Allen Smith (8).





- (2\*) Carrie Koch (7), m. Arthur Ferris. Two children:  
Earl Ferris (8) and Betty Ferris (8).
- (3\*) Laura Koch (7), m. John Beisel. Two children:  
William Beisel (8) and Gordon Beisel (8).
- (4\*) Margaret Koch (7), m. John Englehart. One child:  
Maurice Englehart (8).
- (5\*) Claire Koch (7), m. Henry Lawrence. Two children:  
Stanley Lawrence (8) and Betty Lawrence (8).
- (6\*) Russel Koch (7), m. Elizabeth Lewis. One child:  
Allen Koch (8).
- (7\*) Norman Koch (7), m. Adda Eroh. One child:  
Betty Koch (8).
- (8\*) Harold Koch (7).
- (f) LEWIS OLIVER KOCH (6), m. Amanda Gerhart. Seven children:  
(1\*) Esther Koch (7), m. ————Shnee; (2\*) Arthur Koch (7),  
(3\*) Charles Koch (7), (4\*) Allen Koch (7), (5\*) Oliver Koch  
(7), (6\*) Paul Koch (7), (7\*) Mildred Koch (7).
- (g) WALTER H. KOCH (6), m. Meta Young.
- (h) ALBERT W. KOCH (6).
- (i) HUBER G. KOCH (6), m. Kate DeLong.
- (j) GERTRUDE KOCH (6), m. L. C. Nuss. Three children:  
(1\*) Carden Nuss (7), (2\*) Doris Nuss (7), (3\*) Philip Nuss (7).
- (F) SARAH KOCH (5), b. 22 September 1829, d. 9 February 1898; m.  
Charles T. Bowen, b. 29 April 1826, d. 8 March 1916. Children:  
(a) CLARA BOWEN (6), b. 7 December 1853, d. 23 October 1903.  
(b) KATE BOWEN (6), b. 8 April 1855, d. 21 December 1937, m.  
William Baker. One child:  
Sarah Bowen (7).
- (c) JOHN BOWEN (6), b. 1 August 1857.
- (d) SUSAN BOWEN (6), b. 17 October 1859, m. Howard Richards.  
Five children:  
Raymond (7), Helen (7), Charles (7), Katharine (7), Dorothy (7).
- (e) CHARLES BOWEN (6), b. 3 July 1866, d. 3 June 1870.
- (f) FRANK BOWEN (6), m. Lillian Potts. One child:  
Kathryn Bowen (7), m. Albert Wengler
- (G) AMANDA MARIA KOCH (5), daughter of 9 HENRY KOCH  
(4), b. 3 September 1832, d. 7 December 1865; m. Jacob Hunter Pyle,  
b. 17 September 1833, d. September 1888. Children:  
(a) ANNIE PYLE (6), b. 7 October 1857; m. William K. Squires,  
b. 7 October 1857, d. 1906. Children:  
(1\*) David Henry Squires (7), b. 1883, d. 1885.  
(2\*) Paul Oren Squires (7), b. 1889, d. 1900.





## THE KOCH FAMILY

(b) MARIA PYLE (6), b. 28 March 1859, d. 26 November 1890, m. Samuel T. Kistler. One child:

Minnie Amanda Kistler (7), m. Walter A. Johnstone. They have four children—names not known to me.

(c) SUSANNAH PYLE (6), b. 10 January 1861.

(d) HALLOWELL PYLE (6), b. 25 June 1864, d. 12 January 1881.

(H) HENRY KOCH (5), son of 9 HENRY KOCH (4), b. 2 October 1835, d. 22 May 1922; m. Elizabeth Marie Barber, 12 February 1874, b. 17 December 1846, d. 5 August 1927. Children:

(a) BLANCHE IRENE KOCH (6), b. 11 November 1879; m. 17 May 1899, Robert Henry Wagner, b. 19 November 1879. One child:

(1\*) Margaret Marie Wagner (7), b. 9 March 1900; m. 10 June 1931, Earl Arnold Albers, b. 17 February 1903. One child:

Robert George Albers (8), b. 14 January 1934.

(b) MABEL CLAIR KOCH (6), b. 2 July 1882; m. 24 February 1909, John Brenton Hamilton, b. 20 August 1883. One child.

Maria Genivieve Hamilton (7), b. 13 December 1909; m. 12 September 1933, Harry Price, b. 30 August 1909.

(I) CHARLES RICHARD KOCH (5), son of 9 HENRY KOCH (4), b. 18 April 1839, d. 9 September 1914. Served in Union Army in the Civil War. m. Caroline Teter, b. 31 March 1839, d. 22 June 1923. Children:

(a) ANNIE VICTORIA KOCH (6), m. Dr. Keisel. One son, Victor.

(b) AMANDA KOCH (6), b. 25 January 1868; m. 30 March 1887, J. Frank Shellenberger, b. 19 September 1864. One child:

Helen L. Shellenberger (7), b. 22 October 1889; m. 20 April 1910, ————Dickinson. Two children:

(1\*) Virginia Dickinson (8), b. 4 November 1911; m. 8 May 1933, Frank B. Porter. One child.

(2\*) Marjorie Frances Dickinson (8), b. 9 March 1917.

(c) JOHN W. KOCH (6), b. 6 October 1867, m———. No children.

(d) MARGARET KOCH (6), b. 28 October 1872, m. William Thompson.

(e) ADA KOCH (6), b. 5 February 1876, m. John M. Althouse.

(J) WILLIAM JEFFERSON KOCH (5), son of 9 HENRY KOCH (4), b. 18 April 1839. Served in the Union Army in the Civil War. d. 27 December 1918; m. 24 November 1868, Wilimina Bock (5), b. 19 June 1843, d. 16 July 1907. Children:

(a) HARRY WARREN KOCH (6), b. 20 September 1869; m. 21 October 1896, Ada Zeola Neal. One child:

Harry Warren Koch (7), b. 7 October 1897.

(b) THEODORE WESLEY KOCH (6), b. 4 August 1871. Librarian Northwestern University; m. 27 November 1907, Gertrude Priscilla Humphrey. One child:

Dorothy Alden Koch (7), b. 17 August 1910.

(c) CHARLES HOWARD KOCH (6), b. 1 November 1872, d.——.





(d) ARTHUR WILLIAM KOCH (6), b. 10 July 1874, d. 13 July 1874.

(e) CLARENCE B. KOCH (6), b. 10 January 1876, d. 12 April 1876.

(f) MARY EMILY KOCH (6), b. 12 January 1878, d. 10 January 1886.

(g) MABEL BERTHA KOCH (6), b. 13 February 1887. Lives in Germantown, Philadelphia, Pa.

10. HANNAH KOCH (4), daughter of WILLIAM KOCH (3), b. ———, d. ———, m. Benjamin Bensinger.

11. ESTHER KOCH (4), daughter of WILLIAM KOCH (3), b. 19 April 1798, d. 9 July 1870; m. first, Dr. Daniel Foltz, b. 8 May 1796, d. 6 August 1830. m. second, Richard Stephens, b. 14 July 1784, d. 21 February 1858. All buried at McKeansburg. Children:

(A) WILLIAM FOLTZ (5), m. Caroline Dreibelbis. One son:

(a) DANIEL FOLTZ (6), b. 9 March 1850, d. 24 December 1931; m. ESTELLE BOCK (5), b. 14 December 1858, d. 12 February 1921. Children:

(a) Ira R. Foltz (7), (b) Ralph W. Foltz (7), (c) Mabel G. Foltz (7), (d) Daniel L. Foltz (7), (e) Harry D. Foltz (7), (f) Frank Foltz (7), (g) Guy A. Foltz (7).

(B) MARY STEPHENS (5), b. 1836, d. ———, m. James Kerschner. Children:

(a) CATHARINE KERSCHNER (6), m. Dr. Arthur Lowen. Children:

(1\*) Hester Lowen (7), m. Dr. Edward Filbert.

(2\*) Dr. James K. Lowen (7).

(3\*) Dr. Richard K. Lowen (7).

(b) SUSANNA KERSCHNER (6), m. George Y. Sickler.

(c) JOHN KERSCHNER (6), b. ———, d. ———.

(d) GEORGE KERSCHNER (6).

(e) ELIZABETH KERSCHNER (6).

(f) RICHARD KERSCHNER (6).

(C) RICHARD HENRY STEPHENS (5), b. 20 November 1839, d. 10 May 1927; m. Sarah E. Stamm, b. 1849, d. 1919. Children:

(a) RICHARD STEPHENS (6), b. 1858, d. 1874.

(b) LAURA M. STEPHENS (6), b. 1870, d. 1871.

(c) ALEXANDER WILLIAM STEPHENS (6), b. 1874, d. 1875.

(d) AMY E. STEPHENS (6), b. 11 November 1876.

(e) RALPH STEPHENS (6), b. ———, m. Eva Reigle.

(D) JOHN STEPHENS (5), b. 1842, m. Emma Bayer. Children:

(a) GEORGE ALBERT STEPHENS (6).

(b) HENRY STEPHENS (6).

(c) DAVID STEPHENS (6).

(d) ESTHER AUGUSTA STEPHENS (6), b. 1880, m. Guy E. Fegley.





12. JOHN W. KOCH (4), son of WILLIAM KOCH (3), b. 7 April 1806, d. 4 October 1868; m. Salome——, b. 6 December 1808, d. 30 September 18—. Both buried at McKeansburg, Pa. He was the youngest child of WILLIAM KOCH (3) and succeeded his father in the homestead. My efforts to get information respecting his descendants have been unsatisfactory, excepting what Dr. C. W. Bankes of Middleport, Pa., told me and what I got from a few tombstones. Children:

(A) ALFRED KOCH (5), son of JOHN W. KOCH (4), b. 19 May 1830, d. 20 April 1851.

(B) MORGAN KOCH (5), son of JOHN W. KOCH (4), b. 2 December 1833. Lived to be 91 years old. m. Caroline Shipe, b. 15 November 1839. Know of only one of his children: Charles H. Koch, who married Cora Kerschner and lives at the old homestead and is a very good farmer.

(C) EDWARD KOCH (5) and (D) HIRAM KOCH (5), sons of JOHN W. KOCH (4), both of whom were lost in the Civil War, 1861 to 1865.

(E) FRANCIS KOCH (5), son of JOHN W. KOCH (4), b. 12 May 1841. In Co. G, 25th Michigan Rgt. Lost his life at Bowling Green, Kentucky, 7 April 1863.

(F) LUCIEN KOCH (5), m.——Hottinger.

(G) HENRY KOCH (5), m.——Seltzer. Moved to Nebraska.

(H) MARY KOCH (5), m. Charles Bankes. Children:

(1) LEVI BANKES (6).

(2) DR. CHARLES W. BANKES (6), m. Laura Ritter. Children: Claude Bankes (7), Earl Bankes (7); Ruth Bankes (7), m. Horace Clemmer.

(I) CATHARINE KOCH (5), m. Joseph Kramer. Among their children was JOSEPH KRAMER (6) who got from his mother the Bible referred to in the text and gave it to his son, George Kramer (7) who lives near Orwigsburg, Pa.

(J) AMELIA KOCH (5), m. Mendon Kramer.

(K) SARAH KOCH (5), m. Lewis Shoener.





## CHAPTER IV

### THE NEUFANG FAMILY

My great-grandfather, William Koch (3) was married twice, his second wife being Maria Magdalena Neufang; who thereby became my great-grandmother. Hence this chapter.

The name of Maria's father was Balthaser Neufang. Balthaser was quite a common Christian name among people of German descent. Strassburger & Hinké, at page 231 in their third volume of *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*, show three different spellings of the name and give fourteen forms of its contraction. Their note on that page says, respecting the name Balthaser, "According to tradition, one of the three Wise Men. His bones are said to have been brought from Milan to Cologne in 1164. Supposed to be derived from Balsazar, Belsazar."

Prof. I. Daniel Rupp, at page 481 in his *Thirty Thousand Names of Immigrants*, where he gives the interpretation of baptismal names, says, "Balthasar, Balthas, Baltzer, Baldis, counsellor of war; Germanice, *Kriegsrath*—F. Pilcher. It may be derived from the Gothic, *baltha*, daring, bold, audacious; Anglo-Saxon, beald, bald, bold. Ironandes, in defining this word, gives its Latin synonym, thus, *baltha*, *audax*, as *audax veribus*, der auf seine Stärke pochet."

Many German names have a meaning. Neufang means "new trap" or "new catch."

In my reference to records I shall spell the name of every person exactly as it appears in each particular case, where it be in its full or in its contracted form, or in any variant of it. Sometimes only part a person's full Christian name will be found in records, even in wills. For





instance, Balthaser Neufang never wrote his name in full, and in his will he names his daughter Catherina instead of Anna Catherine, his son Jacob instead of John Jacob, his daughter Barbara instead of Anna Barbara, and his daughter Magdalena instead of Maria Magdalena. Many names undergo changes in the lifetime of some people. President Cleveland's full name was Stephen Grover, but he dropped the first part of the name himself. Thomas Woodrow Wilson, who became President of the United States, is not mentioned by that full name. He signed important state papers without putting Thomas down as part of his name. And in the name of ex-President Herbert Clark Hoover, Clark is not used either by himself or by others.

The records thus far examined fail to disclose when any person by the name of Neufang first came to America. *Pennsylvania German Pioneers* shows the arrival of only one of that family, to wit, Nicol Neufang, who landed at Philadelphia on the 9th day of October, 1775. But that was long after certain church records and lists of taxables in Pennsylvania contained the name of Balthaser Neufang. As the records showing the arrival of immigrants from Continental Europe go back to September 18, 1727, without discussing the family name of Neufang prior to 1775, it is apparent that the first male comer of that name arrived here either prior to September, 1727, or was under the age of sixteen if he came here after that date; because all immigrants aged sixteen years and upwards who came here upon or after that date were obliged to take the oath of allegiance, and from and after August 17, 1729, they were also obliged to take the oath of abjuration. Their names appear in the said three volumes of *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*, either upon one or both of the lists of those persons who took said oaths.





Nor does MacWethy's *Book of Names*, especially relating to the early Palatines and the first settlers in the Mohawk Valley, New York, make reference anywhere to the name of Neufang. It does not appear in Governor Hunter's ration lists from June, 1710, to September, 1714, nor in the *London Lists of Palatines* in 1709, many of whom were shipped to New York by Queen Anne, and some of whom later came down from New York into the Tulpehocken region in Berks County and other parts of Pennsylvania. The census of New York in 1790 does not have the name of Neufang. The records of the census of New Jersey and Maryland for that year went up in smoke when the British burned down the Capitol at Washington in the War of 1812-1814. Only the first census of Pennsylvania in 1790 contains the name of Neufang. My fixed belief is that Balthaser Neufang's father came directly from Germany to Pennsylvania prior to September 18, 1727, and that he had at least two children, either or both of whom may have been born here. Their Christian names were Balthaser and Casper.

Facts hereinbefore stated and hereafter stated constitute the warrant for my belief.

The first reference that I have thus far found to the name of Balthaser Neufang is in the record of Christ (Tulpehocken) Lutheran Church, near Stouchburg, Berks County. It shows the birth of Anna Barbara Neufang, July 13, 1749, and her baptism, July 23, 1749, her parents being there noted as Balthus Neufang and Anna Barbara, his wife. The same record for August of the same year shows the birth of Magdalena Neufang on August 9 and her baptism on August 27, her father being Casper Neufang. Then I found noted in the same record the birth of John Jacob Neufang, a son of Balser Neufang, on January 14, 1751, and his baptism on February 3, 1751. The same record also shows the birth





and baptism of two other children of Casper Neufang, namely: John Nicholas Neufang, born March 21, 1756, and baptized October 21, 1756, and Maria Barbara Neufang, born September 22, 1765, and baptized October 27, 1765. The record of the same church shows that on Whit Sunday, 1787, John Neufang, then seventeen years old, a son of Balthas Neufang, was confirmed. That boy was, I think, a grandson of Casper Neufang, who had a son Balthaser.

The tombstone at the grave of Anna Catharine Neufang in the cemetery at McKeansburg, Schuylkill County, shows that she was born June 12, 1759 and died May 9, 1839. She was a sister of my great-grandmother, Maria Magdalene Neufang Koch.

The translated record of Rev. Daniel Shoemaker, who preached in Berks, Lehigh, and Northampton Counties from 1754 to 1774, shows the confirmation of Peter Neufang and Barbara Neufang at the Wentzer (Windsor) Church in Berks County in 1765. Those were evidently two of Balthaser Neufang's children.

At page 58 in Volume I of the translated record of the Trinity Evangelical Lutheran Church in Reading can be seen noted the birth of Maria Magdalena Neufang on the 27th of April, 1766, and her baptism on the 18th of May in that year. Her parents are there named as Balthaser Neufang and Elizabeth, his wife. That daughter became the second wife of my great-grandfather, William Koch.

Berks County was organized out of parts of Philadelphia, Chester, and Lancaster Counties, March 11, 1752, and extended from the present northerly line of Montgomery County to the northern limit of the Province of Pennsylvania. But as the taxes for the year 1752 had already been levied in those three counties, they had to be paid to the treasurers of those three counties, respectively. The first tax levy for Berks County was made in





1753. At that time none of the territory in Berks County north of the Blue Mountain was organized. Therefore, the tax levy for 1753 in that unorganized territory was headed, "Persons Who Live Beyond the First Ridge of Mountains on Schuylkill," meaning the Blue Mountain and the Schuylkill River. The number of taxables named on that list was thirty-eight, and among them were John Fincher, Baltzer Neyfong, Francis Yarnall, and Barnabas Sidle.

In the next year, 1754, the list of taxables in part of the said unorganized territory contained the names of fifty-six persons. That list was headed, "Over the Mountain." Among those taxables were Polser Nifong, valuation, 14 pounds, 3 shillings, and 6 pence; John Fincher, 12 pounds and 3 shillings; Francis Yarnall, 24 pounds and 6 pence, and Barnabas Sidle, 14 pounds. The names are not arranged alphabetically, and the name of Fincher immediately follows that of Neufang on both lists, thus showing, inferentially at least, that they were neighbors whose names were written down by the assessor in the order in which he went from house to house to get information. In the same year, 1754, a second list of taxables who lived farther west in the said unorganized territory was made under the heading, "Blue Mountains on Sweet-arro," meaning the Swatara Creek. The list has the names of twenty-eight persons, the third one of which is Casper Newfang. The assessors were English-speaking people and often spelled the names of Germans as they sounded to them. No doubt exists that white settlers lived north of the Blue Mountain before that territory was released by the Indians in 1749, but I have found nothing to show just when Balthaser Neufang located there.

The territory in which Balthaser Neufang, John Fincher, Francis Yarnall, and Barnabas Sidle were taxed in 1753 and 1754 was organized in 1768 under the name





of Brunswick Township, and that part of the territory in which Casper Neufang was taxed in 1754 was organized in 1771 under the name of Pine Grove Township. The territory so organized included all the land north of the Blue Mountain in Berks County, composing the present townships of Pine Grove, Tremont, Washington, Wayne, North and South Manheim, and East and West Brunswick, and the present boroughs within those townships. The part lying west of the Schuylkill River was known for years as St. Anthony's Wilderness. All that territory is in Schuylkill County, which was organized out of parts of Berks and Northampton Counties on March 11, 1811.

Balthaser Neufang lived in the vicinity of what is now the borough of Schuylkill Haven. The land covered by adjoining surveys on two warrants in the name of Balthaser Neufang in 1772 was then lying in the township of Brunswick, but now lies partly in the North Ward of the borough of Schuylkill Haven and partly in the township of North Manheim.

The connected draft of the two tracts of land covered by the warrants in the name of Balthaser Neufang shows that adjoining lands belonged to George Gordner on the west for the distance of  $219\frac{1}{2}$  perches and on the south for the distance of 75 perches; on the southwest by land of Michael Brecht for the distance of 124 perches, and on the southeast by lands of George Boone for the distance of 54 perches. The point of land of Balthaser Neufang nearest to the Schuylkill River was about 15 perches east of it. Conrad Minnich became the patentee of the Gordner land and erected thereon what later became well known as the Seven Stars Hotel on the Centre Turnpike. Minnich became a captain in the Revolutionary War. The stream now known as Schappell Creek, and which has also been called Slaughter House Run, rises for the most part on the Neufang surveys near the base





of the second mountain and flows south over the Neufang land and thence over the Boone survey. It formerly emptied into the Schuylkill River about seven hundred yards from the line between the Neufang and Boone tracts, but it now empties into the old Schuylkill Canal bed. What is known as Willow Lake on Schappell's Creek is on the lower Neufang tract, as are also Garfield Avenue, formerly called Ellert Street, and part of the Union Cemetery in Schuylkill Haven. The late J. Harry Filbert, Esq., who was a very careful and well-informed local historian, said on page 55 of *The 175th Anniversary of Schuylkill Haven*, in 1925, that "Baltzar Neyfang lived a little north of the Borough line of Schuylkill Haven in Nosedale Valley. His house stood near where Clayton Killian's now stands." It is supposed to have stood just above Willow Lake.

John Fincher's land was on both sides of the Schuylkill River. The West Ward and part of the South Ward of the borough of Schuylkill Haven are within a warrant in his name, dated March 5, 1750. He later established a ford over the river. It was known as "Fincher's Ford" and was located some perches above the site of the present bridge that crosses the Schuylkill River on the road to the Long Run Valley and Pine Grove.

Most of the borough of Orwigsburg is located on land which was surveyed on a warrant dated November 5, 1754, to Francis Yarnall. It stands also partly on land surveyed in the name of James Boon, under a warrant dated March 4, 1750. Francis Yarnall once had a mill on the creek which flows through the Almshouse Farm, and which is now known as the Almshouse Run. Yarnall's wife was Mary Lincoln, who was a sister of Abraham Lincoln's grandfather. A man named Ellis Hughes married a daughter of Francis Yarnall, and the mill referred to later became the property of and was known as Ellis Hughes' saw-mill.





After the French and Indian War began the Indians frequently invaded the territory on both sides of the Blue Mountain and massacred the settlers or took them captive and destroyed their buildings and other property. On the 6th of March, 1756, they murdered the wife of my great-great-grandfather, Balthaser Neufang, and took his son, Peter, captive. The boy was then only eight years old. These incidents occurred in Schuylkill County.

As I desire to correct an error that is found in too many histories respecting the locality of Mrs. Neufang's murder and the capture of her son in 1756, as well as the place of the murder of John Fincher, his wife, and two sons, in 1763, I will quote from records and histories certain references to those and to several other incidents and will then call special attention to the facts which will show the error and will also correct it.

Manuscript records of Conrad Weiser in one place say, "Balzer Neufang's wife killed and son taken prisoner in March, 1756, over the mountain," and in another place, "On March 6, 1756, Balzer Nighfanger's wife and son killed to the north of the mountain on the waters of Schuylkill." In the Division of Archives and History in the State Library at Harrisburg can be seen on page 80 in Volume 29 of *Provincial Papers* the following: "Peter Newfang, a lad of 11 or 12 years of age, was taken in the year 1756 in May on *Schuylkill* on the other side of the mountains. His Mother was then killed he can't talk a word of German, his Father Balthaser Newfang is a private in the Second Battalion of Pennsylvania Regiment." This relates to December 1, 1759, when Peter was returned to Governor Hamilton by Teedyuscung, the Delaware Indian chief, whose statue stands in Fairmount Park in Philadelphia.

In the Appendix of Gordon's *History of Pennsylvania*, published in 1829, his note on page 616, referring to Indian outrages in 1756, says: "Early in March they





burned the house and barn of Barnabas Sietle and the mill of Peter Conrad in Berks County and killed the wife of Balsar Neytong and made captive of his son, a lad of 8 years of age. They fired upon one David Howell five times, and the last time shot him through the arm." But the note does not say in what part of Berks County these things occurred.

Prof. I. Daniel Rupp, in his *History of Berks and Lebanon Counties*, published in 1844, refers twice to the murder of Mrs. Neufang, first on page 59, saying, "In March, 1756, the Indians laid the house and barn of Barnabas Seitle in ashes, and the mill of Peter Conrad, and killed Mrs. Neytong, the wife of Baltser Neytong, and took his son, a lad of eight years old captive. Next morning Seitle's servant informed Captain Morgan of the injuries done by the Indians, whereupon the Captain and seven men went in pursuit of the enemy but they did not find any. On his return he met a person named David Howell who told him that when on his way to the watch-house, these Indians shot five times at him—the last shot he received a bullet through his arm." Professor Rupp's next reference to the incident is found under the heading of Greenwich Township in Berks County, where on page 86 he says: "In March, 1755, the Indians burned the house of Barnabas Seitel, who lived on the border of the Township, and the mill of Peter Conrad; killed the wife of Balsar Neytong and made captive of his son, a lad of eight years of age. They fired five times upon David Howell and the last time shot him through the arm."

The captain referred to was Jacob Morgan, who was in command of Fort Lebanon on Pine Creek, about a mile east of the borough of Auburn, Schuylkill County. A granite stone with an appropriate inscription marks the location of the fort. The name of that fort was subsequently changed to Fort William.





Greenwich Township was organized out of a part of Albany Township about 1754 and lies south of it. The first list of taxables for the township was made in 1755, but the name of Neufang does not appear thereon. Windsor Township lies between the Schuylkill River and the townships of Albany and Greenwich, so both of the latter are miles away from the Schuylkill River, and the northern boundary of both Albany and Windsor Townships has always been the top of the Blue Mountain. No part of Schuylkill County was taken either from Albany or Windsor Township, except a very small portion of the latter in the gap below Port Clinton.

Morton L. Montgomery, Esq., who in his day was Berks County's best-known local historian, on page 1077 of his *History of Berks County*, published in 1886, locates the murder of Mrs. Neufang in Greenwich Township, saying, "In March, 1755, a mill belonging to Peter Conrad was burned down by the Indians, who at the same time burned the house of Barnabas Seidel and killed the wife of Balsar Neyfong. The exact location of these events is not clearly remembered by the present inhabitants of the Township." But in the first volume of his two-volume *History of Berks County*, published in 1909, Mr. Montgomery, at page 110, *inter alia*, mentions the following murders in Berks County by the Indians:

"February, 1756, wife of Balser Neyfong, Albany."

"September, 1763, John Fincher, wife and two sons, Albany."

Dr. C. Hale Sipe, who, in his history entitled *The Indian Wars of Pennsylvania*, published in 1929, kindly names me among others who encouraged the publication of his book, refers on page 272 to the murder of "the wife of Baltser Neytong" and the capture of his son, aged eight. And in his supplement to that edition he names Albany Township as the place of that murder, saying on page 46:





February, 1756, wife of Balser Neyfong, Albany, (for account of this atrocity and the preceding one see page 272 of "The Indian Wars of Pennsylvania.") (Compare the following memorandum in the Pennsylvania State Library, made December 1, 1759, when Peter Newfang was delivered by Teedyuscung to Governor Hamilton: "Peter Newfang, a lad of 11 or 12 years of age was taken in the year 1756 in May on the Schuylkill on the other side of the mountains. His mother was then killed. He can't talk a word of German. His father, Balthaser Newfang, is a private in — Battalion of Penna. Regiment."

And on page 47 of his supplement, Dr. Sipe names among those murdered in Berks County:

"September, 1763, John Fincher, wife and two children, Albany."

On the 3rd of November, 1756, the house and other buildings of John Fincher were burned down by the Indians. I will here quote an important letter relating to this and other incidents.

Jacob Morgan to Gov. Denny, 1756  
November Fourth, 1756.

Hon'd Sir, Yesterday Morning at Break of Day, one of ye Neighbours discovered a Fire at a distance from him; he went to ye top of another Mountain to take a better Observation, and made a full Discovery of Fire, and supposed it to be about 7 miles off, at the House of John Finsher; he came and informed me of it; I immediately detach'd a party of 10 Men (we being but 22 men in the Fort) to the place where they saw the Fire, at the said Finsher's House, it being nigh Skulkill, and the Men anxious to see the Enemy if there, they ran through the Water and the Bushes to the Fire, where to their disappointment saw none of them, but the House, Barn, and other out houses all in Flames, together with a Considerable Quantity of Corn; they saw a great many tracks and followed them, came back to the House of Philip Culmore, thinking to send from thence to alarm the other Inhabitants to be on their Guard, but instead of that found the said Culmore's Wife and Daughter and Son-in-Law all just kill'd and Scalped; there is likewise missing out of the same House Martin Fell's Wife and Child about 1 Year Old, and another Boy about 7 Years of Age, the said Martin Fell was Him that was kill'd, it was just done when the Scouts came there, and they seeing the Scouts ran





off. The Scout divided in 2 partys, one to some other Houses right at Hand, & the other to the Fort (it being within a Mile of the Fort) to inform me; I immediately went out with the Scout again, (and left in the Fort no more than 6 men) but could not make any discovery, but brought all the Famileys to the Fort, where now I believe we are upwards of 60 Women and Children that are fled here for refuge, & at 12 of the Clock at Night I Rec'd an Express from Lieut. Humphres, commander at the Fort of Northkill, who inform'd me that the same Day about 11 o'clock in the Forenoon, (about a Half a Mile from his Fort) as he was returning from his Scout, came upon a Body of Indians to the Number of 20 at the House of Nicholas Long, where they had killed 2 old Men and taken another Captive, and doubtless would have kill'd all the Familey, they being 9 Children in the House, the Lieut's party tho' 7 in Number, fired upon the Indians and thought they killed 2, they dropping down and started up again, one held his Hand (as they imagined) over his Wound, and they all ran off making a hallowing Noise; we got a Blankett and a Gun which he that was shot dropt in his Flight. The Lieut. had one Man shot through the right Arm and the right side, but hopes not mortal, & he had 4 Shotts through his Own Cloathes. I this day went out with a party to bury the dead nigh here; we are all in high spirits here; if it would please his Honour to order a Reinforcement at both Forts, I doubt not but we should soon have an Opertunity of Revenging the loss, from

Honour'd Sir  
 your most Humble Sev't to Command,  
 JACOB MORGAN

On the same day Captain Morgan wrote the following petition:

Fort Lebanon, Wednesday, the 4th of  
 November, at 3 of the Clock, post Miridian.

To the Honourable William Denny, Esq'r, Lieut. Governor and Commander in Chief of the Province of Pennsylv'a, and Countys of Newcastle, Kent, and Sussex, on Delaware.

The Humble Petition of Jacob Morgan, Cap'n, Commander at Fort Lebanon, most Humbly sheweth:

That having two Forts belonging to one Company, and my Men to the Number of 19 was drafted from me, being total but Fifty-Three, Your Petitioner thinks himself too weak to be of any Service to the Frontiers, seeing the Enemy commits violent





Outrages nigh the Forts; as Yesterday, the 3rd of November, I found 3 Persons Scalped, and their is 3 more missing within a Mile of Fort Lebanon, & 2 Men killed and one took Captive within  $\frac{1}{2}$  Mile of the Fort at Northkill, and dangerous it is to keep ye Forts if their was a Superiority in Number to besiege them, So your petitioner in Humility begs that your Honour would take ye Premising into Consideration, & do as it shall seem meet or expedient to your Honour, which is in distress from him that for your Honour shall ever Pray.

JACOB MORGAN

Nicholas Long, to whom reference is made in the aforesaid letter, had been taxed in 1754 among those listed as "Blue Mountains or Sweetarro." But, on account of Indian incursions after the French and Indian War began, he changed his residence to a point south of the mountain near Fort Northkill. Fort Northkill was located near the southern base of the Blue Mountain possibly two miles northeast of Strausstown in Berks County.

In his journal for July, 1757, Captain Morgan noted, at Fort Lebanon on the 15th of that month, a rainfall so heavy that the Schuylkill River "rose perpendicular fifteen feet in about nine hours time, being considerable higher than ever was known in these parts: the guards could not return and we remained in the Fort with only 8 men to guard." And on the 16th he noted: "The rain continued but more moderate, our partys could not return, we staid in the Fort and Guarded as usual; the party ranging up Long Run among vacant houses, they found old tracts but none new."

I do not know what became of Balthaser Neufang's other children when his wife was murdered and his son, Peter, was captured and taken away by the Indians, but the fact that the "party ranging up Long Run valley" found only "vacant houses" and tracks of Indians, in July, 1757, shows that the settlers had abandoned their homes some time prior thereto and had gone elsewhere to escape





Indian outrages. I believe the Fincher family had left prior to the destruction of their home in November, 1756, otherwise some of them might have been murdered on that occasion. At all events I find that John Fincher was among the taxables in Maiden Creek Township, from 1756 to 1760, and Francis Yarnall was among those in the township of Cumru from 1756 to 1760.

But John Fincher returned to the locality of his former home and re-established himself there as early as 1759 or 1760, and he, his wife, and two sons were murdered there on the 8th of September, 1763. Jonas Seely made report of that murder two days afterwards in a letter reading as follows:

Sinking Spring, Sept. 10, 1763.

John Penn, Esq.

Honored Sir—

I am sorry to have to acquaint your honor of the following melancholy accounts, which I received by express from Capt. Kern, last night. On the 8th inst., a party of Indians came to the house of one John Fincher, about three-quarters of a mile distant from a party of Captain Kern's men, commanded by Ensign Sheffer. They killed Fincher, his wife, and two of his sons; his daughter is missing; one little boy made his escape from the savages, and came to the Ensign, who went immediately to the place with his party. But the Indians were gone, and finding by their tracks which way they went, pursued them to the house of one Nicholas Miller, where he found four children murdered. Our party still pursued and soon came up with the enemy, and fired on them. They returned the fire; but the soldiers rushed on them so furiously, that they soon ran off and left behind them two prisoners, two tomahawks, one hanger and a saddle—the Indians were eight in number and our party, seven. Three of the enemy were much wounded. The two prisoners which our party wounded, were two of said Miller's children, whom they had tied together, and so drove them along. Miller's wife is missing—in all, there are eight killed, and two missing in that neighborhood.

I am, honored sir,

Your most obedient

Humble servant,

JONAS SEELY





The name of Nicholass Miller, to whom reference is made in this letter, is on the list of taxables "Over the Mountain" in 1754.

On the next day, September 11, 1763, Seely wrote from Reading: "We are all in a state of alarm. Indians have destroyed dwellings and murdered with savage barbarity their helpless inmates; even in the neighborhood of Reading. Where these Indians came from, and where going, we know not. These are dangerous times. Send us an armed force to aid our rangers of Berks and Lancaster."

Again he wrote:

Reading, September 11, 1763.

Honored Sir—

This moment at Reading, as I was sending off the express, certain intelligence came that the house of Frantz Hubler, in Berne township, about eighteen miles from here, was attacked on Friday evening last, by the Indians—himself is wounded, his wife and three children carried off—and three other of the children scalped alive—two of whom are since dead.

I am, Honored Sir,

Your humble and

Obedient servant,

JONAS SEELY.

In another letter written at Reading on the 17th of that month, Seely, *inter alia*, said: "It is a matter of wonder that Indians living among us, for a number of years, should suddenly become grum friends, or most deadly enemies! Yet there is too much reason for suspicions . . . The murders recently committed are of the most aggravating description . . ."

"The Senecas, there is much reason to believe, have been tampering with our Indians."

To divert a moment. If my count be correct, seventy men, women, and children were murdered by the Indians in Bethel Township alone during the years 1755 to 1763, both inclusive. That is the worst record in the





entire county of Berks. Bethel Township is west of Strausstown and constitutes the northwestern township of Berks County.

On pages 78 and 79 of his *History of Berks and Lebanon Counties*, Professor Rupp relates the Fincher massacre as follows:

In the early part of September, in the afternoon, eight well-armed Indians came to the house of John Fincher, a Quaker, residing north of the Blue mountain, in Berks County, about twenty-four miles from Reading, and within three-quarters of a mile of a party of six men of Captain Kern's company of Rangers, commanded by ensign Scheffer. At the approach of the Indians, John Fincher, his wife, two sons and daughter, immediately went to the door and asked them to enter in and eat; expressed their hopes that they came as friends, and entreated them to spare their lives. The Indians were deaf to the entreaties of Fincher. Both parents and two sons were deliberately murdered; their bodies were found on the spot. The daughter was missing after the departure of the Indians, and it was supposed from the cries, that were heard by the neighbors, that she also was slain.

A young lad, who lived with Fincher, made his escape, and notified ensign Scheffer, who instantly went in pursuit of these heartless, cold-blooded assassins. He pursued them to the house of one Miller, where he found four children murdered; the Indians having carried two others with them. Millar and his wife being at work in the field saved their lives by flight. Mr. Millar himself, was pursued near one mile by an Indian, who fired at him twice while in hot pursuit. Scheffer and his party continued their pursuit and overtook the savages, firing upon them. The Indians returned the fire, and sharp, but short conflict ensued,—the enemy fled, leaving behind them Millar's two children, and part of the plunder they had taken.

These barbarous Indians had scalped all the persons whom they had murdered, except an infant, about two weeks old, whose head they had dashed against the wall, where the brains with clotted blood on the wall was a witness of their cruelty. The consequence of this massacre was the desertion of all the settlements beyond the Blue Mountain.

The junction of the north and west branches of the Susquehanna River at Northumberland became a stra-





tegic point in the French and Indian War, and a site for a fort was selected where Sunbury now stands. Colonel Clapham went there with four hundred men in the summer of 1756 and built Fort Augusta. The next year Lord Loudon, who had succeeded in command of the English forces in America after General Braddock was killed, suggested to the Governor of this Province the building of a road to connect Fort Augusta with the white settlements, and in the fall of the same year the Provincial Commissioners suggested the erection of a storehouse at the fort to trade with the Indians. But that territory was beyond the limits fixed by the treaty made with the Indians in 1749, and the construction of a storehouse and a road was not commenced until after the consent of Teedyuscung was obtained for those purposes in 1758. And on the 18th of November of that year the Provincial Assembly ordered, "That Benjamin Lightfoot and such other capable person as he shall think proper, do view the ground and make report to this House in what manner and places a convenient road may be cleared and made, so as best to answer the purpose of transporting goods, etc., from Philadelphia to the said fort, together with the best estimate they are able to form of the expense which will attend the laying out, cutting, and clearing the said road."

Benjamin Lightfoot, the surveyor in chief, appointed Francis Yarnall as his assistant. Lightfoot kept a journal from which I will quote: "About the 14th or 15th day of the 3rd month, 1759, I received a line from Amos Strittell and Joseph Morris (two of the Commissioners for Indian Affairs), dated the 10th, acquainting that Teedyuscung, the Delaware Indians' king, had been acquainted with and approved of a proposal made of laying out a road from the inhabited parts of Pennsylvania to Fort Augusta, in order to transport goods to that place, for carrying on trade with the Indians. That the Governor,





upon their application to him, had concluded to employ Major Orndt to agree with some of the Indians about Fort Allen, to attend the survey of the said road and that it might be expected that said Indians would be at Reading the week following."

22nd. Set out for Schuylkill. My company were James Jordan (who in company with Conrad Bower of Reading had fitted out a wagon to haul down some boards from Fort William, and I having agreed with them to haul up for me such provisions as we wanted at a reasonable price.). Put in at Reading 50 wt. at Francis Parvins about 80 lbs., at Uncle Jacob's about 200 wt., and at Peter Roderballs 20 bushels oats, 700 wt. John Fincher (who came to take back some horses.). Jacob Lightfoot, Thomas Wright, Francis Yarnal, Thomas Parvin, Benjamin Parvin, John Willits, Isaac Willits, and John Fincher, Jr. Indians: Philip Phillips, John Phillips, John Price. And got that evening to the late dwelling of Valentine Baumgardner where we lodged.

Valentine Bomgartner is among the list of taxables, "Over the Mountain," in 1754. As the surveying party stopped at his late dwelling on March 22, 1759, it is apparent that he had abandoned his home prior thereto on account of Indian savagery, and that the house was then vacant still. For on the 22nd of March, 1756, the Indians had there murdered his wife and one son and wounded another son. In 1757 he was among the taxables of Tulpehocken Township.

23rd. Jordan and Fincher went home and took with them all the horses except Francis Yarnal's, John Willits', Isaac Willits' and Philip Phillips'. We began the road at the road already laid out from John Fincher's Ford on the Schuylkill to Francis Yarnal's Mill 343 p. easterly of said Ford (from which place several of the company say a good road may be had to fall into said road about Jordan's Mill and is somewhat nearer than by way of said road now goes.) Thence south 85 degrees west a 106 small run C. D. S. 60 W and falls into another run about 5 p. above where they both fall into the Schuylkill about 8 p. above ye said Ford) 223 p. to ye S side of a small hill. Thence along ye same S 72 W (a 128 ye above mentioned course down S 16 W) 136 p. W (a





74 E and largest branch of Schuylkill Course S 40 E) 145 p S  
71 W 28 p S 51 W (a 82 Reeds corner, 13 p S uf us) 92.

The residents of the Tulpehocken section of Berks County wanted the road to pass through that section and thence to Pine Grove and Klingerstown, but the residents of Reading and up along the Schuylkill River wanted the road to pass that way. There was a road from Reading to Hamburg, and from there the road had been extended up through the Schuylkill Gap and possibly a mile above Port Clinton, across the Little Schuylkill River and then passed on to Fort Lebanon and west toward Schuylkill Haven. That piece of road was called the Windsor Road and seems to have ended about at Yarnall's mill, later better known as Ellis Hughes' saw-mill.

With all the facts thus far obtained from the records referred to, I will now call special attention to those which indisputably show that the Neufang, Seidle, and Fincher outrages did not take place in Albany Township nor in Greenwich Township in Berks County, but that all occurred within Schuylkill County.

The facts are these: Albany Township and Greenwich Township never extended north of the Blue Mountain, and none of their territory ever lay near the Schuylkill River. Balthaser Neufang, Barnabas Seidle, and John Fincher were not taxed in Albany nor in Greenwich, but were taxed, in 1753, as "Persons who live beyond the first ridge of Mountains," meaning the Blue Mountain, and in 1754 they were listed as taxables "Over the Mountain." Conrad Weiser's journal states that the murder of Mrs. Neufang on March 6, 1775, was "over the mountain" and "to the north of the mountain on the waters of Schuylkill." Manuscript document in the Division of Archives at Harrisburg, which refers to December 1, 1759, says: "Peter Newfang . . . was taken in the year





1756, on Schuylkill, on the other side of the mountains. His mother was then killed." Captain Jacob Morgan in his letter of November 4, 1756, written at Fort Lebanon, says they saw the fire at the said Fincher's house, it "being nigh Skulkill." And Professor Rupp said the murder of John Fincher, his wife, and two sons took place at Fincher's house "north of the Blue Mountain in Berks County." Nicholas Miller, in whose house four children were murdered on the same day that the Finchers were murdered, is on the list of taxables, "Over the Mountain," in 1754. His name stands fourth above that of Balthaser Neufang and fifth above that of John Fincher. Benjamin Lightfoot's journal shows that John Fincher was with his party surveying, on the first two days after the party set out on its work, and that he was with them only to take back some horses. The party arrived at the Valentine Baumgartner house on the evening of the first day, and the next day Fincher went home and took with him all his horses. They were then surely well above the Blue Mountain and not near Albany Township, for Lightfoot's note of that second day of the trip, March 23, 1759, says, "we began the road at the road already laid out from John Fincher's Ford on Schuylkill to Francis Yarnell's mill, 343 perches easterly of said Ford." In other words, they were then within a mile and a thirteenth of the Schuylkill River. Fort Lebanon was in Schuylkill County.

Those facts put all the referred to occurrences in Schuylkill County, and there is no sufficient excuse or reason for any future historian, under whose eyes this narrative may come, to locate them anywhere in Berks County, although the territory in which they took place was at the time in Berks County, but it all lay north of the Blue Mountain. Mr. Filbert, to whom reference has already been made, said in his article that the mill of Peter Conrad stood near Landingville, that Barnabas





Seidle lived between Pinedale and Port Clinton, and that Balthaser Neufang lived a little north of the borough line of Schuylkill Haven. It is quite apparent that the deserted house of Valentine Baumgartner stood on or near the Windsor Road.

However, I feel sure that Mr. Filbert was in error as to where Balthaser Neufang lived when his wife was murdered and his son Peter taken captive by the Indians. I think he lived on the side of the Schuylkill River some distance below Schuylkill Haven at that time, and that some years after the French and Indian War, upon his return from Windsor Township, he located where Mr. Filbert says he lived, that is north of Schuylkill Haven in what is sometimes called the Nosedale. For the data upon which my belief is predicated, I am indebted to C. W. Unger of Pottsville, whom I regard as without an equal in his knowledge of local history.

On the 14th of November, 1752, Jacob Rust (or Rost) took out a warrant for land and settled on the land, but was driven away by the Indians in 1755. He went to the Tulpehocken section, settled and died there, and on November 2, 1773, his children sold the land to John Schott, who, on June 15, 1776, sold to Henry Decker one hundred and twenty-five acres of the land. But on the 4th of March, 1750, Samuel Thompson had taken out a warrant, and the return of the survey under that warrant was made for two hundred and thirty-seven acres on the 18th of October, 1754. Samuel Thompson having died, his brother, John Thompson, who was his only heir, sold the land to Daniel Lewis on the 18th of March, 1782, and on the 24th of June, 1782, Lewis sold the land to Jacob Kemberling. Kemberling's lessee brought an action of ejectment against Henry Decker, and the case was tried at Reading in June, 1784. Among the record papers of that case Mr. Unger met with the rare fortune of finding notes of the plaintiff's testimony in the case,





and Balthaser Neufang was one of his witnesses. I will, with Mr. Unger's permission, here quote the abbreviated notes of testimony just as he found them.

#### TESTIMONY.

Baltzer Neyfong,—Went up (on the land) March 17, 1751—no trees cut on the land—in 1752 Benjamin Lightfoot came up and surveyed a part of the land—ran a line between him and John Fincher—does not know what surveys were before this but that there was no settler there on Schuylkill but himself—the line that came up Schuylkill struck through Jacob Kemmerlings and through Deckerts—the land lying to the left of the land in dispute—in the Spring of the year before harvest.

Richard Lewis,—Knew Samuel Thompson and John Thompson (they) had their homes with him at ye time of taking up the land.

Mathias Heim,—Knew Thompson and Rust—Heim's father and others left this land because it was said to be William Parson's land. Christian Stump claimed 200a within the line. Burgoon Bird had a mill on Schuylkill, Jacob Rust then lived on Boon's land. Heim in going to the mill went by Rust's and old Rust said he would go with him to the mill. Rust cleared about seven acres. Rust left at the Indian alarm in the Fall of 1755.

Adam Sontag,—Helped to survey the land for Jacob Rust thirty or thirty two years ago with one of the Sculls.

Michael Hummel,—Jacob Rust came to him and worked for him a couple of days.

In the chain of his title, the plaintiff produced the warrant to Samuel Thompson, dated 4 March, 1750, for one hundred acres of land. And a connected draft of the original surveys in North Manheim Township shows the same date and name of the warantee and that the land is opposite Schuylkill Haven, bounded on the east by the Schuylkill River, on the south by the Long Run and on the north by land of John Fincher. So, if Neufang went up on the land in 1751, he was evidently living farther down where "there was no settler on Schuylkill but himself." He was settled on the Schuylkill at least as early as 1751, and I have no doubt he was taxed there in





1753 and 1754, and that his wife was murdered there in March, 1756.

Having corrected the repeated misstatements as to the locality in which Neufang, Fincher, and several other persons lived when they suffered from the Indian atrocities, I may now proceed to state other facts relating to the Neufang family.

No list of taxables residing north of the Blue Mountain during the period of the French and Indian War from 1755 to 1763 are available, and I doubt whether any such lists were made. However, many lists of taxables for other sections of Berks County are also wanting. Among the missing are those of Windsor Township for 1755 and 1756; those of Albany Township for 1755, 1756, and 1757; those of Bern Township for 1756 and 1757, and those of Bethel Township for 1755, 1756, 1757, and 1758. The northern line of those townships was the top of the Blue Mountain, and, with the northern part of Tulpehocken Township, they composed all the territory along the southern side of the Blue Mountain in Berks County.

My search for the whereabouts of Neufang, Fincher, and Yarnall at all times after 1754 has not been completely satisfactory, but I did find Francis Yarnall taxed in Cumru Township from 1756 to 1760; John Fincher in the township of Maiden Creek in 1757, 1758, and 1759, and Balthaser Neufang in Windsor Township as late as 1768, and his son, Martin, was also taxed there that year as a single man. I infer from Balthaser Neufang's will that Martin was his oldest child and that Peter was his second oldest child.

The making of a road whose survey had been started by Lightfoot in March, 1759, was delayed until after one hundred and eighteen inhabitants of Berks County in 1767 petitioned for its making. I have a photostatic copy of the petition, which reads as follows:





To the Honorable John Penn, Esquire,  
Governor of the Province of Pennsylvania,  
In Council, etc.

The petition of divers Free men, Inhabitants of the County of Berks in said Province, most humbly sheweth:

That in the month of November one thousand and seven hundred and fifty-eight, the Representatives of the Free men of this Province in General Assembly met, were pleased to order that Benjamin Lightfoot, with such other capable persons as he should think proper, should view the ground between the inhabited parts of this province and Fort Augusta on the River Susquehanna and make report to that Assembly in what manner and places a convenient road might be made and cleared so as best to answer the purpose of transporting goods, etc., from Philadelphia to the said Fort, and to make an estimate of the expense that would attend the laying out, butting and clearing the said road.

That in consequence of this order the Honorable James Hamilton, Esquire, then Governor of this Province, the 30th day of May, seventeen hundred and sixty, by certificate under his hand and the lessor seal of the said Province was pleased to certify that the aforesaid Benjamin Lightfoot and Benjamin Parvin, of the County of Berks aforesaid, were employed by this Province for the purposes aforesaid, and recommending them to all officers, civil and military, to be aiding and assisting to them and their company in the premises.

That in consequence of the order and certificate aforesaid, your petitioners, being informed that the gentlemen aforesaid did view the ground aforesaid and made report of their doings therein to the last Governor and Assembly aforesaid, to which report your petitioners pray leave to refer.

That your petitioners humbly conceive if a Provincial road was laid out on the most convenient places from the town of Reading in the County of Berks to Fort Augusta on the River Susquehanna, it would greatly tend to advance our trade and commerce with the Indians settled far above said Fort and towards the heads of the said river, as also to preserve the friendship and peace so lately and happily established between us and them, save great charges and expense in transporting skins, furs, and peltry taken in exchange for the British manufactures to them sold. The distance from Fort Augusta to Reading being vastly nearer than any way known as travelled.





Wherefore, your petitioners pray your Honor in Council will take this important matter into your serious consideration and appoint proper Commissioners to lay out a King's High Way or public Road from the town of Reading aforesaid to Fort Augusta aforesaid and to advise and direct such measures to be taken for opening and clearing the same as Your Honor shall see just.

And your petitioners will pray, etc.

Feby. 10th, 1767.

The petition is beautifully written, and from the signature of Francis Yarnall which stands immediately below it, I feel sure that he wrote the petition. It is interesting for me to note that Balthaser Neufang signed his name on the same page as Francis Yarnall, and that his son Martin Neufang signed the petition on the third—the last page. The road was made some time later and was thereafter known as the "King's High Way," or the "Great Road of 1770."

The cause for the long delay must have been the making of a road through the Tulpehocken section to Fort Augusta before 1770.

When Yarnall was with the party making the survey for the King's High Way, he learned to know the country around Taylorsville in Barry Township, Schuylkill County, and later moved there, where he spent the balance of his days, and where he and his wife are buried.

By the Act which was passed March 17, 1777, all white male residents in the Commonwealth (excepting certain public officers, ministers, members of college faculties, members of artillery companies, and troops of light horse already formed within the State), aged between eighteen and fifty-three years and capable of bearing arms, were obliged to join the State Militia and were subject to draft to serve with the Continental Army. And by another Act, passed June 13, 1777, all male white inhabitants above the age of eighteen years were obliged to take and subscribe to an oath or affirmation of allegi-





ance. Among those who took such an oath are found Balser Neufang, August 7, 1777. He signed the oath himself before Daniel Rothermel who was justice of the peace in the eastern section of Berks County. He and Balser Bock signed before the same justice of the peace on the same day. I find, also, that another Baltzer Neufang and a Philip Neufang took the oath on May 29, 1778, but they signed by marks before Peter Spyker who was justice of the peace in the western district. Those two were undoubtedly sons of Casper Neufang. At all events, it appears in proceedings begun for the partition of the real estate of Casper Neufang, deceased, in Pine Grove Township in 1791 that two of his sons were named Baltzer and Philip.

Pursuant to a resolution of the Congress, passed June 27, 1776, directing four companies to be raised in Pennsylvania to compose the "German Battalion" and to serve three years unless sooner discharged, Benjamin Weiser, a son of Conrad Weiser, was appointed captain of one of those companies. Weiser lived at Womelsdorf, and the name of Baltzer Neufang is noted as one of the privates in his company on July 15, 1776. Philip Neufang was a private in the Fifth Pennsylvania Regiment, Continental Line. (Vol. 10, *Second Series, Pennsylvania Archives*, 555.) He also appears to have been in Captain Andrew Irvine's company of Seven Months Men in the Seventh Pennsylvania Regiment, Continental Line, but his name there appears as Philip Nighfunk (Vol. 10, *Second Series, Pennsylvania Archives*, 621). The name of Neufang does not appear elsewhere to my knowledge, but where it does appear the English officer spelled the name Neufang incorrectly.

The foregoing facts induce me to believe that the two Neufangs who served in the Revolution were brothers and sons of Casper Neufang. I have found no record that satisfies me of any service by my ancestor, Balthaser





Neufang, at any time in the Revolution, although it is possible that the Baltzer Neufang who served in Captain Weiser's company was my ancestor and not a son of Casper Neufang. The records of private soldiers are incomplete, however, and he may have served, or he may have been exempt from service on account of his age.

Some of my ancestors seemed to have been hesitant about making new constitutions or altering those already made, and my own antipathy to speedy action in such respect may be inherited. On the 28th of November, 1778, the General Assembly resolved to call a convention to make a new constitution for the Commonwealth. It met with great disfavor all over the State, and memorials and remonstrances against the movement were numerous signed by the citizens. The remonstrance in Berks County has seven hundred and eighty signatures, three of them being ancestors of mine, namely: John Bock, Balthaser Bock, and Balthaser Neufang. Henry Bock, another son of John Bock, also signed it. The remonstrance is found in Vol. III, *Second Series, Pennsylvania Archives*, at pages 366 to 379, but Bock is misspelled Buck, and Neufang is spelled Unfang. It was addressed to the Honorable Representatives of the Free-men of the State of Pennsylvania in General Assembly met. It is a long document expressing surprise at the "Resolve . . . calculated to throw the State into new convulsions and revive the animosities which we have reason to believe, are wellnight allayed," etc. They called in question the power of the General Assembly so to pass "a resolve in every point of light fraught with danger and mischief to the State, and praying that at your next sessions it may be wholly rescinded." It proceeds: "Had you been elected to sit as a convention, there would have been strict propriety in your conduct; but considered as an Assembly, chosen and appointed to act upon a Constitution already formed to your hands, you exceeded your





power, have violated the purposes of your election, and exposed the Constitution to the risque of a single election of which you were appointed Conservators and Guardians, and which you had plighted your faith to preserve inviolate. Had you declared that you would not hold your seats under the Constitution, there would have been found persons, doubtless, who would." The remonstrants continued their lecture in severe terms, *inter alia*, saying: "As the Constitution appears to have made the amplest provision for securing the liberties of the people, we persuade ourselves that those in your house or elsewhere who would either weaken or overthrow it have other ends in view than the Liberties of the people, namely, the gratification of their insatiable lust after Power and Domination, accounting it better to approve themselves to a Governor and Council of overgrown and dangerous Citizens, than to their fellows, by whose free suffrage their pride disdains to hold office."

Balthaser Neufang and Balthaser Bock were two of the appraisers of the estate of John Stoudt of Brunswick Township, deceased. Their report was dated August 17, 1777. We may infer from such acts as the foregoing that both were men of intelligence and respectful standing in their day.

Balthaser Neufang died in what was then Brunswick Township some time between the 29th day of November, 1787, the date of his will, and the 12th of January, 1788, on which latter date the will was probated at Reading. The will is written in German and is signed in German—"Balzer Neufang." It is recorded at Reading in Will Book A, page 161. To his wife, Elizabeth, he bequeathed for life his dwelling place, but provided that his daughter, Catharine, should have necessary maintenance and attention. My father, who knew her, told me that she was always in delicate health, but she lived to be nearly eighty years old. Balthaser Neufang named his wife,





and William Koch, his son-in-law, as executors of his will. The witnesses to the will were Martin Dreibelbis and Jacob Kandner. William Koch's first wife was a sister of Martin Dreibelbis, and, some time after she died, he married Maria Magdalena Neufang, a daughter of the testator. According to his will, Balthaser Neufang had eleven children, named as follows: Martin, Peter, Barbara, Jacob, George, Catharine, Magdalena, Michael, John, Daniel, and Elizabeth. I am not sure whether they are here named in the order of their birth, but I think the first five were children by his first wife, and the remaining six were children by his second wife. By his will he gave to each of the first four only five shillings, "about their last inheritance." Next he gave George twenty-five pounds. He made special provision for Catharine and directed "that the place wherein I dwell shall be valued after my wife's death, and if none of my children will have same at the valuation, then it shall be sold at Public Vendue and the money shall be distributed in equal shares among my following five children, namely, Michael, John, Daniel, Magdalena and Elizabeth."

William Koch, who is named as an executor of that will, was my great-grandfather. Elizabeth Neufang, the widow of Balthaser, died in December or January, 1794. The records show that William Koch received letters to administer her estate January 13, 1794. He filed his account at Reading on the 5th of April, 1794. In view of the number of children that Balthaser Neufang had, the fact that William Koch settled both his and his widow's estates would indicate the confidence with which he was regarded by all concerned.

I know not where those two people were buried. Catherina, the daughter for whom Balthaser Neufang expressed special concern in his will, lived with my great-grandfather, William Koch, until he died, May 3,





1832, and thereafter she lived with his widow until she died. She and my great-grandmother lie buried side by side with the remains of my great-grandfather, William Koch, at McKeansburg. The tombstone at Catherina's grave has a German inscription, which, in English, is:

Here rests Anna Cath. Neufang, born  
June 12, 1759, died May 9, 1839. Aged  
79 years, 10 months, 27 days.

The inscription on the tombstone at the grave of my great-grandmother, translated, is this:

Here rests Maria Mag. Koch, born Neufang,  
wife of William Koch. She was born April  
27, 1766, died February 14, 1827. Old 70  
years, 9 months, 17 days.

After the death of Casper Neufang in Pine Grove Township, letters of administration on his estate were granted, May 18, 1791, to Valentine Shuler and Magdalena, his wife, who was the oldest daughter of said Casper Neufang, his widow and his sons having declined to take out letters. Later a petition for partition of his real estate, consisting of two hundred seventy-seven acres of land in that township was filed, and on January 3, 1792, John Nicholas Neufang, one of the descendant's sons, accepted the land which was appraised at three hundred pounds. In the petition the survivors of Casper Neufang were set forth as follows: Barbara, his widow, and six children: Magdalena, intermarried with Valentine Shuler; Baltzer, Nicholas, Philip, Andrew, and Barbara.

Now, in view of all the facts heretofore stated, I feel very sure that Balthaser and Casper were brothers, and that they were either born in this country or arrived here as children with their father prior to September 18, 1727. They were possibly born in the early twenties or before that. As Martin was apparently the oldest





child of Balthaser, he must have been at least twenty-one years old when he signed the petition dated February 10, 1767, for opening the King's High Way. He was surely over twenty-one years old when he was assessed as a single man in Windsor Township in 1767 and 1768. He was probably born about 1745 or 1746, and his brother, Peter, who was eight years old when taken captive by the Indians on March 6, 1756, was born in 1747 or 1748. Anna Barbara, a daughter of Balthaser, was born July 13, 1749, and another son, John Jacob, was born January 14, 1751. So I infer that Balthaser first married about 1743 or 1744, when he may have been in his early twenties. He was, therefore, over sixty years old when he died in 1787, and was either a small child, if he came here prior to 1727, or he was born here after his parents came here, and as the name of Neufang does not appear among immigrants between 1727 and 1744, or 45, Balthaser's parents must have come here prior to 1727.

I assume that the children of Casper Neufang are named according to the order of their birth in the petition for partition of his real estate in 1792. If that be correct, then Magdalena, who was born August 9, 1749, and, who married Valentine Shuler, was his oldest child, and Casper, therefore, may have been married in 1747 or 1748, in his early twenties. Such probabilities would indicate that he was an infant when his father brought him from Germany, or that he was born here prior to 1727.

The male stock of the Neufangs has apparently died out, at least in Schuylkill County. The only Neufangs in Pennsylvania shown by the census of 1790 were in Brunswick, Manheim, and Pine Grove Townships. Only the heads of the families are named in the census, to wit: Michael Neufang, in whose family were two males over sixteen years old, one male under sixteen years old, and two females; Nicholas Neufang, in whose family were





two males over sixteen years old, and one female; and Andrew Neufang, in whose family were one male over sixteen years old, and one female. Michael Neufang was a son of Balthaser Neufang, and Nicholas and Andrew were sons of Casper Neufang. As already stated, the census of 1790 names only the head of each family and gives the number of males and females in each household. As the name of Casper Neufang does not appear in the census of 1790 he was then not living.

In order to trace the Neufangs, I have looked over lists of taxables in Berks and Schuylkill Counties from 1790 up until I lost track of them; although Michael Neufang is in the census as the head of a family in 1790, I found him taxed as a single man that year in Manheim Township. He was also taxed in 1791. Nicholas Neufang was taxed in Pine Grove Township in 1779, and up to 1812, where his name appears but is marked "moved away." Then I found him taxed again as "soujourner" in Pine Grove Township from 1816 to 1819. I found John Neufang taxed as a single man in Brunswick Township in 1793. The Historical Society of Schuylkill County has a copy of the census of the county in 1820, but I have not consulted it to see whether any Neufangs appear therein. However, I think the name disappeared long ago among the taxables of Schuylkill County. At all events, I have never, in my long public career, heard of any person named Neufang living anywhere in Schuylkill County.

An examination of the indices in the offices of the register, the clerk of the Orphans' Court, and the recorder of Schuylkill County discloses no reference whatever to any person whose surname is Neufang and whose Christian name corresponds with any in the family tree found below.

In order that the generations of myself, my children, and my grandchildren in the line of descent from Balt-





haser Neufang may appear, I will here construct a family tree, to that extent—but I will also put down all the data that I have respecting collateral kindred with that surname.

## THE NEUFANG FAMILY TREE

BALTHASER NEUFANG (1), b. 17———d. 1787-1788; m. Anna Barbara ————who was murdered by the Indians 6 March 1756 (see text). They had the following children:

1. MARTIN NEUFANG (2), b. probably in 1745 or 1746.
2. PETER NEUFANG (2), b. in 1747 or 1748. Captured by the Indians 6 March 1756, and returned to his father about December 1759. d.———
3. ANNA BARBARA NEUFANG (2), b. 13 July 1749, d.———.
4. JOHN JACOB NEUFANG (2), b. 14 January 1751, d.———.
5. GEORGE NEUFANG (2), b. 175—, d.———.

The second wife of BALTHASER NEUFANG (1) was Elizabeth ————. They had the following children:

6. ANNA CATHARINE NEUFANG (2), b. 12 June 1759, d. 9 May 1839, buried at McKeansburg.
7. MICHAEL NEUFANG (2), b.———d.———.
8. JOHN NEUFANG (2), b.———d.———.
9. DANIEL NEUFANG (2), b.———d.———.
10. MARIA MAGDALENA NEUFANG (2), b. 27 April 1766, d. 14 February 1837; m. WILLIAM KOCH (3), both buried at McKeansburg. They had eight children. One of them named HENRY KOCH (3) who was my grandfather. From which it will appear that I am of the fifth generation in the Neufang family, unless Balthaser Neufang's father came here when Balthaser was a little boy, or Balthaser was born after his father arrived here, in either of which cases I am of the sixth generation. I believe I am of the sixth generation. For the descendants of WILLIAM KOCH (3) the reader is referred to the Koch Family Tree in Chapter III.
11. ELIZABETH NEUFANG (2), b.———d.———. No further information.

If Casper Neufang was a brother of Balthaser Neufang, he must be noted as of the first generation, also, because I know not the name of their father. Hence:

CASPER NEUFANG (1), b.———, d. possibly in 1789, m. Barbara ————. Children:

1. MAGDALENA NEUFANG (2), b. 9 August 1749, d.———, m. Valentine Shuler.
2. BALTHASER NEUFANG (2),
3. JOHN NICHOLAS NEUFANG (2), b. 21 March 1756.
4. PHILIP NEUFANG (2).
5. ANDREW NEUFANG (2).
6. MARIA BARBARA NEUFANG (2), b. 22 September 1765.

Note: The text in this chapter refers to the Confirmation in 1787 of John Neufang, 17 years old, a son of Balthaser Neufang. I think he was a grandson of Casper Neufang, i. e. a son of Balthaser Neufang (2).





## CHAPTER V

### THE BOCK FAMILY

In Chapter III I referred to some brief notes that I made when I talked to my father's mother in the summer of 1875, and, later again, about her own and her husband's ancestors. Speaking of her own ancestors, she said that her father was Balthaser Bock and that he was eight years old when he came with his father from Europe to Philadelphia; that his mother died soon after arriving in Philadelphia; that he played with Indian children when he was a boy at Hamburg, Berks County; that he was in the Revolutionary War one and a half years, and that his father was in the French and Indian War. She also said that her grandfather Bock's children consisted of only two sons; that her father was lame, and that she was born at McKeansburg in 1797.

In that chapter I also referred to other parts of my grandmother's conversation, and then, in due course, showed record facts confirmatory of most of her story, thereby proving that tradition which came directly from her constitutes dependable background for genealogical purposes.

The inscription on the tombstone of Balthaser Bock, who is buried at McKeansburg, Schuylkill County, Pennsylvania, says that he was born March 30, 1746, in Europe in Old Haftan in the Countship Hanau; that he married Susanna Margretha Bolig on the 17th of October, 1780, and died on the 17th of June, 1827, aged 81 years, 2 months and 18 days. If he was eight years old when he came to America, he arrived some time in 1754. By reference to page 658, Vol. 1, *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*, we find that the foreigners who arrived in the





port of Philadelphia on the *Snow Good Intent*, October 23, 1754, came from Hesse, Hanau, Palatinate, and a few from Switzerland, and that among those who took, and subscribed to, the oath of allegiance and the oath of abjuration on that day was Johannes Bock. He was the father of Balthaser Bock. It appears that Johannes Bock could not write; the signature of his name to the oath of allegiance and to the oath of adjuration, which he took upon his arrival in Philadelphia, was written by the clerk, and Johannes Bock put his mark in each signature. A man of the same name, who could write, had come to Philadelphia on August 27, 1739, but he was a Palatine, whereas Johannes Bock came from Hanau. On the list of foreigners who imported in the ship *Patience* and took and subscribed to the usual oaths, September 9, 1751, is the name of Johannes Bock, signed with a mark. But there is nothing to indicate the place or places from which those foreigners came. So it is quite possible that the Johannes Bock who was my ancestor had first come here in 1751 and, after some time, returned to Europe and then came back with his family in October, 1754. There is good authority for the statement that such was the case with a number of Germans.

What became of Johannes Bock within the next few years after his arrival in 1754 I do not know, but his name is found as John Bock among the taxables in Windsor Township, Berks County, as early as 1759. Hamburg is in that township. John Bock was taxed in that township as late as 1780; his name then disappeared from the list of taxables, and I think he died in that or the next year.

On the 28th of October, 1772, he had obtained, in the name of John Bock, from Thomas Penn and John Penn, a patent for one hundred and thirty-one acres, one hundred perches and allowance of six per cent. for roads





and highways in said township. I will quote from that patent the following:

WHEREAS in pursuance of a warrant dated London May the Twelfth 1732 a survey was made for the Honourable Thomas Penn Esquire a certain Tract of Land Containing about six hundred and twenty six acres Situate on the East side of Schuylkill River about six miles above the mouth of Maiden Creek then in the county of Philadelphia which said Tract hath lately been resurveyed and divided into three parts by James Scull Deputy Surveyor and one part or piece thereof is now sold to John Bock AND WHEREAS in pursuance of a warrant dated the twenty sixth day of October Instant requiring our Surveyor General to accept the survey of said Tract so made by James Scull for the said John Bock into his Office and to make return thereof in our Secretaries Office He the said Surveyor General hath accordingly certified that the same land is called "BOCKSHAUSEN" Situate in Windsor Township Berks County and bounded as follows, Vizt. BEGINNING at a post where a Chestnut Oak formerly stood and extending thence by Evan Hughes and Michael Hollobacks land East one hundred and sixty four perches to a corner stone thence by said Holloback Conrad Kersner George Miller and George Crane's lands North two hundred and twenty perches to a corner stone thence by George Millers Land West eighty two perches to a stone thence down the River Schuylkill Two hundred and thirteen perches to the place of beginning. CONTAINING one hundred and thirty one acres and one hundred perches and allowance of six Acres P. Cent for roads and Highways.

The length of the line along the Schuylkill River is evidently not correctly given. I have no doubt the eastern line is correctly given at two hundred and twenty perches; and, as the lines of the northern and southern boundaries of the tract stand at right angles to the eastern line and as the southern line is twice as long as the northern line, the river line must be much longer than the eastern line. My examination of the official draft of this plot convinces me that the distance along the river is about two hundred and thirty-three perches. It could not possibly be only two hundred and thirteen perches. On my copy of the official draft of the subdivision of the





six hundred and twenty-six acres mentioned in the deed, the length of the river line of the Bock land is marked at two hundred and twelve and a half perches while the eastern line is marked two hundred and twenty perches.

The land had been surveyed to John Bock, July 3, 1772, on an order dated June 17, 1772. The reader will note that the land was called "Bockshausen," which means Bock's Houses. The said "Tract of Land Containing about six hundred twenty six acres" which had been surveyed in 1732 was divided into three separate tracts in 1772, and Bock got the southernmost. The middle and upper tracts were surveyed six days after Bock's was surveyed. The upper tract contained two hundred and fifty acres and allowances and was called "Hamburg." It was patented to Martin Karger, December 23, 1772. The middle tract contained two hundred and twenty-five acres, one hundred and forty-three perches and allowances, and was patented to George Miller, October 28, 1772. Much, if not all, of the borough of Hamburg is situate within the Martin Karger survey. "Karger" is not the correct spelling of the name; it is "Kaercher." The well-known Kaercher family in Pottsville descended from Martin Karger. Hamburg was known as "Kaercher Stettel" (Kaercher Town) before it was called Hamburg, but the English-speaking people called it "Churchtown." That stream that crosses Main Street near the centre of the town was called Kaercher's Run. The eastern line of the said three tracts extended north and south six hundred and five perches, and the dividing lines between the three tracts stood at right angles to the said north and south line and extended westwardly to the Schuylkill River. The length of the southern line of the Bock property was one hundred and sixty-four perches; the length of the eastern line was two hundred and twenty perches, and that of the northern line was only eighty-two perches. The length of the line between the Miller





and Kaercher property was two hundred and sixty-four perches, and the length of the northern Kaercher line was one hundred and eighty-four and a quarter perches. The town of Hamburg was laid out by Martin Kaercher, Junior, about 1779.

Two streams of water cross the Bock tract and empty from it into the Schuylkill River. Route No. 122 crosses those two streams south of Hamburg, and I have an idea that Bock's house stood somewhere near, or possibly at, the place where the stone house stands just before going on a curve up a steep hill about a mile and a half below Hamburg. The said two streams are about eighteen hundred feet apart where they cross the road. A rivulet also crosses said route near the said stone house; it then enters one of said streams. John Bock had been taxed in Windsor Township with a hundred acres of land as early as 1767, and it is quite likely that he was taxed with the same land for which he obtained the said patent in 1772. By a deed recorded at Reading, in Deed Book No. 10, page 280, we find that John Bock and Magdalena, his wife, on September 2, 1780, conveyed to Baltzer Bock, single man, son of said John Bock, the said one hundred and thirty-one acres of land. And Baltzer Bock was taxed with that land in 1780. The consideration in said deed was one hundred and ninety pounds. John Bock and his wife both signed the deed by their marks. On April 11, 1791; Baltzer Bock and Susanna, his wife, conveyed that land to Reuben Davis for the consideration of seven hundred and ninety pounds. In 1850, by a special Act of the General Assembly, the township of Perry was organized out of the lower part of Windsor Township, and the line between the two townships runs across the land which was patented by John Bock in 1772.

Although the Christian name of my grandmother's father was Balthaser, his name seldom appears under that spelling. However, in 1786 he was taxed under the





name of Balthaser Bock. Even in the census of Pennsylvania in 1790 his name appears as Balzer Bock in the enumeration for Windsor Township, Berks County. But his full name appears in the first line of his will, and the will is signed "Balthaser Bock."

In Chapter III I showed that Balthaser Bock served as a private in Captain George May's company in the Revolutionary War. I will add to the facts there stated. In a talk with my father on the 5th of May, 1901, I was told that Balthaser Bock was in Washington's army when the Hessians were captured and that he was also at the battle of Brandywine. My father knew him well, and he also knew my great-grandfather, William Koch, very well. Professor Livingston Seltzer, who was superintendent of the common schools in Schuylkill County for a quarter of a century, was a descendant of Balthaser Bock. He was born and reared in the vicinity of McKeansburg and died in July, 1931. From family tradition he had learned that Balthaser Bock had been in a number of battles in the Revolutionary War; among them being the battle of Trenton. He told me that Balthaser Bock was lame. And Joshua Bock (whom I knew well), a grandson of Balthaser Bock, whom he knew very well, said that Balthaser Bock was lame; that he was at home on a furlough in the time of the Revolutionary War, and, while assisting his father when loading hay, his father accidentally stuck him in his foot with a hay fork and made him lame for life, and that on account of his lameness he was relieved of further service in the Continental Army. Such tradition is not without value.

A provincial conference that was held in Philadelphia from June 18 to June 25, 1776, adopted a Declaration of Independence, and, pursuant to resolutions passed by the Continental Congress on the 3rd and 4th days of that month, made provision for raising forty-five hundred militia in the Province of Pennsylvania toward establish-





ing a Flying Camp of ten thousand men in the Middle Colonies. The quota for Berks County having been fixed, Henry Haller of Reading was elected colonel of the regiment. A company, of which George May of Windsor Township was the captain, was part of that regiment. The roll of Captain May's company was lost, and no record is preserved showing the names of the men under his command. However, the *Reading Adler* of June 26, 1827, referring to the death of Balthaser Bock, says that he "served as a soldier during the Revolution in Captain May's company under Colonel Haller in the so-called Flying Camp and was in several battles on York Island." This means the island on the lower part of which the city of New York then stood. It was then known as York Island, although it was anciently called the Island of Manhattan, as it often is called in our modern times.

The record of a convention held in Lancaster, Pennsylvania, July 4, 1776, for the purpose of electing two brigadier generals to command the forces of Pennsylvania shows that among those present was Captain George May of the Fourth Battalion. And in the Twelfth Volume of the *Pennsylvania Magazine of History* at pages 390, 391, it appears that a company under Captain George May of Reading arrived in Bethlehem, August 28, 1776, on its way to join the forces of Washington. As the disastrous battle of Long Island was fought on the previous day, George May's company could not have been in that battle, but it had plenty of time to join Washington's forces on York Island and to take part in at least one of the engagements with the British in September, 1776.

Without repeating what all good United States Histories say about Washington's engagements with the British until he retreated across New Jersey into Pennsylvania, where he encamped at Newtown, Bucks County, in December, 1776, I will remind the reader that Washington re-crossed the Delaware River on the





night of December 25, 1776, and in a brilliant fight the next morning defeated the Hessians at Trenton and took one thousand of them prisoners, and then returned to Pennsylvania. But on the 30th of that month he re-crossed the Delaware and on the 2nd of January, 1777, fought the British at Trenton and on the next day at Princeton. Thence he went to the Heights of Morristown, New Jersey, and from there harassed the British so much that, by April, New Jersey was practically clear of British occupancy, excepting at New Brunswick and Perth Amboy.

General Howe and his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, sailed from New York in the summer of 1777 and landed near Elk River, Maryland, with eighteen thousand men on the 25th of August. General Washington, surmising that Philadelphia was Howe's objective, met the British at Chadd's Ford on the Brandywine, September 11th, and fought the famous battle of Brandywine. Therefore, from the dates given and the length of his service, the inference is possible that Balthaser Bock participated in the engagements that family tradition credits to him as a soldier in the Revolutionary War. Terms of enlistment had not been for a long time, as a general thing, but some re-enlisted, while too many others quit the service for various reasons, a large number of them deserting. Entire companies are known to have deserted.

When General Washington had his headquarters at Newtown, Bucks County, in December, 1776, Colonel Henry Haller, in a letter to the Council of Safety, *inter alia*, said: "Having left the Camp at Cerral's Ferry on the 16th inst., I think it my duty to inform you that the greatest number of men of my Battalion deserted on the 13th and 14th, a thing that might, in my opinion, have been prevented had the officers taken proper steps; but some of them were as willing as the privates to break up the Battalion; took no pains to get their men, and this conduct encouraged others. Since that I have been





here waiting to get the pay-rolls, that money might be drawn to pay off the men, that they might be encouraged to re-enter the service. But some of the Captains give me all the delay in their power. Therefore, I pray your attention to the matter. I think if a Pay-master was ordered up here to pay off the Battalion, it would have a good effect."

The tradition that Balthaser Bock served in the Revolutionary War has been so well known in the township of East Brunswick that his grave at McKeansburg had been annually decorated with a United States flag on the 30th of May ever since that day has been called Memorial Day and was set apart as a national holiday.

Now, in view of all the recorded facts referred to in this chapter and in Chapter III which are confirmatory of important details in my grandmother Koch's story, I am ready to believe also in the unconfirmed, but undenied, part of her story that Henry Koch, my great-great-grandfather on my father's side, and John Bock, my great-great-grandfather on his mother's side, rendered some service in the French and Indian War.

To return to Balthaser Bock's civil life, his name does not appear among the lists of taxables in Windsor Township after 1790, but it appears on the list in Brunswick Township from 1792 until he died in 1827.

In 1750, John Webb had been granted a warrant for a tract of three hundred and ninety-six and a half acres in what is now East Brunswick Township. On the 24th of June, 1791, Peter Orwig obtained the patent for the said Webb land, he having bought the interest of the heirs of the said Webb; and, on the 14th of July, 1791, he conveyed the tract to Balthaser Bock for eight hundred and fifty pounds. The tract was called "Happy Discovery." The town of McKeansburg is located on said tract. It is the oldest town in Schuylkill County and





was a contender for the county seat when Schuylkill County was erected in 1811. It was laid out by Henry Haller and Christian Kamp in 1803 and was named after Governor Thomas McKean. What was known as the Catawissa Road passed through the town. Henry Haller was a son of the said Colonel Henry Haller. Colonel Haller had lived in Reading, but after the Revolution he moved to Brunswick Township and later died there. His last services in the Revolutionary War were as wagon-master general of the Continental Army. His son, Henry, married Magdalena Koch, who was a daughter of my great-grandfather, William Koch, by his first wife. Henry Haller and his wife, Magdalena, later moved to the State of Ohio.

Balthaser Bock was much interested in educational and religious affairs, and, for such purposes, donated the land in McKeansburg where the church, the beautiful flower and shrub garden, the well-kept cemetery and the community house are located. At a meeting of the leading citizens of the neighborhood, held at McKeansburg on February 6, 1813, a subscription list was opened and signed by those present to raise funds for the erection of a school building in that town for the purpose of teaching pupils in the English language, because it had become "the principal language in the United States." The movement was so popular that within a month the erection of a school house became assured, and in March a considerable number of the subscribers held another meeting in McKeansburg and elected five trustees to build the school house and "to make such further arrangements and regulations as may be deemed proper and necessary." The trustees were chosen to serve until the 20th of March, 1814, "and not longer without re-election." The persons chosen as the first trustees were: Daniel Yost, Baltzer Bock, B. Kepner, Jr., Jacob Huntsinger, and Daniel Bock. Daniel Bock was a son of





Balthaser Bock, and Jacob Huntzinger was a son-in-law of my great-grandfather, William Koch. The preamble to the resolution that resulted in the election of the first five trustees is as follows:

Whereas, the inhabitants in and about McKeansburg opened a subscription in order to raise a sum of money for the benevolent purpose to build a convenient house wherein the English Language may be taught, on the lot of ground which Baltzer Bock has granted for the purpose, and as to the honor of this neighborhood it now appears, that a sum is subscribed sufficient to erect a school house for the purpose aforesaid.

One hundred and five persons in that sparsely settled neighborhood signed the subscription list and gave a total of three hundred and twenty-one dollars and twenty-five cents. The building was soon erected, and it became the first place in Schuylkill County where pupils were taught in the English language. The school was opened in 1813 and was known as the McKeansburg Academy.

Some time after the erection of said school building a congregation was formed for religious purposes. It held its meetings in the school building for a number of years and then erected a meeting house. The preliminary steps which were taken for the erection of a meeting house are shown by this quotation from the minutes of the congregation:

At a meeting of the McKeansburg congregation held in the Academy at McKeansburg, the 3rd day of November, 1827, on motion it was resolved, that this meeting elect four commissioners to superintend the structure of a meeting house in the town of McKeansburg. On motion, Wm. Koch, Andrew Bock, George Medlar and Lewis Audenreid were nominated and unanimously elected.

On motion, Resolved that the building shall be constructed of stone.





On motion, Resolved, that the above named commission shall have the power to commence immediately the building of the said Meeting House.

Daniel Yost,,

B. Kepner,

William Koch, Jr.,

George Medler,

Henry Koch,

Lewis Audenreid,

Andrew Bock.

Daniel Yost, the first signer of those minutes, was one of the first two associate judges in Schuylkill County. A certain paper of his which is in possession of the Historical Society of Schuylkill County shows that he encouraged every movement for the intellectual culture of the people. The paper relates to the first public library in Schuylkill County and is dated August 24, 1826. William Koch, Jr., and Henry Koch, two of the said signers above named, were sons of my great-grandfather, William Koch; the said Henry Koch was my grandfather. Andrew Bock, another signer, was a son of Balthaser Bock who had died in June of that same year. I take much pride in having had such ancestors—men who manifested a lively interest in the intellectual and the religious culture of the community in which they lived. My grandfather, Henry Koch, as already stated, was a son-in-law of Balthaser Bock. The erection of the first church was begun in 1827. It was to be built of stone, but the resolution was subsequently changed, and the church was built of frame. The fine frame church standing there now was erected in 1882. Balthaser Bock had donated the land for the church and cemetery in 1813, and, strange to say, his wife died in 1814 and was the first person to be buried in the cemetery. She died on the 9th of June in that year.

By a Special Act of the General Assembly, the congregation became incorporated under the name of "The Elders and Church Wardens of Union Church at McKeansburg." The said Special Act is dated April 12, 1828; Vol. 10, *Smith & Reed*, 160.





Balthaser Bock's life was apparently spent in farming, although I have seen it stated that he was a wheelwright. He had four sons, namely: Daniel, Peter, Andrew, and William, and one daughter, named Susanna. All the children are named in his will, dated May 13, 1825, and probated July 19, 1827. By his will he bequeathed to his daughter thirteen hundred pounds, but by a codicil dated September 8, 1825, he reduced that bequest by two hundred pounds. Daniel Bock died before the will was made, but he had received seventeen hundred and twenty-five pounds from his father, and his father therefore declared in said will that should be in full of Daniel's share. After mentioning those bequests, the will says: "the residue shall be equally divided between my sons, Peter Bock, Andrew Bock and William Bock and my daughter Susanna, intermarried with Henry Koch, or their legal representatives in equal shares, share and share alike, as soon as can be conveniently done after my decease." On the 22nd of May, 1816, Balthaser Bock had conveyed certain parcels of land to each of his respective sons, Peter, Andrew, and William, for a consideration exceeding seventeen hundred and twenty-five pounds in each case, and had received from each of his said sons bonds due at different times. He still had some of those bonds when he made his will. I have no doubt that, when he made the said conveyances, he allowed each grantee a certain amount as an advancement to correspond with what he had given his son Daniel. On the 4th of January, 1824, he conveyed to Henry Koch, his son-in-law, sixty-three acres and eighty-one perches of land upon which was a saw-mill. It was part of a tract called "Buckingham." The consideration was three hundred pounds, and that may have been allowed as an advancement on Susanna's account and may be the reason for the codicil in said will.





Balthaser Bock had acquired additional land after his purchase of three hundred ninety-six and one-half acres from Peter Orwig in 1791. In his deed to his son, Peter Bock, in 1816, fifty-seven acres and eight and one-quarter perches of the land thereby conveyed are described as part of a tract that had been surveyed for Jacob Whetstone, and patented to him. That tract was called "Mount Allen." It adjoined Bock's other land. Part of the town plot of McKeansburg is on the Whetstone tract.

It seems that, when Balthaser Bock donated the land for educational, religious, and burial purposes in 1813, he had not conveyed it by deed, so, when he came to make his will twelve years later, he put therein this item:

I give, devise and bequeath unto the citizens of McKeansburg, and its vicinity, two lots ground situated in said town, with all the appurtenances thereunto belonging, viz: the one lot at present constructed into a burial ground, and the other on which the McKeansburg School House is now erected, I bequeath to them the said citizens for the purpose of erecting a church thereon, the Presbyterian and Lutheran Members jointly in a Christian-like order; further it is my will and wish that the said mentioned citizens elect three trustees from among themselves as the seniors of the place will think most proper for the erecting of the said house of worship, and in whom I order and direct that the titles of said lots of ground shall be vested by my executors as soon as conveniently may be done after my decease.

He appointed his sons, Peter and Andrew, executors of his said will.

The house where Balthaser Bock lived no longer exists. It stood in a ravine near a spring about a half mile west of the cemetery in McKeansburg and about one-fifth of a mile south of the road leading to Orwigsburg.

As already stated, my grandmother Koch told me that her grandfather had only two sons, one of whom was named Balthaser. If I was told the name of the other I failed to make a note of it and have forgotten it. I will, therefore, refer to public records in trying to learn the





name of the second son. On the list of taxables for the township of Windsor in 1774, we find the names of John Bock and Henry Bock as married men, and Baltzer Bock as a single man. They were all taxed subsequently, and no other Bocks appear on the lists of taxables. In Deed Book D, Vol. 1, which is in possession of the Berks County Historical Society, we find in the long list of those who took the oath of allegiance in that county in 1777 and 1778 that John Bock and Henry Bock took the oath on the 25th of May, 1778, before Charles Shoemaker who was the magistrate in Windsor Township; and that Balser Bock took and signed the said oath on August 7, 1777, before Daniel Rothermel who was the magistrate in the adjoining township of Maiden Creek. But the name of Henry Bock does not appear anywhere in the census of 1790. Only two Bocks appears as the heads of families in the entire State of Pennsylvania. They are Balzer Bock and William Bock, and both were living in the township of Windsor. There was but one male over sixteen years of age in each of the said two families. John Bock was apparently dead at that time. From such facts we may infer that John Bock had two sons. Now, as the name of William Bock is not found on any list of taxables, but the name of Henry Bock is found there, we may safely conclude that the Henry Bock who took the oath of allegiance and who was assessed as a married man as early as 1774, and the said William Bock who was named in the census of 1790, was one and the same person. His name was most likely William Henry Bock, who was locally known only as Henry Bock, and the enumerator put down only his first name when he took the census. It seems to have been the general rule all over the State to put down only the first Christian name of the head of each family. There are more than sixty-five hundred families under the letter "B" in the entire census of Pennsylvania, and among them we find only four males with





a full middle Christian name and only two others in which the middle Christian name is indicated by only a single letter. Only one female head of a family has a middle Christian name in the entire list of over sixty-five hundred where the family name begins with the letter "B." The foregoing facts warrant the inference that the enumerators of the census in the entire State, as a general rule, learned and noted only the first Christian name and the surname of the head of each family. And my conclusion is that the two Bocks, Balzer and William, were the sons of John Bock. In the same census thirty-two families appear under the name of Buck, but not one of them lived in Berks County.

Several years ago J. Augustus Bock of Sac City, Iowa, a grandson of Balthaser Bock, born October 10, 1843, wrote me that the name of his great-grandfather was John Bock, and that John Bock had two sons whose mother died and was buried at sea when the family was on its way from Germany to America. While this tradition does not exactly correspond with that of his aunt, who was my grandmather, and who said that the mother died soon after their arrival in Philadelphia, yet it corresponds with her story that the father of Balthaser Bock had two sons. The tradition is also of value simply as a tradition because it names John Bock as the father of Balthaser Bock, and is positively corroborated by the deed before mentioned in which deed John Bock conveyed to Balthaser Bock, his son, then single, the tract of land near Hamburg in 1780.

Certain data found in Chapter III and the data in this chapter, taken together, so satisfactorily confirm most of the tradition which my grandmother related to me that they amount to a demonstration of most of that tradition as being absolutely true and make me believe that her story is correct also when it says that her grandfather, Johannes Bock, and Henry Koch, the grandfather of her





husband, were in the French and Indian War. In Chapter IV it is made to appear that Balthaser Neufang, another ancestor of mine, was in the French and Indian War, and the facts referred to in Chapter III and in this chapter assure me sufficiently well enough to say that John Bock and Henry Koch, two more of my ancestors, also rendered some service in that war, as told to me by my grandmother Koch more than sixty years ago.

I will now construct a Bock Family Tree as far as its trunk and branches have become known to me, indicating each generation in America by the appropriate figure in parentheses immediately following each person's name. Much of this data I received from others, and I cannot vouch for its accuracy. My knowledge is incomplete—the tree will be likewise—but I will try to be accurate in the data that I give here. I am sure the names of many of John Bock's descendants will not appear because they are unknown to or are forgotten by me.

#### THE BOCK FAMILY TREE

JOHANNES BOCK (1), founder of the family in America. Born in Europe, came from the Duchy or Countship of Hanau, Germany, 25 October 1754. Died about 1780 or 1781. Settled in Windsor Township, Berks County, Pa. Was last taxed there in 1780. Had two sons, WILLIAM HENRY BOCK (2) and BALTHASER BOCK (2). Do not know the name of Johannes Bock's wife.

WILLIAM HENRY BOCK (2), a son of JOHANNES BOCK (1) born in Germany. Arrived in America with his father, 25 October 1754. Lived in Windsor Township, Berks County. Married Catherine Rothermel, a daughter of Leonard Rothermel of that township. The Orphans' Court records in Berks County in the estate of her father, shows she was married and still a minor in 1774. Have not tried to trace his descendants.

BALTHASER BOCK (2), a son of JOHANNES BOCK (1) born in Alte Haften, Duchy or Countship of Hanau, Germany, 30 March 1746. Arrived in Philadelphia, 25 October 1754. Died 17 June 1827. October 17, 1780, married SUSANNA MARGARET BOLIG (2), born 23 August 1755, died 9 June 1814. Both buried at McKeansburg, Pa. Had five children: Daniel Bock (3), Peter Bock (3), William Bock (3), Andrew Bock (3) and Susanna Bock (3).

#### DANIEL BOCK (3) AND DESCENDANTS

Born 178—, died 18—, first child of BALTHASER BOCK (2). Married and had several children. According to the will of Balthaser Bock, Daniel Bock was dead when the will was made in September 1825. A special devise therein made was to the heirs of his son, Daniel, at the age of their majority. Mrs.





Frederick (Emaline) Bensinger, a daughter of WILLIAM BOCK (3), told me 9 August 1933, that Daniel Bock had two sons, Jonas and Benjamin, and several daughters. No further information.

#### PETER BOCK (3) AND DESCENDANTS

A son of BALTHASER BOCK (2), born 8 May 1786, died 9 March 1849. Married Mary Magdalena Fey, a daughter of George and Clara Fey, born 15 October 1790, died 1 August 1859. Had eight children: 1 Leah Bock (4), 2 Susan Bock (4), 3 Amos Bock (4), 4 Mary Bock (4), 5 Paul Bock (4), 6 William B. Bock (4), 7 Hannah Bock (4), 8 John Bock (4).

1 LEAH BOCK (4), b. 19 September 1817, d. 12 January 1892; m. CHARLES LORD, 2 September 1838, b. 21 November 1814, d. 21 June 1901. Had five children:

(A) HENRY LORD (5), (B) SARAH LORD (5), (C) EMMA LORD (5), all died soon after birth.

(D) ELIZABETH C. LORD (5), b. 7 April 1854.

(E) HANNAH LORD (5), b. 2 April 1856, d. 1857.

2 SUSANNA BOCK (4), b. 28 January 1820, d. 21 February 1900. Never married.

3 AMOS BOCK (4), b. 1822, d. 1876. Never married.

4 MARY BOCK (4), b. 1824, d. 1897; m. DANIEL WITMAN, 1848. Had seven children:

(A) CHARLES WITMAN (5), m. Agnes Felty.

(B) AMELIA WITMAN (5), died in infancy.

(C) ROBERT SYLVESTER WITMAN (5), m. Catharine Bankes and had four children:

(a) Paul Witman (6); (b) Edith Witman (6), m. Enoch Farlow;

(c) Ruth Witman (6), (d) Clyde Witman (6).

(D) MARY WITMAN (5), died in infancy.

(E) OSCAR WITMAN (5), m. Ida Betz.

(F) WILLIAM LINCOLN WITMAN (5), m. Mary Stoops.

(G) CLARA WITMAN (5), m. Bruce Parke.

5 PAUL BOCK (4), b. 14 October 1826, d. 19 March 1905; m. Amelia Boyer, 26 Jan 1849, b. — February 1825, d. 5 December 1908. They had eight children:

(A) MAHLON P. BOCK (5), b. 17 October 1849, d. 27 February 1931; m. Margaret Kimmel, in July 1870, b. 3 March 1852, d. 9 September 1935. They had six children:

(a) Edward L. Bock (6), b. 1871, d. —, m. Elizabeth Jane —. Had one child:

(1\*) Elizabeth J. Bock (7).

(b) Annie Sarah Bock (6), b. 1873.

(c) Alice Bock (6), b. 1874.

(d) Frederick S. Bock (6), b. 27 July 1878, d. May 1936, m. Annie Hannah, and had four children:

(1\*) Paul Bock (7), (2\*) Frederick Bock (7), (3\*) Margaret E. Bock (7), (4\*) Joel Bock (7).





## THE BOCK FAMILY

(e) Laura S. Bock (6), also born 27 July 1878; m. Dr. H. Hannah, June 1907, and had five daughters:

(1\*) Laura B. Hannah (7), (2\*) Margaret K. Hannah (7), (3\*) Alice H. Hannah (7), (4\*) Elizabeth Josephine Hannah (7), (5\*) Mary Ann Hannah (7).

(f) Harvey Bock (6), born 27 January 1887, d. 27 September 1911.

(B) ELIZABETH MAGDALENE BOCK (5), b. 5 February 1852, d. 12 August 1882; m. Frank Nester, 1879, and had one child:

(a) Harry Frederick Nester (6), b. 4 February 1881.

(C) ELMIRA HELEN BOCK (5), b. February 1855, d. April 1859.

(D) LEWIS WILLIAM BOCK (5), b. September 1857, d. August 1859.

(E) CLARA C. BOCK (5), b. 11 July 1860; m. George F. Morgan, 24 September 1919, b. ———— d. ————.

(F) GEORGE B. BOCK (5), b. 29 October 1862; m. Amanda E. Gerber, 3 December 1885, and had five children:

(a) Elizabeth R. Bock (6), b. September 1886; m. George A. Mantz, 1907.

(b) Helen A. Bock (6), b. 28 June 1889; m. Walter Staley, April 1919, and had five children, namely:

(\*1) Walter Staley (7), (\*2) Paul Staley (7), (\*3) William Staley (7), (\*4) Helen Staley (7) and (\*5) Mary S. Staley (7).

(c) Mary S. Bock (6), b. 1892.

(d) Laura C. Bock (6), b. 26 April 1895; m. John Ramsey, June 1919, and had one daughter:

(\*1) Helen Ramsey (7).

(e) Abner N. Bock (6), b. 24 September 1904.

(G) HARRY P. BOCK (5), b. 7 August 1867, m. Mary Robinson. Had six children:

(a) Ruth Bock (6), b. 1897.

(b) Mahlon W. Bock (6), b. 24 April 1898, m. Margaret ———— and had five children:

(\*1) Mary Jane Bock (7), (\*2) Ruth Bock (7), (\*3) Richard Bock (7), (\*4) David Bock (7), (\*5) Donald Bock (7).

(c) Paul E. Bock (6), b. May 1902, m. Amanda ———— and had one son:

(\*1) Howard R. Bock (7).

(d) Margaret A. Bock (6), b. 1900.

(e) Charles R. Bock (6), b. 1902, d. in infancy.

(f) Alpha M. Bock (6), b. 28 February 1909; m. John Hoyt Jones, 18 August 1929, and had three children:

(\*1) John Kenneth Jones (7), b. 1 May 1930.

(\*2) Audrey Jones (7), b. May 1932.

(\*3) Barbara Lee Jones (7), b. 24 September 1935.

(H) FRANK S. BOCK (5), twin to Harry P. Bock, b. 7 August 1867; m. Lillian M. Lutz, 2 April 1896, and had four children:





(a) ————— (6), b. and d. in December 1896.

(b) Claire A. Bock (6), b. 31 December 1897; m. Edyth Edwards, 11 May 1921, and had six children:

(\*1) Edyth Barbara Bock (7), (\*2) Myrtle A. Bock (7), (\*3) Harvey E. Bock (7), (\*4) Barbara A. Bock (7), (\*5) Betty Lou Bock (7), (\*6) Richard Bock (7).

(c) Myrtle Bock (6), b. 15 February 1901; m. V. A. Thomas, 30 September 1920, and had one child:

(\*1) Arden Thomas (7).

(d) Margaret B. Bock (6), b. 15 January 1906; m. H. H. Kaepernik, December 1927, and had three children:

(\*1) Elsie M. Kaepernik (7), (\*2) Helen A. Kaepernik (7) and (\*3) Jean B. Kaepernik (7).

6 WILLIAM B. BOCK (4), b. 29 February 1832, d. 31 January 1908, m. Christiana Shingler, and had three children:

(A) LEWIS BOCK (5), d. in infancy.

(B) ESTELLE BOCK (5), b. 14 September 1858, d. 12 February 1921; m. Daniel Foltz, December 1879, b. 9 March 1850, d. 24 December 1931; had the following children:

(a) Ira R. Foltz (6), (b) Ralph W. Foltz (6); (c) Mabel G. Foltz (6), m. ————— Neiswender; (d) Daniel L. Foltz (6), (e) Harry D. Foltz (6), (f) Edgar E. Foltz (6), (g) Frank Foltz (6), (h) Guy A. Foltz (6).

(C) SUSAN M. BOCK (5), b. 24 October 1859, d. 13 October 1912; m. John W. Stamm, b. 23 April 1860.

7 HANNAH BOCK (4), b. 1830, d. 1889, m. George Good. Had one child, died soon after birth.

8 JOHN BOCK (4), b. ————— d. ————— 1880, m. Amanda Kerns. Children:

(A) LEAH BOCK, b. ————— d. —————.

(B) CARRIE BOCK (5).

(C) EMMA BOCK (5), b. ————— d. —————, m. James Daubert, and had one son:

(a) Arthur Daubert (6), and two daughters, names are unknown to me.

(D) GEORGE BOCK (5), b. ————— m. —————.

(E) ANNIE BOCK (5), b. —————, m. said James Daubert after his wife died, and had one son:

(a) George Daubert (6), m. to Edna Wade.

#### WILLIAM BOCK (3) AND DESCENDANTS

Third son of BALTHASER BOCK (2), born 21 December 1789, died 30 May 1860. Married twice and became the father of twenty-four children. First married Maria Magdalena Albrecht, a daughter of Heinrich and Susanna Albrecht, 11 March 1815, born 12 June 1793, died 7 March 1835, and by her had nine children:





## THE BOCK FAMILY

1 SUSANNA BOCK (4), b. 4 May 1816, d. 14 February 1897; m. Samuel Leininger, b. 12 October 1805, d. 1 August 1854, both buried at Frienden's Church near New Ringgold, and by him had five children:

(A) ELIZABETH LEININGER (5), b. 12 August 1838; m. Joel Snyder, 15 April 1856.

(B) SARAH LEININGER (5), b. 11 September 1841, d. 28 April 1864.

(C) MARY MAGDALENE LEININGER (5), b. 28 May 1845, d. 21 March 1937; m. Mahlon H. Boyer, 24 December 1868, b. 16 December 1837, d. 2 May 1920, and had nine children:

(a) George William Boyer (6), b. 2 September 1870, m. Eva Carrie Sheidy, and has one child:

(\*1) Mahlon Richard Boyer (7), b. 25 February 1907.

(b) Margaret Amelia Boyer (6), b. 15 November 1871.

(c) Lewis Paul Boyer (6), b. 13 July 1873, d. 29 April 1874.

(d) Frank Austin Boyer (6), b. 19 February 1875, d. 28 January 1921.

(e) Anna Elizabeth Boyer (6), b. 29 August 1876.

(f) Mary Esther Boyer (6), b. 23 January 1879.

(g) Ellen Clara Boyer (6), b. 27 February 1882.

(h) Gertrude Susan Boyer (6), b. 27 February 1882, d. 16 December 1926.

(i) Charles Mahlon Boyer (6), b. 13 March 1884; m. Grace Sourber Jenkins, 15 June 1915.

(D) WILLIAM GEORGE LEININGER (5), b. 17 March 1847.

(E) SUSANNA DIANA LEININGER (5), b. 27 October 1849.

(F) CAROLINE LEININGER (5), b. 16 December 1851, m. Amandus Yost.

2 JOSHUA BOCK (4), b. 6 October 1817, d. 22 November 1896; m. Hannah Teter, b. 30 October 1820, d. 23 October 1896. Children:

(A) WILMINA BOCK (5), b. 19 June 1843, d. 16 July 1907; m. WILLIAM JEFFERSON KOCH (5), 24 November 1868, and had the following children:

(a) Harry Warren Koch (6), b. 20 September 1869; m. Ada Zeola Neal, 21 October 1896, and by her has one child:

(\*1) Harry Warren Koch, Jr., (7), b. 7 October 1897.

(b) Theodore Wesley Koch (6), b. 4 August 1871, m. Gertrude Pricilla Humphrey, and has one child:

(\*1) Dorothy Alden Koch (7), b. 17 August 1913.

(c) Charles Howard Koch (6), b. 1 November 1872, d. ———.

(d) Arthur William Koch (6), b. 10 July 1874, d. 13 July 1874.

(e) Clarence B. Koch (6), b. 10 January 1876, d. 12 April 1876.

(f) Mary Emily Koch (6), b. 12 July 1878, d. 10 January 1886.

(g) Mabel Bertha Koch (6), b. 13 February 1887.

(B) MARY BOCK (5), b. ——— d. ———.

(C) PHOEBE BOCK (5), b. 2 October 1846, d. 17 April 1903; m. Elijah Kramer, b. 10 August 1842, d. 12 June 1918.





3 JACOB BOCK (4); b. ———— d. ————, m. Catherine Zerbe. Children:

- (A) MARY BOCK (5), married ———— Nester.
- (B) CHARLES BOCK (5).
- (C) SUSAN M. BOCK (5).
- (D) SARAH BOCK (5).

4 ELIZABETH BOCK (4), m. John F. Seltzer. Children:

- (A) WILLIAM SELTZER (5).
- (B) LEWIS SELTZER (5).
- (C) FRANK SELTZER (5).
- (D) JACOB SELTZER (5).
- (E) SARAH SELTZER (5), m. ———— Rheinhardt.

5 LEWIS BOCK (4), m. Pascalena Linn. Children:

- (A) MAHLON BOCK (5).
- (B) LOTTIE BOCK (5), m. ———— Slaymaker.
- (C) LUCRETIA BOCK (5), m. ———— Gilford.
- (D) CHARLES BOCK (5).
- (E) MARY BOCK (5).

6 MARY BOCK (4), m. Daniel DeFrehn. Children:

- (A) EMMA A. DEFREHN (5).
- (B) GEORGE H. DEFREHN (5).
- (C) CHARLES W. DEFREHN (5).

7 WILLIAM BOCK (4), m. Polly Deibert. Children:

- (A) JAMES W. BOCK (5).
- (B) FRANK T. BOCK (5).

8 SIMON BOCK (4). Never married.

9 DIANA BOCK (4), m. Henry Leib. Had three children:

- (A) MARY LEIB (5).
- (B) HANNAH LEIB (5).
- (C) EMMA LEIB (5).

WILLIAM BOCK (3), after his first wife died, married (2) Susanna Scheip, born 30 June 1814, died 13 October 1894, and by her had fifteen children, the first being the tenth of his children.

10 SARAH BOCK (4). Never married.

11 HANNNAH MALINDA BOCK (4), m. William Seltzer. Children:

- (A) ELIZABETH SELTZER (5), m. ———— Teter.
- (B) SUSAN SELTZER (5), m. ———— Teter.
- (C) HANNAH SELTZER (5), m. ———— Fegley.
- (D) LIVINGSTON SELTZER (5) was County Superintendent of Schools in Schuylkill County for a quarter of a century.
- (E) WILLIAM SELTZER (5).
- (F) HARVEY SELTZER (5).
- (G) LEWIS SELTZER (5).
- (H) PHOEBE SELTZER (5).





12 CATHARINE BOCK (4), m. Elijah Reed. They had ten children, but I know not the order of their birth.

- (A) MARY REED (5).
- (B) SALLIE REED (5).
- (C) KATE REED (5).
- (D) EMMA REED (5).
- (E) HATTIE REED (5).
- (F) WILLIAM REED (5).
- (G) CHARLES REED (5).
- (H) AUSTIN REED (5).
- (I) ARCHIE REED (5).
- (J) WARREN REED (5).

13 PETER BOCK (4), m. Rebecca Hartzell, and had thirteen children. No further information.

14 LAURA BOCK (4), m. Daniel Kistler. Children:

- (A) MORRIS KISTLER (5).
- (B) IRVIN KISTLER (5).
- (C) SUSAN KISTLER (5), m. ——— Brown.
- (D) TILLIE KISTLER (5), m. ——— Eck.
- (E) IDA KISTLER (5).

15 J. AUGUSTUS BOCK (4), b. 10 October 1843, m. Hettie Ann Reinhart. Children:

- (A) LEWIS BOCK (5).
- (B) WILLIAM BOCK (5).
- (C) AGNES BOCK (5).
- (D) MARY BOCK (5).
- (E) LIZZIE BOCK (5).

16 JUSTINA BOCK (4), m. John Shantz. Had no children.

17 SYBILLA BOCK (4), m. Joseph Alspach. Four children. No further information.

18 THOMAS J. BOCK (4), m. Sarah Kutz. Children:

- (A) MINERVA BOCK (5).
- (B) FIRMEN BOCK (5).
- (C) VESTA BOCK (5).
- (D) URIAS BOCK (5).
- (E) LENA BOCK (5).
- (F) ROBERT BOCK (5).
- (G) SALEM BOCK (5).

19 VALERIA BOCK (4), m. Rudolph Herb. Children:

- (A) ALICE HERB (5), m. ——— Kaiser.
- (B) TILLIE HERB (5).
- (C) VERN A HERB (5).
- (D) JAMES HERB (5).
- (E) ——— HERB (5).





20 EMALINE BOCK (4), m. Frederick Bensinger. Children:

- (A) TILLIE BENSINGER (5).
- (B) KATE BENSINGER (5).
- (C) EMMA BENSINGER (5).
- (D) CLARENCE BENSINGER (5):

21 SAMUEL BOCK (4), m. Elizabeth Koch. Children:

- (A) RAY BOCK (5).
- (B) JAMES BOCK (5).

22 JAMES HENRY BOCK (4), b. 4 September 1854, m. Bertha Quinlan. After her death, married Jennie Anderson. No further information.

23 JOHN BOCK (4), died when fourteen months old.

24 DANIEL BOCK (4), m. Hannah Grouver, and is said to have had five sons and two daughters. No further information.

#### ANDREW (ANDREAS) BOCK (3) AND DESCENDANTS

He was the fourth son of BALTHASER BOCK (2), born 24 August 1792, died 27 March 1874, married Elizabeth ———, b. 16 September 1796, died 7 February 1827. He later married Barbara Yost, born 30 July 1798, died 8 April 1844. Afterwards he married Maria M. Kepner, born 6 April 1793, died 20 January 1857. All are buried at McKeansburg.

According to Mrs. Emaline Bock Bensinger, Andrew Bock had four children by his first wife, namely:

- 1 LOUISA BOCK (4), b. ————d. ————, m. John Gerber.
- 2 MARY or MARIA BOCK (4), b. ————d. ————, m. David Gerber. They had children, among them being George H. Gerber, a well-known lawyer in Schuylkill County.
- 3 HENRY BOCK (4).
- 4 SUSANNA BOCK (4), b. 26 December 1830, d. 17 March 1918. Never married.

By his second wife, ANDREW BOCK (3) had no children, but by the third wife he had three, so he had seven children in all.

- 5 DANIEL BOCK (4).
- 6 JEREMIAH BOCK (4).
- 7 EDWARD BOCK (4).

#### SUSANNA BOCK (3) AND DESCENDANTS

She was the only daughter of BALTHASER BOCK (2). Was born 19 July 1797, died 12 December 1886; married HENRY KOCH (4), 21 May 1815. He was born 5 October 1791 and died 19 February 1867. Both buried at McKeansburg. For the descendants of this union see 9 HENRY KOCH (4) under the Koch Family in Chapter III. One of Henry Koch's sons, the first, was Daniel Koch who married Mary Ann Beck and became the father of myself, Richard H. Koch. I am therefore of the fifth generation in the Bock line in America, my children of the sixth and my grandchildren of the seventh generation.





## CHAPTER VI

### THE BOLICH FAMILY

The reason for this chapter appears in Chapter V which relates to The Bock Family, wherein it is shown that my great-grandfather Balthaser Bock was married to Susan Margretha Bolich, a daughter of Andreas Bolich.

The family name of Bolich, as now spelled, does not appear in such form anywhere among the names of immigrants who came into the Province of Pennsylvania prior to the beginning of the Revolutionary War in 1775. And the names of only five immigrants in which the spelling approximates "B-O-L-I-C-H" appear on the lists of captains of ships, or on lists of males over sixteen years of age who took the oath of allegiance or the oath of adjuration. I will spell the names of the immigrants as I found them on the said respective lists.

On the list of Captain John Govan, in command of the ship *Patience and Margaret*, which arrived in the port of Philadelphia, October 25, 1748, is the name of John Nicholas Poligh, aged forty. This immigrant could write, and to his oath of allegiance signed his name in German, Johann Nicol Polch. He wrote it the same way under his oath of abjuration, excepting the omission of one "n" in the first part of his name. The captain evidently spelled the name as it sounded to him.

John Mason, master of the ship *Neptune*, which arrived in the port of Philadelphia, September 24, 1753, noted on his list of male passengers the names of Andreas Bolk and Johan Bolig; but both of those passengers could write, and when the former signed the two required oaths





he wrote his name Andreas Bolch, while the other one subscribed the oath of allegiance, Johan Atam Bolch, and the oath of abjuration, Johan Adam Bolch. I imagine those two men were related, either as father and son, or as brothers, or as cousins.

On December 12, 1754, the ship *Neptune*, under command of William Mallane, again arrived at Philadelphia, and, among its passengers, the commander's list has Hans George Bohlig, aged thirty-six. But that immigrant could also write his name, and to both oaths subscribed Johan Geörg Bohlich. This last-named immigrant evidently died testate in Caernarvon Township, Berks County. His will is dated November 10, 1797, and was probated December 30, 1797. It is signed John George Bohlich, and names, as devisees, his wife, Judith, and three sons, Peter, Valentine, and George. The record of the Augustus Evangelical Lutheran Church at Trappe in Montgomery County, Pennsylvania, shows that in 1760 this immigrant agreed to contribute five pounds to the salary of the pastor of the church, who was the Rev. Melchior Muhlenberg, the founder of the German Lutheran Church in America. He always signed his name Bohlich, but when two of his sons, George and Valentine, were confirmed in said church in 1772, the name was spelled Bolich in the record of that church. The same record shows the confirmation of Johannes Bolich, a son of Peter, on May 5, 1776, when Johannes was eighteen years old. Peter Bolich died intestate in Caernarvon Township in 1804. However, I have no means, either by tradition or by record, to show any connection of mine with the said Johan George Bohlich, or with any of his descendants. I will, therefore, eliminate that family from further consideration. Nor have I any means of establishing any link whatever with Johann Nicol Polch, who arrived October 25, 1748. I, therefore, eliminate further consideration of that immigrant and his descendants.





On October 13, 1769, John Bollick arrived in Philadelphia. He signed his oath of abjuration by mark. But as that was more than fourteen years after my great-grandmother, Susan Bolich Bock, a daughter of Andreas Bolich, was born in Pennsylvania, I need give the immigrant, John Bollick, no further attention.

In passing, I wish to remark that the name of Andreas Michael Holich, whose marriage to Susanna Dorothea Stahl on July 25, 1757, as noted on page 311, Vol. 9, *Second Series, Pennsylvania Archives*, should not be mistaken for the name of Bolich. What is there printed was taken from the record of St. Michael's and Zion Church in Philadelphia. And there are several facts that eliminate the premises upon which could rest the conclusion that the name of the groom was Bolich and not Holich. First: A Johann Michael Holich personally signed the oath of abjuration at Philadelphia, August 15, 1750, and Andreas Michael Holich may have been his son. At all events, the family name of Holich is conclusively authenticated by the said autographic signature. Second: My great-grandmother, Susan Margretha Bolich, who was the wife of my great-grandfather, Balthaser Bock, was a daughter of Andreas Bolich, and was born August 23, 1755, which was twenty-three months and two days before Andreas Michael Holich got married. She died June 8, 1814, and is buried at McKeansburg, by the side of her husband, Balthaser Bock. Third: Andreas Bolich, a brother of Mrs. Balthaser Bock, was born in Berks County, October 20, 1757, and died in East Brunswick Township, Schuylkill County, January 20, 1843. He is buried at Frieden's Church near New Ringgold. He was, therefore, born less than three months after the said Andreas Michael Holich got married. Fourth: The pastor of the said St. Michael's and Zion Church said, in a letter to Mrs. Charles M. Bolich of Allentown, Penn-





sylvania, that the name is Holich and not Bolich on the original record of that church.

The only instance in any public record, outside of those already referred to, where the family name is spelled "B-O-L-C-H," is that of Andreas Bolch on the copy of the list of males in Berks County who took the oath of allegiance when the Revolutionary War was in progress. That was on June 6, 1778. Another man by the name of Andrew Bolich took the same oath on April 20, 1778, before the same magistrate in Berks County. They were father and son. All males from eighteen years of age and upwards were obliged to take that oath. The copy of the lists of those who took the oath of allegiance in Berks County is in the possession of the Historical Society of Berks County, at Reading, Pennsylvania.

According to family tradition of a satisfactory nature, Andreas Bolch had another son, named Michael, who lived in the time of the Revolution. But his name does not appear on the list of those who took the oath of allegiance in Berks County in 1777 and 1778. In the family tradition he is known as "Old Michael Bolich," but he may have been under the age of eighteen in those two years and therefore not required to take the oath of allegiance, or he may have been in the army and therefore excused from taking the oath. He may have been called "Old Michael Bolich" because he had a son Michael.

In my examination of the list of taxables, I have not found the name of Bolch anywhere, but Bolich, Bollich, Bolig, Bollig, Bolih, Boligh, Balich, and Bolick are found on such lists. Assessors and tax collectors spelled the name Bolich differently.

The name of Andrew Bolig appears as a warrantee in Berks County, December 24, 1757 (Volume 26, *Third Series, Pennsylvania Archives*, 244) and on the list of taxables in Maxatawny Township, Berks County, in





1758 and 1759, but in 1760 it appears on the list in Greenwich Township as Andreas Bollig, Sen.; and it continues to appear on the lists of taxables in Greenwich Township under different spellings up to 1780 when he died. In 1780 his name appeared as Andrew Bollig, Sen., and his son Andrew Bollig, as a single freeman, appears on the same list for that year. The name of Andrew Bollig continues on the list of taxables in Greenwich Township until 1792, inclusive. Next it appears in 1793 in Brunswick Township, where I followed it until 1797, when I quit further search. He died in that township in 1843. Although he was taxed as a single freeman in Greenwich Township in 1780, he was thereafter taxed as a married man.

The name of Michael Boligh first appears on the list of taxables in Greenwich Township in 1788. He was among the married men then. In the list of 1789 it is spelled Michael Bolligh. He next appears in 1791 on the list of taxables in Brunswick Township, and thereafter until at least 1797, where I quit the search, because he later moved to Barry Township, where he acquired much land, lived many years and died in 1844.

In order to see how the spelling of the family name of Bolich became so varied, I will refer to the public records respecting the estate of Andreas Bolich and the estate of Michael Bolich who died in Schuylkill County, respectively, in 1843 and 1844. Both died testate, and their wills are written in German. The first is signed, Andreas Bolich, but in the affidavit of the witnesses when the will was probated, the name is written Andrew Bolig, and the papers relating to the estate are in an envelope which is endorsed "Andrew Bolick."

The will of the second testator is signed Michael Bolich, but, in making out letters testamentary to the executors of Michael's will, the register spelled their names Henry Bolig, and John Bolig. However, when





those two sons, as executors, filed their account, they signed the account as Henrich Bolich and Johannes Bolich. In that estate I found an envelope containing the bond of a guardian of a certain minor heir of Michael Bolich, and the envelope is endorsed Bolick. Such variance in the spelling of proper names sometimes confuses, but, nevertheless, often helps to warrant the genealogist in his identifications of both ancestors and descendants. I cannot account for such variance excepting on the ground of ignorance or carelessness, but I think I can account for the introduction of the letter "i" in the name of Bolch, because I think no German-speaking person will properly pronounce Bolich without a slur on the letter "i" between the letters "l" and "c." On August 31, 1935, I called on Mendon Bolich Sechler at his home in Orwigsburg, and we went together to the grave of my great-grandmother, Susan Margretha Bolich Bock, at McKeansburg, the grave of Sechler's great-grandfather, Andreas Bolich, at the Frieden's Church, and to the graves of other relatives of the name of Bolich. I then told him of the original spelling of the name of the first comer to America as Bolch, and asked him if he had ever heard of the spelling of the name undergoing a change, and he instantly said: "Yes, I heard that." He was born on the 23rd of April, 1849, and died on the 14th of July, 1936. He knew much family tradition, and I have no doubt whatever of the correctness of his answer to my question. Nor have I the least doubt but that Andreas Bolch who came here in 1753 was the founder of the Bolich family in America to which I belong. There is no room for doubt.

But, before I give more attention to the family founded by Andreas Bolch, let me refer briefly to John Adam Bolch, who came here on the same boat with Andreas Bolch. I am sure he is the Adam Bolich whose name appears on the list of taxables in Exeter Township, Berks





County, in 1757, 1758, and 1759. But his presence in Berks County is noted before 1757. The record of the Trinity Lutheran Church at Reading shows the baptism of Johannes Bolich, February 6, 1755, when he was four weeks old. It gives the names of his parents as John Adam Bolich and Christina Bolich. It says that the baptism took place in the house at Schwarzwald, which I think was not far from Reading. I'm not sure that the name of Adam Bolich appears in Berks County on the lists of taxables after 1759; it is very probable that within the next decade he migrated with other Germans who went from the Province of Pennsylvania into Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, and farther south in the eighteenth century.

My thought that John Adam Bolich went south is fully confirmed by a letter that I unexpectedly received early in July, 1937, reading as follows:

Judge Richard H. Koch,  
Pottsville, Penna.

Hickory, N. C.,  
June 29, 1937.

Dear sir:—

I have been informed that you are the Historian for the Bolick clan in your part of the world and am writing you to find if you would like to exchange information, as I have done a great deal of that kind of work for the same line here in this state.

We have the will on record here in a nearby county, of one Johann Adam Bolch, who arrived on the ship Neptune at Philadelphia Sept. 24, 1753. This will was dated 1794. We have also worked out some of the lines. His oldest son Jacob is one that we have failed on so far. Jacob, Adam, Jr. and Casper all have Revolutionary war records found recorded in the records at the N. C. Historical Commission at Raleigh, N. C.

The name was originally spelled Bolch, but we have found the following spellings here; Bolick, Bolich, Boliek, and Balch. Descendants of this line are found in abundance in this locality.

I would like to have a copy of what you are doing and will be glad to send you whatever material I may have on the line.

Would delight to hear from you in any case.

Very sincerely yours,

HIRAM S. BALCH.





The reader will note that the surname of the writer of this letter is Balch, changed from Bolch.

To my reply to the above letter, Mr. Balch wrote me again on the 8th of July, 1937, *inter alia*, saying, that Johann Adam Bolch's will was probated in Lincoln County, North Carolina. It was dated in 1794. Also, that he had transferred land in that county as early as 1770. He said, "The families were very large, the descendants are legion," and that they are scattered in North Carolina, Tennessee, and elsewhere. He also told me that the name is variously spelled Bolch, Bolick, Balick, Bolich, and Bolig, but that the original was John Adam Bolch, and that his son Jacob also spelled his surname Bolch, as did the latter's son, Adam, who was the great-grandfather of Hiram S. Balch. Mr. Balch was kind enough to give me part of the John Adam Bolch family tree and said that Jacob Bolch was born in Germany about 1751, and Sebastian Bolch, another son of John Adam Bolch, was born at sea in 1753. A very interesting fact stated by Mr. Balch is that John, a son of John Adam Bolch, was baptized in February, 1755, when he was four weeks old. Which corresponds exactly with what I have already stated about finding the baptism of Johannes Bolick in February, 1755, in the record of the Trinity Lutheran Church at Reading. These corresponding facts show the John Adam Bolch who came here September 24, 1753, was the same John Adam Bolch who later settled in Lincoln County, North Carolina.

From tradition, I know that Andreas Bolich had a daughter named Susan Margretha, a son Andreas, and a son Michael, but in his will which is dated March 16, 1780, and which was probated on the 19th of April, 1780, he omits the names of Susan and Michael, and names only his son, Andreas, and a daughter, Dorothea. The testator must have been very sick when his will was written, and the writer of it was apparently not well educated. The





will is too clumsily drawn and too contradictory. The testator signed his will by his mark in the presence of five witnesses, and his name is there spelled, *Andrew Bolig*. In his will he, inter alia, said, "My son *Andreas* shall have my place for the sum of 300 pounds lawful money as legal in Penna. in payments each to be 33.6.4." The provision for the mother is not quite intelligible and the devise to Dorothea was only "the yearling heifer." Mrs. Charles M. Bolich of Allentown has in her possession a certificate showing the marriage of Dorothea Bolich, a daughter of Andreas Bolich, to Conrad Spohn, June 29, 1784. I have not attempted to trace that couple and their descendants, if they had any. The name of Conrad Spohn does not appear in the census of 1790, although eight families of that name appear, and all of them lived in Berks County.

George Weiser, who was the executor of the will of Andreas Bolich, filed his account February 1, 1781, showing on hand for distribution, 1698 pounds and 19 shillings; but no release from the distributees to the executor appears of record. However, there is no room for skepticism or doubt that the distributees consisted of his widow, his daughter, Susan, his sons, Andreas and Michael, and another daughter, Dorothea. I have discovered no evidence anywhere tending to show that Andreas Bolich had any other children than the four already named. From all the data already given, I believe those four children were born in the order just named, although it is possible that Michael was born first and that he was born in Europe, because I have heard it said that he lived to be about one hundred years old. It was not said, however, by any of his descendants, and I therefore doubt it. If he was born first, I think his name would have appeared somewhere on the lists of taxables in Berks County long before the name of his brother, Andreas, appeared there in Greenwich Township. As already





stated, he may have been known as "Old Michael Bolich" because he had a son named Michael. The latter was born January 25, 1797. He lived in Barry Township where he died and was buried in 1871.

Michael Bolich, Senior, was also buried in Barry Township in a cemetery near Taylorsville. The cemetery is no longer used. It is in low ground adjoining Mahanoy Creek, and many of the graves are unmarked by tombstones, or the inscriptions on many are no longer legible. In his lifetime he became the owner of many acres of land in that township.

So far as my own descent from Andreas Bolch, the immigrant, is concerned, I will simply say that his daughter, Susan Margretha, on the 17th of October, 1780, became the wife of Balthaser Bock. The Bocks had five children, namely: Susanna, Daniel, Peter, Andrew, and William. Susanna married my grandfather, Henry Koch, and with him had ten children, of whom Daniel Koch, born December 24, 1816, was the first. Daniel Koch married Mary Ann Beck, October 24, 1839, and became the father of eleven children, I being the seventh in the order of birth. I was born April 2, 1852, and have four children and eight grandchildren. I am of the fifth generation of the Bolich line in America.

Now, having established the identity of Andreas Bolch as one of my ancestors who founded families in America, I will, with the aid of family tradition, tombstones, and various other data construct The Bolich Family Tree, as far as the facts have become known to me. Of course, my knowledge is not complete; if it were, the branches and leaves of the tree might become as shady as those of Vallombrosa. For I know that William Bock, one of Andreas Bolch's grandchildren, was married twice and became the father of twenty-four children. I do not mean to purposely omit any descendant, but I do not feel





it my duty to try to get all the data required to make the family tree complete in every detail.

Interested persons may add many more names to the list. The omission of such names here must not be regarded as an intentional slight on my part.

### THE BOLICH FAMILY TREE

ANDREAS BOLCH (1), born in Germany, arrived in Philadelphia, Pa., 24 September 1753, died testate in Greenwich Township, Berks County, Pa., in April, 1780. As far as I know he had only four children: SUZANNA MARGRETHA BOLICH (2), born 23 August 1755, died 9 June 1814, married Balthaser Bock; for their descendants see Chapter V, The Bock Family; ANDREAS BOLICH (2), see below; MICHAEL BOLICH (2), see below; DOROTHEA BOLICH (2), married Conrad Spohn, 29 June 1784. No further information.

ANDREAS BOLICH (2), son of ANDREAS BOLCH (1), born 20 October 1757, died testate 20 June 1843; m. Margaretha Elizabeth ———, born 21 August 1755, died 21 September 1825. Both buried at Frieden's Church near New Ringgold, Pa. They had six children: SUSANNA BOLICH (3), JOHN BOLICH (3), CATHARINE BOLICH (3), MARGRETHA BOLICH (3), ANNA MARIA BOLICH (3) and DANIEL BOLICH (3). I do not know the dates of the birth of all of them. Daniel was born 27 April 1794, died 21 December 1809, and is buried at Frieden's Church.

SUSANNA BOLICH (3), daughter of ANDREAS BOLICH (2), born 28 April 1781, died 27 November 1857; m. George Leininger, born 4 February 1779, died 9 January 1845. Know of only two children: 1 ISAAC LEININGER (4) and 2 SAMUEL LEININGER (4), see next below.

SAMUEL LEININGER (4), b. 13 February 1805, d. 1 August 1854; m. Susanna Bock (4), b. 4 May 1816, d. 14 February 1897. Both buried at Frieden's Church. Children:

(A) ELIZABETH LEININGER (5), b. 12 August 1838; m. Joel Snyder, 15 April 1856.

(B) SARAH LEININGER (5), b. 11 September 1841, d. 28 April 1854.

(C) MARY MAGDALENE LEININGER (5), b. 28 May 1845, d. 21 March 1937; m. Mahlon H. Boyer, 24 December 1868, b. 16 December 1837, d. 2 May 1920, and had nine children. They lived in Pine Grove, Pa.

(a) George William Boyer (6), b. 8 September 1870, m. Eva Carrie Sheidy, and has one child:

(\*1) Mahlon Richard Boyer (7), b. 25 February 1907.

(b) Margaret Amelia Boyer (6), b. 15 November 1871.

(c) Lewis Paul Boyer (6), b. 13 July 1873, d. 29 April 1874.

(d) Frank Austin Boyer (6), b. 19 February 1875, d. 28 January 1921.

(e) Anna Elizabeth Boyer (6), b. 29 August 1876.

(f) Mary Esther Boyer (6), b. 23 January 1879.

(g) Ellen Clara Boyer (6), b. 27 February 1882.





(h) Gertrude Susan Boyer (6), b. 27 February 1882, d. 16 December 1926.

(i) Charles Mahlon Boyer (6), b. 13 March 1884; m. Grace Sourber Jenkins, 15 June 1915.

(D) WILLIAM GEORGE LEININGER (5), b. 17 March 1847.

(E) SUSANNA DIANA LEININGER (5), b. 27 October 1849.

(F) CAROLINE LEININGER (5), b. 16 December 1851, m. Amandus Yost.

JOHN BOLICH (3), son of ANDREAS BOLICH (2). (He was called Johannes, but I use the English, John.) Born in Greenwich Township, 4 February 1784, d. 15 June 1867; m. Catharine Fisher, b. 27 September 1789, d. 3 October 1852. Both buried at Frieden's Church. They had thirteen children:

1 Susanna Bolich (4), 2 John Bolich (4), 3 Catharine Bolich (4), 4 Benjamin Bolich (4), 5 George H. Bolich (4), 6 Samuel Bolich (4), 7 Mary Bolich (4), 8 William Bolich (4), 9 Hannah Bolich (4), 10 Dianna Bolich (4), 11 Sarah Bolich (4), 12 Daniel Bolich (4), 13 Joseph Bolich (4).

1 SUSANNA BOLICH (4), daughter of JOHN BOLICH (3), b. 7 February 1809, d. 4 May 1870; m. Joseph Alspach, b. 9 October 1808, d. 2 January 1881. Children:

(A) SAMUEL ALSPACH (5).

(B) JOSEPH ALSPACH (5).

(C) MARY ALSPACH (5).

(D) DIANNA ALSPACH (5), who married Jonas Fetterolf.

(E) SARAH ALSPACH (5), who married George Riegel.

2 JOHN BOLICH (4), son of JOHN BOLICH (3), b. 9 March 1811, d. 30 January 1888; m. Hannah Sechler, b. 16 August 1815, d. 25 March 1875. Both buried at Zions Lutheran Church, West Penn Township, Schuylkill County, Pa.

(A) LEVI BOLICH (5), b. 1835, d. 1886; m. Fianna ———, b. 1858, d. 1931. Children:

(a) James M. Bolich (6) and (b) Edward Bolich (6).

(B) CATHARINE BOLICH (5), b. 8 December 1837, d. 19 April 1891.

(C) HEFTIE BOLICH (5), b. ——— d. ———.

(D) HANNAH BOLICH (5), b. ——— d. ———.

(E) SUSANNA BOLICH (5), b. 4 May 1846, d. 3 September 1933; m. Joseph Leaser, b. 17 September 1853, d. 22 April 1926.

(F) STEPHEN RICHARD BOLICH (5), b. 26 June 1851, d. 16 April 1870.

3 CATHARINE BOLICH (4), daughter of JOHN BOLICH (3), b. ——— 1813, d. ———, m. Jesse Sechler. Descendants:

(A) MENDON B. SECHLER (5), b. 3 April 1849, d. 14 July 1936; m. Sarah Moyer, 23 March 1872. Their children:

(a) Franklin Sechler (6), who married Christine Zapp, who have one child:

Irene Sechler (7).





## THE BOLICH FAMILY

(b) Ida Sechler (6), m. Frank Gerber. They have one child:  
Mabel Gerber (7).

(c) Susan Sechler (6), m. John Reinhart. They have two children:  
Allen Reinhart (7), m. Adaline Bucher, and Edward Reinhart (7),  
who married Catharine McKeenan.

(d) Kate Sechler (6), m. Harry Scharadin. They have one child:  
Garten Scharadin (7), m. Emma Frantz, and they have two chil-  
dren:

Harry Scharadin (8) and Maria Scharadin (8).

(e) George Sechler (6), m. Edna Reinhart.

(f) Elsie Sechler (6), m. Adam Gerber. They have five children:

(1\*) Mildred Gerber (7), m. Franklin Reed; (2\*) Floyd Gerber  
(7), m. Ruth Kupp; (3\*) Clyde Gerber (7), (4\*) Margaret  
Gerber (7), (5\*) Leon Gerber (7).

(g) Maggie Sechler (6).

The other children of CATHARINE BOLICH (4) and Jesse Sechler  
were:

(B) DANIEL B. SECHLER (5).

(C) SAMUEL SECHLER (5).

(D) CAROLINE SECHLER (5). No other information.

4 DANIEL BOLICH (4), son of JOHN BOLICH (3), b. 26 May 1814,  
d. 2 June 1884; m. Elizabeth Sechler, b. 31 January 1818, d. 15 April  
1872. No children.

5 GEORGE H. BOLICH (4), 11 October 1816, d. 29 January 1902.  
Lived in Albany Township, Berks County, Pa.; m. Priscilla Wanamaker.  
Both buried at Bolich's Church. Children:

(A) SAMUEL BOLICH (5).

(B) CAROLINE BOLICH (5), m. Jacob Seidel.

(C) WILLIAM BOLICH (5).

(D) JOHN BOLICH (5).

(E) AMANDUS BOLICH (5).

(F) PRISCILLA BOLICH (5).

(G) SARAH BOLICH (5).

These last four all died young.

(H) GEORGE BOLICH (5).

(I) ALICE BOLICH (5), m. Daniel Bailey.

(J) JACOB BOLICH (5), died at age of 17.

(K) REUBEN W. BOLICH (5), b. 4 March 1865; m. Emma Yenser,  
31 October 1891. One child:

Amelia Alice Bolich (6).

6 SAMUEL BOLICH (4), son of John Bolich (3), b. 24 November  
1817, d. 28 April 1879, unmarried, in East Brunswick Township.

7 MARY BOLICH (4), daughter of John Bolich (3), b. ————1819, m.  
Jacob Steinmetz. No further information.

8 WILLIAM BOLICH (4), son of John Bolich (3), b. 8 July, 1820, d.  
27 April 1877; m. Mary Sechler, b. 10 March 1823, d. 5 November  
1918. Children:





(A) CHARLES SAMUEL BOLICH (5), b. ———, m. Sarah C. Kindt. Know of only one child, Howard Charles Bolich (6), b. 6 May 1874, d. 29 August 1918; m. Lillian Dreher, b. 13 December 1874. Know of only one child, Charles Monroe Bolich, Esq., (7) of Allentown, Pa., b. 9 September 1900, m. Mary Margaret Shimer.

(B) MARIA BOLICH (5), b. 1848, d. 1919; m. Salem W. Koch, b. 1848, d. 1916.

(C) EMMA BOLICH (5), b. 23 November 1852, d. 7 September 1927; m. David Bauscher, b. 26 December 1855.

9 HANNAH BOLICH (4), daughter of JOHN BOLICH (3), b. 1882, d. ———, m. Charles Dreher. Children:

(A) SAMUEL DREHER (5).

(B) JOHN DREHER (5).

(C) ROBERT DREHER (5).

(D) CHARLES DREHER, JR. (5).

10 DIANA BOLICH (4), daughter of JOHN BOLICH (3), b. 19 October 1823, d. 24 March 1892, unmarried. Buried at Frieden's Church. Left an estate of \$4,626.89 for distribution among collateral kinsfolk by the Orphans' Court of Schuylkill County.

11 SARAH BOLICH (4), daughter of JOHN BOLICH (3), b. 17 February 1825, d. 9 January 1899.

12 BENJAMIN BOLICH (4), b. 1826, d. ———.

13 JOSEPH BOLICH (4), son of JOHN BOLICH (3), b. 13 March 1831, d. 22 April 1891; m. Sarah A. Oswald, b. 6 December 1842, d. 18 March 1926. Children:

(A) CLAUDE BOLICH (5), m. ———. Children:

(a) Joseph Bolich (6), (b) Sarah Bolich (6), (c) Amy Bolich (6), (d) Mahlon Bolich (6), (e) Esther Bolich (6) and (f) Edna Bolich (6).

(B) HENRY BOLICH (5), m. ———. Children:

(a) Lewis Bolich (6), (b) Luella Bolich (6), (c) Elsie Bolich (6), (d) Joseph Bolich (6), (e) Harry Bolich (6), (f) Olive Bolich (6) and (g) George Bolich (6).

(C) KATIE O. BOLICH (5).

CATHARINE BOLICH (3) and MARGARETHA BOLICH (3), daughters of ANDREAS BOLICH (2) were married to ——— Steigerwalt and ——— Trexler, but I do not know which married which.

ANNA MARIA BOLICH (3), daughter of ANDREAS BOLICH (2), b. 10 June 1791, d. 27 January 1829; m. WILLIAM KOCH (4), b. 9 November 1789, d. 26 August 1875. She is buried at McKeanburg. He at Schuylkill Haven. For further information see WILLIAM KOCH (4) in Family Tree in Chapter III.

MICHAEL BOLICH (2), son of ANDREAS BOLICH (1), b. 17—, d. testate October 1844 in Barry Township, Schuylkill County, Pa. He was married three times. His first wife was Barbara Reed who came from Germany. A granddaughter, Emma Bolich, wife of George H. Krick of Shenandoah, says he became the father of the following named children: Henry Bolich (3), John Bolich (3), Daniel Bolich (3), Samuel Bolich (3), Solomon Bolich (3), Michael Bolich (3), William C. Bolich (3), Charles Bolich (3), Andrew





Bolich (3); Rebecca Bolich (3), who married ——— Kantner; Salome Bolich (3), who married ——— Hepler; Elizabeth Bolich (3), who married ——— Bickel, and Susan Bolich (3), who married ——— Hull. But in his will, dated 5 August 1843 and probated 19 October 1844, Michael Bolich refers to his oldest daughter, Margaret, as the wife of Michael Kantner. He also names three sons, Charles, Henry, and John, and says his estate shall be equally divided among his twelve children after the death of his wife. I therefore assume one of the thirteen named by Mrs. Krick was dead and childless when the will was written, and also that Mrs. Kantner's full name may have been Margaret Rebecca Bolich.

HENRY BOLICH (3), son of MICHAEL BOLICH (2), m. ———  
Among his children was WILLIAM BOLICH (4). No further information.

MICHAEL BOLICH (3), son of MICHAEL BOLICH (2), b. 25 January 1797, d. 17 January 1871; m. Salome Hepler, b. 17 February 1798, d. 11 April 1874. Both buried at Barry Evangelical Church Cemetery. Children:

- (A) NATHAN BOLICH (4).
- (B) TIMOTHY BOLICH (4).
- (C) EMANUEL BOLICH (4).
- (D) WILLIAM BOLICH (4).
- (E) LAVINA BOLICH (4), b. 2 March 1827, m. Daniel S. Smith.  
Children:

(a) HENRY SMITH (5), m. Susan Zimmerman: Children:

(1\*) Sarah Jane Smith (6), m. James Gaskin. Children:

Edna Gaskin (7), Leroy Gaskin (7), Clinton Gaskin (7), James Gaskin (7), William Gaskin (7), Joseph Gaskin (7), Norman Gaskin (7), Maude Gaskin (7), Pearl Gaskin (7).

(2\*) Daniel M. Smith (6) of Mowry, m. Lillie S. Hummel. Eleven children:

(1) Emerson N. Smith (7), m. Gertrude Rung. Children:

Laren Smith (3), Edwin Smith (8), Russel Smith (8), Donald Smith (8).

(2) Darbin H. Smith (7), m. Margaret Trothan. Children:

Darbin Smith (8), Elizabeth Smith (8).

(3) Paul D. Smith (7), m. Eva Deitrich. Children:

Carol Joy Smith (8), Mary Jane Smith (8), and Shirley Smith (8).

(4) Purella Smith (7), m. Clarence Mattern. One child:

Paul Mattern (8).

(5) Milton A. Smith (7), m. Helen Wolfgang. One child:

Milton Asher Smith (8).

(6) Olive E. Smith (7), m. John Hepler.

(7) Timothy N. Smith (7).

(8) Robert E. Smith (7).

(9) George Washington Smith (7).

(10) James Smith (7).

(11) Gertrude Smith (7), dead.





(3\*) Elizabeth Smith (6), m. Henry Lukens. Children:

Robert Lukens (7), Donald Lukens (7), Jannett Lukens (7), Carl Lukens (7), Mary Lukens (7) and George Lukens (7).

(4\*) William Smith (6), m. Clara Witman. Children:

Ada Smith (7), Henry Smith (7), William Smith (7), Stella Smyth (7), Phyllis Smith (7) and Daniel Smith (7).

(b) WILLIAM SMITH (5).

(c) JOSIAH SMITH (5).

(d) DANIEL SMITH (5).

(e) JOHN MILTON SMITH (5).

(f) SARAH SMITH (5), b. 5 March 1863; m. John Snyder, b. 5 March 1863, d. 9 January 1937. Children:

Carrie Snyder (6), Jennie Snyder (6), Della Snyder (6), Mattie Snyder (6), Blanche Snyder (6), Walter Snyder (6).

(g) AMANDA SMITH (5), b. 18 July 1868. Not married.

(F) POLLY BOLICH (4).

(G) SALOME BOLICH (4).

(H) ANNA BOLICH (4).

(I) REBECCA BOLICH (4).

(J) AMANDA BOLICH (4).

ANDREW BOLICH (3), son of MICHAEL BOLICH (2), b. 1819, d. 1881; m. Catharine Whery, 18 December 1852. Children:

(A) ARMETTA BOLICH (4), m. George Robertson.

(B) CHARLES BOLICH (4), m. Elizabeth Becker.

(C) FRANK BOLICH (4), m. Margaret Hasel.

(D) ELIZABETH BOLICH (4), m. James Cooper.

(E) MICHAEL BOLICH (4), m. Caroline Hasel.

(F) ANDREW BOLICH (4).

(G) LAURA BOLICH (4).

(H) CORA BOLICH (4), m. Jos. Scheider.

(I) JOHN BOLICH (4).

(J) EMMA BOLICH (4), b. 20 March 1873; m. George H. Krick, 27 October 1904. Live in Shenandoah.

(K) OSCAR BOLICH (4), m. Mary Tindle.

Note: Under ANDREAS BOLICH (1) I have given the names of only four persons as his children, namely: Susanna, Andreas, Michael, and Dorothy, but I must add here the probability of his having had two other sons, namely: David Bolig who was taxed in Albany Township as a single man in 1784, and Daniel Bolig who was taxed in Greenwich Township in 1785. They may have descendants capable of identifying them as sons of ANDREAS BOLICH (1), the founder of the Bolich line to which I belong. As my main purpose is only to establish my ancestry in this country, I have not deemed it necessary to follow up collateral lines, although I have tried to show such as far as they became incidentally disclosed by my investigation.





## CHAPTER VII

### THE BECK FAMILY

Of course, repetition of certain facts in this book is unavoidable, because I am trying to show, as well as I can, the names of as many of my ancestors in America as possible. Their intermarriage necessitates more or less repetition.

As the maiden name of my mother was Mary Ann Beck, the name of her pioneer ancestor of that surname and her descent from him require consideration of the Beck family. Here again tradition comes greatly to my aid. I made certain brief notes when talking to my mother's father, Emanuel Beck, in 1874, and again in 1876, when I visited him and his wife in their home near Pottsgrove, Northumberland County, Pennsylvania. Otherwise I would be at some loss respecting grandfather Beck's ancestors in America. Among the facts stated by him and noted by me on the occasions of my visits are these: His grandfather came from Prussia, where he had served for some time in the army and had been taken prisoner but later escaped. After his arrival in Philadelphia, he lived there for a short while but finally settled in Lancaster County, in that part which is now Lebanon County. His name was John Beck, was a powder maker, and was some eighty years old when he died. He was buried in the Lutheran graveyard in Lebanon when Emanuel Beck was a little boy. Emanuel Beck first told me that the name of his father was John Philip Beck, and then that the name of his grandfather was also John. He may have told me whether or not his grandfather had a middle name, but I have no recollection of it, and made no note of it when the conversation occurred. It will later





appear that his name was John Christian Beck. He had two sons and a number of daughters, one of the sons was John Philip Beck, who was the father of Emanuel Beck. John Philip Beck was a gunsmith; he died when he was sixty years old. He was born somewhere in what later became part of Berks County. He had three sons and three daughters. Emanuel Beck was twenty-one or twenty-two years old when his father died. His father was also buried in the Lutheran church cemetery in Lebanon. Emanuel Beck was born in Lebanon, May 12, 1788; he married Barbara Fisher, July 11, 1812. He never had a funeral in his house. He had two sons and seven daughters. He was millwright, and he built ten new grist-mills in his time. His uncle (his father's brother) was a powder maker and was killed when the powder mill where he worked blew up. Record data hereafter referred to will confirm most of grandfather Beck's statements.

On the 10th of June, 1890, my uncle, John Beck, paid me a visit in Pottsville and then told me that his father had a brother named Christian and a sister whom they called "Polly," and that she married "Little Joe" Hies-ter. But he erred in the name of her husband.

One of my cousins who lived not far from Pottsgrove, Northumberland County, told me that Emanuel Beck had a sister, Mary, whom they called "Polly," and that she spent her last years with a daughter in Lebanon; that grandfather Beck had another sister, Catherine, who married a man named Laudenslager and that she was buried in Sunbury.

Another cousin, Emanuel Reed, now deceased, who lived in Pottsgrove and was an intelligent man, some years older than myself, wrote a very short sketch of the Beck family. His mother was a daughter of Emanuel Beck. He said that John Beck, the grandfather of Emanuel, was born in the Kingdom of Prussia and came





to America and settled in Lancaster County, where he died and was buried in a Lutheran cemetery; that John Philip Beck, one of his sons, was a gunsmith, died when he was sixty years old and was buried in Lebanon. That John Philip Beck had three sons and three daughters, namely: Christian, Emanuel, John, Mary, Catherine, and Elizabeth. That Mary married John Laudenslager, Catherine married John Schultz, and Elizabeth married Joseph Hiester. I do not know where Emanuel Reed got all his information; some of it may be incorrect, but Mary Beck may have been married twice.

I know that my mother visited in Reading one of her first cousins who had been Elizabeth Hiester, a daughter of Joseph Hiester. She was then the wife of David McKnight, a prominent banker in the city of Reading. Joseph Hiester was a first cousin of the Joseph Hiester who was Governor of Pennsylvania from December 19, 1820, to December 16, 1823. The Governor was a big man over six feet tall, while the other Joseph Hiester was a much smaller man and was popularly known as "Little Joe" Hiester. "Little Joe" married Elizabeth Beck, a sister of my grandfather, Emanuel Beck. Hiester was born in 1768 and died in 1830. (*Berks County Pennsylvania*, Volume I, page 352.) David McKnight was born in 1814, died August 29, 1873. On April 13, 1837, he married Elizabeth Hiester. (*History of Berks County, Pennsylvania*, page 838.)

Before trying to learn when John Christian Beck came from Germany, I will refer to record data confirmatory of some of the facts mentioned by my grandfather, Emanuel Beck.

When John Philip Beck lived and died in Lebanon there was only one Lutheran church there—the Salem Lutheran Church. In its record of burials this data will be found:





Date of burial	Anna Maria, daughter of Abraham Lauk and wife Margaret was born in Tulpehocken Sept. 29, 1756 Bapt. and confirmed. Married John Philip Beck May 15, 1776. They had 9 children — 6 are living 3 sons and 3 daughters. She was suffering for a year. Last Tuesday she was overcome with child birth pains and died on Saturday morning at 6 o'clock. Aged 40 years 1 month — Text Job 1.
1796 Oct. 20	
1806 April —	Joh. Philip, son of Philip Beck and wife Anna Maria, was born Feb. 1, 1780. Baptized. Sponsors Christian Beck and wife Rebecca. Confirmed. Died of consumption. Aged 26 yrs. 2 m. 11 da.
1811 Oct.	Joh. Philip, son of Joh. Christian Beck and wife Anna Maria was born in 1751. Baptized and confirmed. He was married to Anna Maria Lauk in 1776. They had 9 children. 5 are living. The first wife died Oct. 1796. He was married the second time to Barbara Böshar in 1802. They had 2 children — 1 is living. Died of Consumption. Aged 60 yrs.

The Salem church record shows the baptism of Emanuel Beck on May 25, 1788. The same church record shows the marriage of John Philip Beck, widower, to Barbara Böshar on the 8th of August, 1802, and the record of Christ (Tulpehocken) Lutheran Church shows the marriage, May 12, 1766, of Philip Beck from Lebanon, to Anna Mary Laucks, daughter of Abraham Laucks.

I do not have all the tax records of Lancaster County, but they show that John Beck, a gunsmith, was assessed in Lebanon Township in 1780 and thereafter until 1783, inclusive. In the list of taxables for Lebanon Township, when it was part of Dauphin County, is found the name John Beck, gunsmith, in 1785 and 1786. In 1787 and thereafter it appears as John Philip Beck. It is followed by the word gunsmith in 1799 and in 1808, and by gun-





maker in 1811, and Emanuel Beck was taxed as a single man with John Philip Beck in 1809, 1810, and 1811. Christian Beck was also taxed with Philip Beck in 1791 to 1802. Both appear as inmates in the family of John Philip Beck.

In the record's office in Lancaster County it appears that on December 19, 1781, John Philip Beck of Lebanon Town, gunsmith, conveyed to Peter Shitz a lot on Cumberland Street in Lebanon County. (Deed Book T, page 439).

Will Book C, page 231, in Dauphin County, contains the will of John Philip Beck, which reads as follows:

In the name of God Amen. I John Philip Beck of the Borough of Lebanon in the County of Dauphin and in the State of Pennsylvania gunsmith am sick and weak of body but of sound and well disposing mind and memory and understanding, Thanks be unto God for the same, do hereby make and ordain this to be my last will & testament in manner following to wit. First I give and bequeath unto my beloved wife Barbara all the articles of household and kitchen goods ware and furniture and bedding of all kind whatsoever which she had before our marriage and which she brought to me and it is my will that my said wife shall have the yearly interest on all such sums of money or legacy which I have received or which shall or may be received in her right or on her account out of her father's estate by virtue of his last will and testament or otherwise which interest she may apply for and towards her own maintenance and use during her life and for the maintenance of my youngest child untill it comes to such an age as it may be able to provide for itself.

And it is my will & I do hereby order and direct that my house and lot with the appurtenances in which I now live situate in the Borough of Lebanon aforesaid shall be sold as soon as conveniently may be after my death for the best price that can be gotten for the same and for such payment as my Executors shall deem most expedient & so much of the money arising from such sale and from the sale of my other property as may be necessary shall be applied for the payment of my just debts and funeral expenses and in case so much of the purchase or consideration money shall remain after my debts and funeral expences are paid as will enable my Executors to purchase a small house and lot for my said wife





to live in during her life. I order that such purchase shall be made but if not a sufficient sum for that purpose shall remain then such overplus (if any) shall likewise be put out at interest & my wife shall have and receive the interest as aforesaid during her life and if more than is sufficient to purchase such a small house and lot shall remain of the sale of my property then and in such case such overplusage money (after my debts are paid and small house and lot for the use of my said wife is purchased aforesaid) shall be equally divided between my children except my youngest child shall have two shares. And I do hereby authorize and empower my Executors or the survivor of them to make and execute a good and sufficient deed or deeds for my said house and lot with the appurtenances to the purchaser or purchasers thereof in fee simple and also to sell the said small house and lot after the death of my wife in case such house and lot shall be purchased and to make and execute a good & sufficient deed or deeds for the same to the purchaser or purchasers thereof in fee simple. And it is my will and I do hereby order and direct that after the death of my said wife all my money and effects and estate whatsoever the same may be not herein before otherwise disposed of shall be equally divided between all my children but my youngest child Susanna shall have two shares. And lastly I do hereby nominate and appoint my friends Leonard Greenawalt and Henry Kelker Executors of this my last will & testament and do hereby revoke and annul all former and other wills and testaments heretofore made and ratify and confirm this and no other to be my last will and testament. In witness whereof I have hereunto set my hand and seal the twentieth day of September in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and eleven.

his  
John Philip / Beck  
mark

Signed sealed published  
pronounced & declared by  
the above testator as and  
for his last will and testament  
in the presence of us  
Adam Ritscher  
Jno Gloninger

Proven according to law 25 November 1811 and  
6 Jany 1812.

Henry Beader Regr.





The testator must have been very sick when he made his will, because other records show his ability to sign papers in a very clear hand and to write his name in English. He held such important offices as executor of estates and the like. In 1806 he was appointed administrator of the estate of Christian Beck.

And he was appointed guardian of his child, Susanna, in 1809, because she was entitled to a share in the estate of her grandfather, Matthias Bashore, under whose will, dated in 1802, the children of his daughter, Barbara, intermarried with John Beck, "if she gets any," were to receive a certain sum of money. The record of Zion Lutheran Church Cemetery at Jonestown shows the burial there of Matthias Bashore, born December 8, 1720, died May 30, 1807, and of his wife, Appolonia, born May 1, 1734, and died March 8, 1804.

In the register's office in the county of Dauphin can be found the will of John Christian Beck, Sr., Lebanon, probated 20 November, 1792. It reads as follows:

In the name of God Amen. I John Christian Beck, Senior, of Lebanon township in the County of Dauphin and Commonwealth of Pennsylvania yeoman being sick and weak of body but of sound and well disposing mind memory and understanding, Thanks be unto God for the same, do hereby make and declare this to be my last will and testament in manner and form following to wit. Imprimis. I give devise and bequeath unto my beloved wife Anna Maria all my whole real and personal estate for the purposes and intention hereinafter mentioned. That is to say she and my other Executor hereinafter named shall as soon as conveniently may be after my decease sell and dispose of my real estate and also to sell and dispose of so much of my personal estate as my said wife may not have occasion for her necessary accommodation, and I do hereby impower and authorize my said wife as Executrix and the Executor hereinafter named or the survivor of them to sign and seal execute and perfect a good deed or deeds to the purchaser or purchasers of my real estate. Item it is further my will that the monies arising from such sale shall be applied to the payment of my just debts and the remainder and residue of the monies therefrom arising shall be retained and kept in the care and custody of my said





Executor to wit John Fireabend who shall from time to time as occasion may require pay unto my said wife Anna Maria such part thereof as she may reasonably ask and demand sufficient for her own support and maintenance. And after her decease all the residue of my estate (if any there be) shall be divided amongst all my children that is to say that after my two sons Christian and John Philip have each of them received the sum of five pounds all the remainder and residue thereof shall be equally divided amongst them my said two sons and my three daughters. And I do hereby nominate constitute and appoint my said Anna Maria Executrix and my trusty friend John Fireabend of Lebanon township Executor of this my last will and testament. And I do hereby publish and declare the foregoing will of mine to be and contain the last will and testament and I do hereby revoke all former wills by me heretofore made and declare and ratifying this and no other to be my last will and testament. In witness whereof I have hereunto set my hand and seal the third day of May in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and ninety two.

John Christian Beck

Signed sealed published pronounced  
and declared by the above named John  
Christian Beck Senr the testator as and  
for his last will and testament in the  
presence of us

Johannes Weirich (German)

Jno Gloninger

John Fireabend renounced his right to executorship,  
"being unable to bear the burthen thereof."

The foregoing record data confirm grandfather Beck's statement in so many respects that I feel warranted in accepting as entirely true the statement that his grandfather came from Germany. I will therefore now proceed to show when the immigrant came to this country.

As the immigrant's son, John Philip Beck, was born in Philadelphia County in 1751, the father must have arrived in America some time before that boy was born. We are sure that the name of the immigrant, or at least part of the name, was John Christian Beck. Only one John Christian Beck arrived prior to 1751, and that was





on the ship *Dragon* on September 26, 1749, but when taking the oath of abjuration he personally signed what was apparently his entire name—Johan Christian Heinrich Beck. Later he evidently dropped Heinrich out of his name. The captain's list of passengers and the list of those who took the oath of allegiance have apparently been lost, otherwise they would certainly appear in *Pennsylvania German Pioneers* (see Volume 1, page 413). He was apparently best known by the name of Christian only, as was his son Christian also, for they appear as senior and junior on the tax lists in Lebanon Township every time that they do appear, whether in the county of Lancaster or the county of Dauphin.

Now, having shown to my own satisfaction the name of my pioneer ancestor in the Beck line and the date of his arrival in America, I will pay some attention to his descendants, although I will not attempt to learn the names of all those who were or are collateral to my line of descent. I will give the names of those I have learned incidentally and those of whom I have personal knowledge.

In 1750 Sir William Blackstone published an *Essay on Collateral Consanguinity*, in which he undertook to prove that long periods of time extinguish relationship. In practical life that seems to be the case outside of the Royal Family and perhaps a few others of great wealth. So little is thought of consanguinity in this State that second cousins are allowed to marry and very few persons ever think of each other as being related, if one of their great-great-grandparents, or one more remote, was the same person. As an illustration, the lawyer for the defense, in a case heard before me about twenty years ago, suspected prejudice and interest in a clear witness because of his supposed relationship to the plaintiff. The witness was a so-called Pennsylvania Dutchman from West Penn Township. When plaintiff's counsel had fin-





ished and said "Cross examine," the defendant's lawyer began:

"Aren't you related to the plaintiff?" "Oh, yes; about like one hair in seventy cow-tails," came the quick reply of the witness, and the laugh that ensued caused the defendant's lawyer to drop that line of cross examination. He saw that such relationship amounted to nothing, at least, in the opinion of the witness.

According to his will, John Christian Beck, the pioneer, had two sons, Christian and Philip. I assume the former was the older. Emanuel Beck told me in 1874 that his father's brother was a powder maker and was killed when the mill blew up at Myerstown. I think he was a joiner before he became a powder maker, because we find, by reference to Mortgage Book I, page 13, in Dauphin County, that Christian Beck, Jr., of Lebanon Town on the 17th day of January, 1787, sold to Rudolph Kelker of the same place "all the utensils, instruments and tools" that belonged to Beck's trade as a joiner. I have found no reference to the place of his burial. No remains may have been left to be buried. However, not all church records are complete on such matters. Some ministers seemed to keep no such records at all, while other ministers of the same congregation did keep them.

The burial record of the Salem Lutheran Church has this:

1829	Widow Eva Marg. Beck, Born March 31, 1755,
August 12	parents Tobias Ritter and wife Eva. Bapt. & Conf. in the Lutheran Church. Married John Christian Beck. Had ten children, died August 11, 1829. Aged 74 years, 4 months, ten days.

I believe this was the widow of the John Christian Beck who was killed when the powder mill exploded. I know the names of none of their children, but I think the following three, whose births are noted in the Salem Lutheran Church record, were their children:





J. Christian Beck, b. 12 September, 1787, baptized 30 September, 1787; parents Christian Beck and wife.

Tobias Beck, b. 8 October, 1789, baptized 25 October, 1789, parents Christian Beck and wife.

Wilhelm Beck, b. 23 August, 1794, baptized 14 October, 1794, parents Christian Beck and wife, Margareta.

Now, as to the children of John Philip Beck, my great-grandfather. The Salem Lutheran Church record shows the baptism of Elizabeth Beck, August 29, 1784, John Beck being her father; the birth of Samuel Beck, September 20, 1786, and his baptism, October 4, 1786, J. Beck being his father; Emanuel Beck, born May 10, 1788, and his baptism, May 25, 1788, his father being John Beck; Susanna Beck, born March 10, 1806, baptized March, 1806. Parents: John Beck and wife.

I have already stated that John Philip Beck was appointed administrator of Christian Beck in 1806. The letters were issued May 1. The Orphans' Court records in Dauphin County show that Christian Beck of Lebanon Township was survived by his wife and four minor children and that he owned a tract of about five and one-half acres of land in Annville Township, which the administrator desired to sell to pay the debts of the decedent "and to maintain and educate his minor children." The Court made an appropriate order for the purpose. I assume that the decedent was a son of John Philip Beck. I have already given the record of the burial of John Philip Beck in April, 1806. He was born February 1, 1780, and I have no doubt was the son of my great-grandfather, John Philip Beck.

In the list of marriages in the Salem Lutheran Church record is Anna Maria Beck to John George Laudenschlager, January 28, 1806. One of the witnesses was John Philip Beck, Jr. In the list of the burials in the same church record we find:





1824      George Lautenschlager was born August 29, 1782.  
February 4    Bapt. and Conf. and married Anna M. Beck. Had  
four children. Aged 41 years, 5 mo. 4 das.

In the account of the executor of John Philip Beck who died in 1811 appear, among others, the names of George Laudenslecker, Christian Beck, and Emanuel Beck.

With all the foregoing data, the reader may conclude that at least some of the tradition stated earlier in this chapter respecting the children of John Christian Beck and John Philip Beck is well confirmed. But the reader must make due allowances for apparent differences in names when no difference as to the person is intended. In the course of my work on this book I found such differences frequently. For instance, Maria is sometimes called Mary or "Polly." Such is the case here with the name of Anna Maria Beck who became the wife of John George Laudenslager.

A funny instance comes to mind. Immediately after the burial of my grandfather, Henry Koch, in 1867, all his children and their spouses gathered in the house to hear his will read. The name of one was Mary. Both she and her husband were present. She was always known by the name of "Polly," and, after my father, as one of the executors, had finished reading the will, Aunt Mary's husband excitedly said, "Oi, Oi, he forgot 'Polly.'" The will had her as Mary.

I have now said enough about collateral kinsfolk in the Beck line and will turn to the line of my own descent.

Emanuel Beck was not only a millwright; he was also a miller. After his marriage to Barbara Fisher he lived for some time in Bern Township, Berks County. Later he moved to what is now Walker Township, Schuylkill County, where he built and operated a grist-mill immediately below the junction of Beaver Creek and Cold Run. His dwelling stood on the west side of the grist-





mill on the east side of the road leading from Lewistown to New Ringgold. They stood right at the upper end of the gap. The mill later became known as Yost's mill. The mill now standing there is no longer operated, nor is it the original mill that was built there. It was while Emunael Beck lived there that my father and mother became acquainted. He was then living at the mill at what is known as Kunkle's dam. He was then a miller and my mother had learned the millinery trade in Reading, but got married soon afterwards and did not follow the trade. Grandfather Beck finally settled near Pottsgrove in Northumberland County, where he died when he was over eighty-nine years old. My mother died when she was only seventy. She mistook a door in the dark and instead of stepping into her bedroom stepped into eternity by falling down an entire flight of stairs and losing her life. Her death was regretted by all who knew her. She was the best woman I have ever known. She was always just, patient, kind, and charitable. When the county was full of tramps, ensuing the panic of 1873, I recall one month in which she gave a meal or two or shelter or both to ninety-three tramps. In my judgment she was a real Christian in every respect. Tramps became such a nuisance that on the 8th of May, 1876, an Act to define and suppress vagrancy in this State was approved by Governor Hartranft.

My mother had two brothers and six sisters. They will appear together with their descendants as far as I know them in the family tree which follows:

#### THE BECK FAMILY TREE

JOHN CHRISTIAN BECK (1), born in Prussia; arrived at Philadelphia, 26 September 1749. Was a powder maker; finally settled in Lebanon Township, Lancaster County, where he died testate in November 1792, when he was some 80 years old. Was buried in the Salem Lutheran Church Cemetery in Lebanon. Was survived by his wife, Anna Maria; two sons, John Christian, Jr., and John Philip, and three daughters. Lebanon is the county seat of Lebanon County, which was erected in 1813.





JOHN CHRISTIAN BECK, JR., (2), born before 1751. Was first a joiner and later a powder maker. Was killed when the mill exploded at or near Myerstown. Married Eva Margaret Ritter, born 31 March 1755, died 11 August 1929. She is buried in the Salem Lutheran Church Cemetery. They had ten children. Among them were, I think, J. CHRISTIAN BECK (3), TOBIAS BECK (3) and WILHELM BECK (3).

JOHN PHILIP BECK (2), son of JOHN CHRISTIAN BECK (1) and his wife Anna Maria. He was born somewhere in what is now Berks County in 1751. He died testate in Lebanon in October 1811 and was buried in the Salem Lutheran Church Cemetery there. His son, my grandfather, told me on the 3rd of July 1874 that John Philip Beck and his brother had fought the Hessians, and Volume 7, page 154, *Fifth Series, Pennsylvania Archives*, shows that John Philip Beck was in the War of the Revolution in the 6th Class, 4th Company, 2nd Battalion, Lancaster County Militia, under Captain David Krause, and Christian Beck, Jr., 7th Class, served in the same. John Philip Beck lived in Lebanon and was a gunsmith. In May 1776, he married Anna Maria Lauk of Tulpehocken. She was born there 29 September 1756, died in Lebanon, 29 October 1796, and was buried in the Salem Lutheran Church Cemetery. They had nine children. On 8 August 1802, he married Barbara Bashore, and by her had two children. He was survived by his second wife, five children by his first wife and one child by his second wife. From the data in the text I feel that among the eleven children of John Philip Beck were the following:

- (a) JOHN PHILIP BECK (3), b. 1 February 1780, d. 12 April 1806.
- (b) ANNA MARIA BECK (3); m. John George Laudenslager, 28 January 1806. He was born 29 August 1782 and died 2 February 1824, and was buried at the Salem Lutheran Church. They had four children.
- (c) ELIZABETH BECK (3), baptized 29 August 1784, m. Joseph Hiester. One of their children, Elizabeth, married David McKnight, a banker, of Reading, 13 April 1837.
- (d) SAMUEL BECK (3), b. 20 September 1786.
- (e) EMANUEL BECK (3), b. 12 May 1788.
- (f) CATHARINE BECK (3),
- (g) CHRISTIAN BECK (3).
- (h) SUSANNA BECK (3), b. 10 March 1806.

Further search may demonstrate the correctness of the foregoing list, but such work would be beside my main purpose.

(e) EMANUEL BECK (3), son of JOHN PHILIP BECK (2), was born in Lebanon, Pa., 12 May 1788, d. 24 November 1877 and was buried in the Center Church Cemetery near Pottsgrove, Northumberland County, Pa. He was a millwright and miller. m. Barbara Fisher, 11 July 1812. She was born in Spring Township, Berks County, 2 February 1792, d. 3 January 1879. Their children were: (A) Eliza, (B) John, (C) Mary Ann, (D) Lydia, (E) Sarah, (F) Catharine, (G) Samuel, (H) Susanna and (I) Caroline.

(A) ELIZA BECK (4), b. 17 January 1814, d. 1 November 1890; m. Jacob Schock, b. 15 December 1805, d. 5 December 1865. Lived in Walker Township, Schuylkill County, where all their children were born. Their land was just across the road from the Church and Zions Union Cemetery, where they are buried, about a mile from the village of Lewistown.

i. EMANUEL B. SCHOCK (5), b. 12 February 1833, d. 12 September 1907; m. Caroline Stupp, b. ———— d. ————. Lived in Walker Township, Schuylkill County.





(a) Sarah Schock (6), b.———d.———; m. Thomas Hottinger, b.———d.———.

(b) Charles Schock (6), b.———1859, d.———; m. Emma Moyer, b.———1861, d.———1931.

ii. CATHARINE SCHOCK (5), b. 1 October 1834, d. 9 April 1855.

iii. JOHN B. SCHOCK (5), b. 27 September 1836, d. 1 January 1900; m. Esther Merkle, b. 23 September 1838, d. 28 March 1917. Lived in Walker Township, Schuylkill County, Pa.

(a) Benjamin Schock (6).

(b) Levi Schock (6).

(c) Jacob Schock (6).

(d) Benneville Schock (6).

(e) Catherine Schock (6), b.———; m. Washington Lechleitner. Of their children I can recall only Lambert Lechleitner, but I know there was another son and a daughter whose names I have forgotten.

(f) Hannah Schock (6), m. —— Helfrich.

(g) Agnes Schock (6), m. Frank Troxel.

(h) Esther Schock (6), m. Thomas Brobst.

iv. LEVI B. SCHOCK (5), b. 28 March 1839. Soldier in the Civil War on the Union side, killed in the battle of Fredericksburg, 13 December 1862.

v. LEWIS B. SCHOCK (5), b. 26 February 1841, d. 7 May 1917; m. Elizabeth Marsteller, b. 3 December 1848, d. 1 December 1897.

(a) Ida Schock (6), b. 27 March 1869, d. 21 July 1921; m. Albert Eisenhardt, 6 December 1895, b. 1 October 1872, d. 6 July 1906. m. Charles M. Wentz, 1911, b. 18 October 1860, d. 17 November 1934. Lived in Tamaqua, Pa.

1 Emma Eisenhardt (7), 2 Lewis Eisenhardt (7), 3 Stanley Eisenhardt (7); 4 Richard Eisenhardt (7), 5 Robert Eisenhardt (7), twins; 6 Kate Eisenhardt (7), 7 John Eisenhardt (7); 8 Dorothy Wentz (7), b. 14 March 1912.

(b) Arenius Schock (6), b. 3 May 1872; m. Jennie Caton, b.———d.———. m. May Hess. Children by his first wife:

1 Lewis Schock (7) and Elizabeth Schock (7).

(c) Edward L. Schock (6), b. 11 November 1873; m. Anna Barbara Stauffenberg, 21 January 1909, b. 25 February 1871.

(d) Mattie Schock (6), b. 20 March 1875; m. Howard Auch, 14 March 1932.

(e) Barbara Schock (6), b. 10 April 1876; m. Edward Endy, 29 April 1899.

1. Robert Harris Endy (7), b. 28 January 1900.

2. Irene Elizabeth Endy (7), b. 1 November 1902.

3. Charles Edward Endy (7), b. 13 December 1906.

4. Marion Amelia Endy (7), b. 18 June 1909.





(f) Emma Schock (6), b. 10 October 1877; m. Frederick Carl Speidel, 3 July 1919, b. 25 October 1871. Live in Tamaqua, Pa.

(g) Clayton Schock (6), b. 5 October 1878, d. 26 May 1926.

(h) Ambrose Schock (6), died in infancy. No other information.

(i) Theodore Schock (6), died in infancy. No other information.

(j) Sadie May Schock (6), died in infancy. No other information.

vi. JACOB B. SCHOCK (5), b. 1 January 1843, d. 7 August 1906; m. Mary Reichert, 22 March 1867, b. 3 August 1842, d. 22 November 1925. Lived in Walker Township, Schuylkill County, Pa. Buried in Zions Union Cemetery.

a. Reuben Albert Schock (6), b. 26 January 1868; m. Amelia Endy, 20 May 1895, b. 23 May 1871.

1. Raymond Lamont Schock (7), b. 29 September 1896; m. Nellie May Dreisboch, 11 June 1919, b. 8 June 1896.

2. Edgar Albert Schock (7), b. 4 August 1900; m. Carrie Irene De Pui, 5 September 1923, b. 2 October 1898.

(a) Francis Albert Schock (8), b. 20 November 1926.

(b) Jane Carolyn Schock (8), b. 23 April 1929.

b. Edward Franklin Schock (6), b. 27 June 1872, d. 22 October 1897; m. Alice Rebecca Whetstone, 5 March 1895, b. 19 February 1868, d. 10 April 1932.

1. Russell Penn Edward Schock (7), b. 3 February 1895.

2. Robert Wesley Schock (7), b. 10 November 1896.

3. Clarence Stanley Schock (7), b. 18 April 1898.

c. Rebecca Matilda Schock (6), b. 7 January 1873, d. 19 June 1919; m. Henry Bartlett, 20 June 1894, b. 16 March 1871.

1. Mary Ellen Bartlett (7), b. 17 April 1895; m. Edward Orlando Kunkle, 9 April 1915, b. 15 October 1893.

(a) John Edward Kunkle (8), b. 24 June 1916.

(b) Dorothy Frances Kunkle (8), b. 21 October 1917.

(c) Virginia Helen Kunkle (8), b. 15 December 1918.

(d) Jean Elizabeth Kunkle (8), b. 16 August 1921.

2. Edna Mae Bartlett (7), b. 3 May 1896; m. Samuel Ellsworth Thorne, 19 June 1919, b. 27 June 1896.

(a) Evelyn Arlene Thorne (8), b. 31 October 1931.

3. Margaret Catherine Bartlett (7), b. 12 June 1905; m. Paul Yost, 11 June 1930, b. 14 May 1906.

d. Irvin Henry Schock (6), b. 20 May 1875; m. Susan Schoder, 22 February 1902, b. ————1883.

1. Myrtle Naomi Schock (7), b. 20 December 1902; m. John Robert Kay, 3 October 1925, b. 8 August 1891.

(a) Ellen Rose Marie Kay (8), b. 7 July 1926.

2. Jacob Monroe Schock (7), b. 19 March 1908; m. Dorothy Mae Kramer, 1 January 1934.





- e. David Oscar Schock (6), b. 4 August 1877, d. 28 September 1879.
- f. Calvin Daniel Schock (6), b. 20 August 1880; m. 14 April 1909, Tillie Gertrude Bridygham, b. 13 September 1880.
  - 1. Elmer Henry Schock (7), b. 23 March 1910.
  - 2. Evelyn Marion Schock (7), b. 17 March 1918.
  - 3. Edna May Schock (7), b. 9 October 1919.
- g. Jacob Monroe Schock (6), b. 28 March 1882; m. 20 June 1908, Sadie Ellen Thamarus, b. 13 June 1884.
  - 1. Morris Irvin Schock (7), b. 17 April 1910; m. Verna Billman, 27 June 1934, b. 16 March 1915.
- h. William Benjamin Schock (6), b. 3 September 1884, d. 1 November 1905.
- vii. GEORGE B. SCHOCK (5), b. 7 December 1844, d. 7 March 1845.
- viii. SAMUEL B. SCHOCK (5), b. 1 February 1846, d. 13 February 1846.
- ix. DANIEL B. SCHOCK (5), b. 21 March 1847, d. 10 January 1924; m. Malindo Scheip, b. 10 October 1846, d. 22 October 1922. Lived in Ryan Township, Schuylkill County, Pa.
  - a. Albert Schock (6); b. Anna Schock (6), m. Otis Blew; c. Charles Schock (6); d. Gertrude Schock (6), m. Harry Blew; (e) Oliver Schock (6), f. Robert Schock (6), g. James Schock (6).
- x. DAVID SCHOCK (5), b. 6 June 1849; m. Mary Hartung, 3 April 1870, b. 10 September 1854, d. 12 April 1904. Lived in Walker Township, Schuylkill County, Pa. d. 6 February 1937.
  - a. Female born dead 29 September 1871.
  - b. Harriet Schock (6), b. 25 January 1875, m. John Shoener.
    - 1. Guy Shoener (7), m. Bertha Koch.
      - (A) Arline Shoener (8), (B) Betty Shoener (8), (C) May Shoener (8), (D) Dwight Shoener (8), (E) George Shoener (8), (F) Grace Shoener (8).
  - c. Son born 7 October 1876, died.
  - d. Matilda Schock (6), b. 29 March 1878, d. 21 March 1881.
  - e. Pharus Schock (6), b. 7 November 1882; m. Emma Bensinger, 6 June 1908, b. 30 April 1882.
    - 1. Mabel Schock (7), b. 16 December 1908, m. Charles Gerber.
      - (A) Charles Gerber (8) and (B) Irvin Gerber (8).
    - 2. Gussie Schock (7), b. 10 August 1910.
    - 3. Mary Schock (7), b. 29 March 1912.
    - 4. Olive Schock (7), b. 29 July 1914.
    - 5. Roy Schock (7), b. 7 October 1916.
  - f. Thomas Schock (6), b. 31 October 1884; m. Stella Miller, 24 January 1914, b. 11 April 1889, d. 19 December 1926.
    - 1. Son, b. 10 June 1916, d. 25 June 1916.
- xi. SAMUEL SCHOCK (5), b. 3 June 1851, d. August 1851. Twin
- xii. GEORGE SCHOCK (5), b. 3 June 1851, d. August 1851. Twin.





xiii. JOSEPH B. SCHOCK (5), b. 1 September 1853, d. ————1931; m. Elizabeth Kistler, b. ————d. 13 July 1925. Lived in Allentown, Pa.

xiv. BARBARA SCHOCK (5), b. 1 November 1858; m. Charles Heisler, 19 July 1883, b. 2 October 1859. Live at Orwigsburg, Pa.

a. Theodore Wm. Heisler (6), b. 19 December 1885, m. Fietta Reigel.

1. Claude Heisler, m. Ellen Pfeisley.

(A) Claude Heisler. No further information.

b. Emmet Franklin Heisler (6), b. 20 August 1889. Married. Live at Schuylkill Haven, Pa.

1. Alphonson Heisler (7), b. ———, m. ———; 2. Charles Heisler (7), 3. Mabel Heisler (7), 4. Lee Heisler (7), 5. Dewey Heisler (7), 6. Helen Heisler (7), 7. Christina Heisler (7), 8. Warren Heisler (7), 9. Paul Heisler (7), 10. Wayne Heisler (7).

c. Della Florence Heisler (6), b. 28 February 1892; m. John Reichert, 12 February 1913, b. 19 February 1889.

1. Barbara Louise Reichert (7), b. 9 August 1914.

2. Alma Ethel Reichert (7), b. 10 October 1929.

(B) JOHN BECK (4), b. 22 March 1816, d. 15 June 1895; m. Leah Sypher, b. ————d. ————. Lived in White Deer Township, Union County. No children.

(C) MARY ANN BECK (4), b. 28 January 1818, d. 26 August 1888; m. Daniel Koch, 24 October 1839, b. 25 December 1816, d. 7 January 1903. Lived and are buried at Fleetwood, Pa. For the descendants of this union see Daniel Koch (5) in Chapter III. But I will say here that I am of the fifth generation in the Beck line.

(D) LYDIA BECK (4), b. 11 November 1819, d. 3 April 1903; m. William Reed, August 1842, b. ————d. 3 September 1896. Lived at Pottsgrove, Northumberland County. Buried in the old cemetery at the Chillisquaque Lutheran Church.

i. EMANUEL BECK REED (5), b. 26 April 1843, d. 15 July 1915.

ii. SARAH CATHARINE REED (5), b. 10 July 1849; m. James R. Smith, 23 December 1868, b. 17 October 1838, d. 12 August 1921, at Milton, Pa.

a. William R. Smith (6), b. 26 August 1869; m. 1898, Elizabeth Kennan.

1. Kathryn Smith (7), b. 11 June 1900, m. Henry Heyn. Live at Dallas, Texas.

(A) Henry Daniel Heyn (8), b. 2 July 1924.

(B) David Reed Heyn (8), b. ————1931.

b. John R. Smith (6), b. 4 December 1871, d. 26 October 1917

(E) SARAH BECK (4), b. 22 September 1821, d. 24 March 1864; m. William Fegley, 17 August 1844, b. 29 July 1818, d. 3 May 1903. Lived at Lewisburg, Pa., buried there.

i. CLARINDA FEGLEY (5), b. 10 November 1847, d. 21 September 1926; m. John C. McGinnis, 10 January 1867, b. 18 January 1842, d. 30 May 1890. Lived and are buried at Parsons, Kansas.





## THE BECK FAMILY

- a. Sarah Ann McGinnis (6), b. 18 June 1868; m. Orason S. Keyser, 30 August 1900, b. 31 July 1855, d. 8 March 1928. Lives in Parsons, Kansas.
- b. Minnie Jane McGinnes (6), b. 13 April 1870, d. 2 April 1876.
- c. Phoebe Adella McGinnes (6), b. 5 July 1872, d. 23 March 1906.
- d. Charles Harrison McGinnes (6), b. 21 August 1874, d. 19 June 1876.
- e. James Allen McGinnes (6), b. 23 November 1877; m. Pearl Sanford, 20 June 1900, b. March 1881.
- f. John Bond McGinnes (6), b. 12 December 1879; m. Blanche Corey, b. 6 August 1885.
- g. Elmer Guy McGinnes (6), b. 17 December 1881; m. Blanche May Ward, 22 December 1906, b. 1 May 1889.
- h. A daughter (6) b. 21 August 1884, d. 25 August 1884.
- i. Clarence Myron McGinnes (6), b. 3 July 1886; m. Mabel Naomi McLean, b. 17 November 1885. Live in Trinidad, Texas.
- (A) Maurice Myron McGinnes (7), b. 30 March 1906, d. 15 June 1923.
- (B) Merle Harrison McGinnes (7), b. 5 September 1909.
- ii. EMANUEL FISHER FEGLEY (5), b. 20 October 1852, d. 13 February 1913; m. Annette Robinson, b. 14 March 1865.
  - a. William Fegley (6), b. 27 January 1887.
  - b. Harry Fegley (6), b. 13 May 1893.
  - c. Laura N. Fegley (6), b. 3 January 1895.
  - d. Hannah Wilmina Fegley (6), b. 27 December 1882, d. 14 September 1889.
- iii. GEORGE ALEXANDER FEGLEY (5), b. 24 March 1854.
- iv. JOHN ALLEN FEGLEY (5), b. 24 February 1858; m. Hannah Moyer, 23 July 1885, b. 23 October 1863.
  - a. Florence Clarinda Fegley (6), b. 2 March 1888, d. 14 July 1912; m. Lewis Goldsmith Hopp, b. \_\_\_\_\_ d. \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 1. Lewis Fegley Hopp (7), b. 27 July 1905.
  - b. Marian Paulin Fegley (6), b. 24 November 1900.
- (F) CATHERINE BECK (4) b. 26 June 1823, d. 27 August 1911. m. John Simpson Maus. Buried Center Church, Montour County, Pa.
- (G) SAMUEL BECK (4), b. 4 February 1825, d. 11 March 1903; m. Mary Ann Moll, 21 September 1861. Buried White Deer Church Cemetery, Union County, Pa.
- i. MARY CATHERINE BECK (5), b. 22 August 1863, m. Frank Paul.
  - a. Rosey Paul (6), b. 4 March 1888; m. William A. Earnst, 12 September 1913.
    - 1. Everet E. Earnst (7), b. 23 December 1914; 2. Paul Earnst (7), b. 15 December 1917; 3. William Earnst (7), b. 22 February 1926.
  - b. Leroy Paul (6), b. 4 December 1906; m. Catherine Miller, b. June 1912.





1. Boyd Paul (7), b. 19 August 1927; 2. Helen Paul (7), b. 26 February 1929; 3. Dale Paul (7), b. July 1, 1930; 4. Donald Paul (7), b. 22 September 1931; 5. Irvin Paul (7), b. 13 November 1934.

ii. JOHN ALLEN BECK (5), b. 1 March 1866; m. 15 October 1888, Annie A. Ranck, b. 3 August 1865.

a. Mary Catherine Beck (6), b. 30 January 1890; m. John Platt, 19 March 1915.

1. Carroll Allen Platt (7), b. 29 March 1916; 2. Leroy Russel Platt (7), b. 6 July 1918; 3. Pearl Anna Platt (7), b. 12 March 1920; 4. Blaine Edward Platt (7), b. 29 January 1923; 5. Paul Emanuel Platt (7), b. 29 January 1923.

b. Emanuel Ranck Beck (6), b. 30 January 1890; m. Lila M. Stahl, 30 September 1912.

1. Ethel Irene Beck (7), b. 15 January 1913, m. Norman Eddinger.

(A) Emma L. Eddinger (8), b. 23 February 1930.

(B) Norman S. Eddinger (8), b. 10 July 1932.

2. Inez Amelia Beck (7), b. 23 March 1915.

3. Dale Allen Beck (7), b. 10 June 1917.

4. Jacob Stahl Beck (7), b. 17 June 1921.

5. Mary Catherine Beck (7), b. 17 October 1927.

(H) SUSANNA BECK (4), b. 5 October 1826, d. 12 January 1897; m. Daniel Messersmith, b. 10 December 1838, d. 22 September 1909. Buried at Center Church, Liberty Township, Montour County, Pa.

i. JOHN MESSERSMITH (5), b. ———; m. Belle Irwin, b. ———  
d. ———.

ii. CHARLES MESSERSMITH (5), b. ———; died in boyhood.

(I) CAROLINE BECK (4), b. 25 November 1832, d. 6 November 1901; m. John Geist, b. ———d. ———. Buried Mount Vernon Cemetery, South Danville, Pa.

i. MARTHA JANE GEIST (5), b. 10 November 1859, d. 13 September 1934; m. Thomas Webster Bush, 7 February 1891, b. 1 January 1855, d. 14 February 1925. Lived and are buried at Elmira, N. Y.

a. John Edward Bush (6), b. 3 February 1896; m. Emma Agnes Lindsay, 24 October 1923, b. 2 November 1898. Live at Elmira, N. Y.

1. Emma Irene Bush (7), b. 8 October 1924; 2. Theodore Robert Bush (7), b. 4 September 1925; 3. Donald Lindsay Bush (7), b. 1 October 1926; 4. Shirley Jane Bush (7), b. 19 November 1927; 5. Edward John Bush (7), b. 19 March 1929; 6. Bernice Mae Bush (7), 9 May 1930; 7. Helen Marie Bush (7), b. 5 September 1932; 8. Thomas George Bush (7), b. 6 January 1934; 9. James Stanley Bush (7), b. 12 June 1935.

ii. SARAH C. GEIST (5), b. 25 February 1865; m. John Franklin Eckert, 3 January 1889, b. 2 April 1863. Live in Philadelphia.

a. Paul W. Eckert (6), b. 2 June 1891.

b. Caroline E. Eckert (6), b. 14 January 1898.

iii. DANIEL WESLEY GEIST (5), b. 1869, d. 1935, m. Catherine Gulick. Lived at Sunbury, Pa.

a. Preston Geist (6), b. ———d. ———.





## CHAPTER VIII

### THE LAUK FAMILY

In Chapter VII, on The Beck Family, the reader will find that my great-grandfather, John Philip Beck, was married to Anna Maria Lauk, a daughter of Abraham Lauk. I must, therefore, trace that family, and this chapter will be devoted to the purpose.

In tracing this family, I will have occasion to refer to *The Book of Names* by Lou D. MacWethy, published in 1933, and to *Early Eighteenth Century Palatine Emigration* by Prof. Walter Allen Knittle, of the College of the City of New York, published in 1937. In making such references, I shall simply call them MacWethy and Dr. Knittle.

The name of Abraham Lauk's father was also Abraham Lauk. The latter was one of those who had left the Palatinate and found refuge in Holland in the days of Queen Anne.

The proprietors of Pennsylvania and Carolina had, for some years prior to 1709, and, then, also by circulars scattered in the countries along the Rhine and some of its tributaries, sought immigrants to settle in those colonies, and in 1709 many Palatines went down the Rhine to Rotterdam in Holland with a view of later going to America. Almost all of them were poor, and upon landing in Holland they at once became refugees. Taxation, wars, persecution, and oppression in the land of their nativity, coupled with the invitations to come to Pennsylvania and Carolina, had induced them to leave the Palatinate. There were many thousands of them in Holland in 1709. At that time the Crown of Sweden had practically a monopoly on tar and pitch, and the cost





thereof became almost prohibitive to Great Britain, which, by its defeat of the Spanish Armada in 1688 and by winning the war for the Spanish Succession in 1703, had become mistress of the sea and wanted to hold that position. Tar, pitch, rosin, hemp, timber, and masts were necessary to build ships, and the desire for naval stores actuated Great Britain to seek a cheaper source for them in America. She, therefore, looked to some of her colonies in America for such possible sources. But the distance of the haul of such stores and especially the scarcity of labor in the colonies rendered the American sources almost futile. The presence of the poor Palatine refugees in Holland appeared to Queen Anne to offer a fine opportunity to get plenty of cheap labor to produce naval stores in America, and at the same time to form a frontier between the Indians and the French on one side and the English and the Dutch settlers on the other side in the Province of New York. The Queen's idea soon took practical form, and transportation of Palatines from Rotterdam to London began late in April, 1709. By the 18th of October in that year, thirteen thousand, one hundred and forty-six Palatines had arrived in London (Dr. Knittle, 65). The Queen had sent the Rev. Joshua Kocherthal, a Lutheran minister, to New York in 1708. In his party were fifty-five persons (Dr. Knittle, 123). Most of them settled at what is now known as Newburg, on the Hudson River. The said minister went back to England the next year and returned to New York in 1710 with many other Palatines. He ministered to those Palatines until he died in 1719.

The many Palatines in London in 1709 presented a serious problem for solution, and late in December of that year, or early in January, 1710, twenty-eight hundred and fourteen of them embarked for New York, but they did not leave the shores of England until April, 1710. The first shipload landed in New York harbor in June,





1710. At sea four hundred and forty-six died; however, thirty babies were born on the way (Dr. Knittle, 147-148). The people in New York City would not allow the newcomers to land on their island because they had "Palatine" (Typhus) fever. So the Palatines disembarked on Governor's Island, where about two hundred and fifty more died.

On the 27th of September, 1710, Abraham Louck of the Commune of Epstein, Darmstadt, and Anna Catharina Becker, daughter of Johann Henrich Becker of Weerheim, Commune of Dillenberg, Germany, were married by the Rev. Joshua Kocherthal (MacWethy, 42). That was the elder Lauk already referred to. When referring to a record I shall always spell the name exactly as it is found in that particular record. The spelling of the same name varies very much. The next year, when performing another marriage ceremony, the same minister (Mr. Kocherthal) spelled the same family name — Lauck (MacWethy, 43).

The Palatines were taken up the Hudson River about ninety-two miles and put in two camps on opposite sides of the river (Dr. Knittle, 155-158). The camp on the east side of the Hudson was on land that had been purchased from Robert Livingston and consisted of four locations or villages. Abraham Lauck, wife, and child were at the one called Heessberg, since identified as Haysburg (Dr. Knittle, pp. 291, 292, and 296). The name of the child was Maria Catharina Lauck, born September 7, 1711, and baptized by Reverend Kocherthal, September 8, 1711 (MacWethy, 20).

Owing to several causes, among them the lack of proper management, production of tar, pitch, and hemp by the Palatines was far from successful, although pitch pine was plentiful enough. Subsistence had been provided for the Palatines until September 6, 1712, when Governor Hunter ordered that the Palatines be notified





“that they would have to subsist themselves until further orders, his credit being exhausted” (Dr. Knittle, 188). For want of proper subsistence and clothing the Palatines had suffered untold hardships, but when subsistence ceased they became pitiful objects. Reverend Haeger, working under the auspices of the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel and who ministered to many of the Palatines along the Hudson, wrote to said society on the 6th of July, 1713, that “they boil grass and the children eat leaves of the trees. I have seen old men and women cry that it should almost have moved a stone” (Dr. Knittle, 189).

After the Palatines received notice that they must subsist themselves some of them left the Hudson. Between September 12 and October 31, 1712, some forty or fifty families, without permission, left camp on the Hudson and went to the storied Schoharie valley (Dr. Knittle, 191), and, by 1718, one hundred and seventy families of five hundred and eighty persons had moved to the Schoharie (Dr. Knittle, 195). There they acquired from the Indians an apparent title to the land upon which they settled, but that was the third time that the Indians had sold the same land, and the Palatines, in due course, learned that their titles were no good. Abraham Lauk and his family were among the Palatines in the Schoharie valley. He took the oath of allegiance at a mayor's court held at Albany, January 31, 1716 (MacWethy, 4).

Having no title to the lands in the Schoharie valley, a number of families cut their way through the woods to the Susquehanna River some time in the third decade of the eighteenth century. There they built rafts or canoes and, with their household goods, floated hundreds of miles down the Susquehanna River until they came to the mouth of Swatara Creek. They then went up the Swatara possibly as far as the site of Jonestown and thence across the divide into the Tulpehocken basin, where they





settled. One of them was Abraham Lauk (Dr. Knittle, 300). But on a connected draft of the lands upon which those Palatines settled in the Tulpehocken basin, made by C. I. Lindenmuth (*Berks County, Pennsylvania*, Volume I, page 306, by Morton L. Montgomery, 1909), the name appears as Abraham Laucks. Doctor Knittle has it Abraham Lauks (page 301).

The first Palatines to leave the Schoharie valley and move to the Tulpehocken did so some time in the spring of 1723. In the *Life of Conrad Weiser*, by Rev. C. Z. Weiser, published in 1876 and re-published in 1899, appears an autobiography of Conrad Weiser who left Schoharie in 1729 and moved to Tulpehocken. Conrad Weiser says that the first migration to Tulpehocken occurred in 1723. Doctor Knittle (page 300) says fifteen families arrived at Tulpehocken prior to May 13, 1723, and then mentions others who arrived there some time later, but he does not state the year of their arrival. He got the names of the fifteen from that many signatures on a petition to which I shall make reference. I think there were thirty-three families instead of fifteen, and I will try to show it to be the fact.

After William Penn became the proprietor of all the land in Pennsylvania, so far as the King of England could invest him with a title thereto, he ordered that none of the land should be settled by Europeans until after releases for such particular land had been obtained from the Indian tribes who were in occupancy of it. Such releases were gradually obtained, but the Tulpehocken section had not been released by the Indians in 1723; in fact, it was not released by them until September 7, 1732.

On the 5th of June, 1728, a council was held at Philadelphia in the Great Meeting House (*Colonial Records*, iii, p. 318), "Present: The Honorable Patrick Gordon, Esqr. Lieut. Governor with the members of Council . . . and Andrew Hamilton Esquire, & a vast audience that





filled the House & all its galleries. Also Sassoonan or Allumnapees, with the Indians." Sassoonan was chief of the Delaware Indians, and, upon expressing a desire to speak "in the name of all the Indians present," was given the floor. "He said he was grown old & was troubled to see the Christians settle on lands that the Indians had never been paid for, they had settled on his lands, for which he had never received anything . . . That this may occasion a difference between their children & us hereafter & he would willingly prevent any misunderstanding that may happen."

Secretary Logan answered Sassoonan and produced the release which the Indians had executed September 17, 1718, for all the lands between the Delaware River and the Susquehanna River and "from Duck Creek to the mountains on this side Lechay." But Sassoonan said those lands "reached no further than a few miles beyond Oley, but that their Lands in Tulpyhocken were seated by the Christians . . . and he could not himself believe the Christians had settled on them till he came and with his own eyes saw the Houses and Fields they had made there." Logan then said he was sensible that the Palatines had settled there, but it was without the knowledge or consent of the commissioner. Then, apparently to justify himself, Logan produced the aforesaid petition with its fifteen signatures in German and said it was written in the hand of Patrick Baird, who was Secretary to the then Governor and Clerk of the Council, "and who it was that drew it up would appear by its stile."

The petition was then read. I will quote it in full, putting in italics, however, some words to which I want to call special attention.

The petition reads as follows:





To his Excellency William Keith, Baronet Governor of Pennsylvania, &c., & the Honorable Council. *The Petition of us the Subscribers, being thirty three Families in Number, at present inhabiting Tulpahoca Creek.* Humbly Sheweth:

That your Petitioners being natives of Germany, *about fifteen years agoe*, were by the Great Goodness and Royal Bounty of her late Majesty Queen Anne, relieved from hardships which they then suffered in Europe & were transported into the *Colony of New York, where they settled.* But their Families increasing, & being in that Government confined to the scanty allowance of ten Acres of Land to each family, whereon they could not well subsist, Your Petitioners being informed of the kind of reception which their Countrymen usually mett within the Province of Pennsylvania, & hoping they might with what substance they had acquire larger Settlements in that Province, *did last year leave their Settlements in New York Government & came with their families into this Province*, where upon their arrival they applied themselves to His Excellency the Governor, who of his Great Goodness permitted them to inhabit upon Tulpahoca Creek, (being the farthest inhabited part of the Province north west from Philadelphia) on Condition that they should make full satisfaction to the Proprietor or his Agents for such Lands as they should be allotted them, when they were ready to receive the same.

And now your Petitioners understanding that some Gentlemen, Agents of the Proprietor, have ample powers to dispose of Lands in this Province, And we, your Petitioners being willing and ready to purchase, do humbly beseech your Excellency & Council to recommend us to the favourable usage of the Proprietors agent that upon paying the usual Prices for Lands at such distance from Philadelphia, we may have sufficient Rights and titles made to us for such lands as we shall have occasion to buy, that our Children may have some settlement to depend on hereafter, and that by your authority we may be freed from the demands of the Indians of that part of the Country who pretend a Right hereto. And we humbly beg Leave to inform your Excellency and Council that *there are fifty Families more* who if they may be admitted upon the same conditions are desirous to come and settle with us. We hope for your favourable answer to this our humble Request, and as a duty bound shall ever pray &c.





N. B. The names being mostly in a deep German hand could not be read, but by one skilled in their writing, they are given as here subjoined.

Johannas Yans,  
Peter Ritt,  
Conrad Schitz,  
Paltus Unsf,  
Toritine Serbo,  
Joseph Sab,  
Jorge Ritt,  
Godfreyt Filler

Johannes Claos Shaver,  
Jo Hamoler Ritt,  
Antonis Shart,  
Johan Peter Pacht,  
Sebastian Pisas,  
Jocham Michael Cricht,  
Andrew Falborn

First, let me say that the Palatines had heard of the Swatara and Tulpehocken through Sr. William Keith, who was then Territorial Governor of New York, as well as Lieutenant Governor of the Province of Pennsylvania. But he had no right to induce any Palatines in the Schoharie valley to migrate to any territory in Pennsylvania that had not yet been released by the Indians.

Now as to the petition above set forth.

The petitioners were natives of Germany "about fifteen years" before they signed that petition. As they left Germany in 1709, the petition was signed about 1724; and as they left their settlement in New York "last year," they left New York in 1723. And there were "thirty-three families in number . . . inhabiting Tulpehocken Creek" when the fifteen men signed the petition. But the "subscribers" represented the thirty-three families and said "there are fifty families more . . . desirous to come and settle with us." There is nothing in the petition to warrant the inference that only fifteen families were the first settlers on Tulpehocken Creek and that eighteen other families followed them in 1723 or 1724. So I infer that thirty-three families left the Schoharie valley at the same time, came into Pennsylvania and settled on Tulpehocken Creek some time in 1723.

But my inference does not correspond with that of Doctor Knittle (300). He indicates by a star back of





each name the heads of the said fifteen Palatine families, because only the heads of those fifteen families signed the said petition. Then Doctor Knittle names twenty-six more Germans. He picked those twenty-six names from a petition that was signed by thirty-six men asking the Court of Quarter Sessions in Philadelphia in September, 1727, for a road from Tulpehocken to Oley—a distance, I should say, of from sixteen to twenty miles. Doctor Knittle omitted two of those thirty-six names apparently because the same two names appear also on the petition above set forth. Then he omitted eight more, who had signed the petition, because they had signed in English and were evidently not Germans—such as Benjamin Boone, John Collins, Hugh Edwards, William Roberts, and four others. But twenty-six added to fifteen make forty-one—eight more than thirty-three—and I failed to find the surnames of at least eight of those twenty-six either on the *New York Subsistence List* or on the *Sim-mendinger Register*.

The thirty-six petitioners for the road did not all live at Tulpehocken. The petition says so. Omitting the signatures, the petition is as follows—I will underscore a few words:

September, 1727

To the Honorable Bench

We whose names are hereunto subscribed, *ye inhabitants of ye Northwest parts of ye township of Oley, Tulpehocken, and parts adjacent,*—————having no road as yet established amongst us, by means whereof we suffer diver inconveniences and a great part of ye land at present not settled, through which ye hereby petitioned road is naturally designed to go by means whereof there will be no opposition made in ye laying of it out.

Wherefore we your petitioners hereby request that you will be pleased to order a Highroad to be laid out Beginning at the Lutheran Meeting House at Tulpehocken to end in the highroad at ye Quakers Meeting House near George Boone's mill in Oley.

And your petitioners shall ever pray.





The petition is signed by thirty-six persons. And at least eight of the Germans who signed the petition may have come into Pennsylvania through the port of Philadelphia and may have lived in the "township of Oley" or "parts adjacent," or even by that time in the Tulpehocken valley.

I do not mean to criticize Doctor Knittle. His book has been a great help to me. I am only trying to ascertain an actual fact, if I can, although my conclusion respecting that fact may differ a little from Doctor Knittle's apparent conclusion.

I think there were thirty-three Palatine families at first, and that the second party of Palatines that came down from New York was the "important occasion" in 1729, when Conrad Weiser and others arrived in the Tulpehocken section, as mentioned by Prof. I. Daniel Rupp in his *History of Berks and Lebanon Counties* (page 191). In any event, my ancestors, Abraham Lauk and his wife, Anna Catharina Becker, were two of the Palatines who came to New York in 1710, and in 1723, or thereabouts, settled on a branch of the Tulpehocken Creek in Berks County, Pennsylvania. But see also Chapter XI.

I will now try to set down in chronological order the data I have found respecting my pioneer ancestor, Abraham Lauk.

In none of the lists of the six parties that sailed from Rotterdam to London in 1709, which are given in Doctor Knittle's book, does the name of Abraham Lauk appear. On the fifth list appears Hans Michel Lauck with his wife and one child and Johann Lauck alone, and on the sixth list is Anonius Lauck alone. But in the *New York Subsistence List* and on the *Simmendinger Register* are the names of Abraham Lauck and about a half a dozen others whose names are variously spelled Lauck, Louck, or Laux. We may therefore infer that not all of the Pala-





tines who were taken to New York belonged to the first six sailing parties that went from Rotterdam to London. "Shiploads of German peoples, variously estimated from two thousand to thirty-two thousand, arrived in London between May and November, 1709" (Dr. Knittle, 1). And the twenty-eight hundred and fourteen who sailed to New York in 1710 had arrived in England among those shiploads. The name of Abraham Lauck first appears on the *New York Subsistence List* and the *Sim-mendinger Register* and in the records of the Rev. Joshua Kocherthal, which mentions Lauck's marriage on September 27, 1710 (MacWethy, 42). Next it appears on those church records when the child, Maria Catharina Lauck, was born September 7, and baptized September 8, 1711 (MacWethy, 20). It next appears on those records when his child Anna Christina was born October 24, and baptized October 30, 1715 (MacWethy, 30). The next year he took the oath of allegiance on the 31st of January at the mayor's court in Albany (MacWethy, 4).

I have found no other records with his name until 1723, when it appears as Abraham Lauk among those who settled in the Tulpehocken valley (Dr. Knittle, 300). I found the next appearance of the name among the taxables of Tulpehocken, Chester County, in 1725, where it is Abraham Lowk (*History of Chester County*, by Futhey & Cope, Vol. 1, pp. 206 and 207). Next the name of Abraham Lauk is found as one of the thirty-six who petitioned the Court of Quarter Sessions of Philadelphia in September, 1727, for the road from Tulpehocken to Oley.

The Lutherans in that settlement had a small church near the mouth of Mill Creek, a tributary of the Tulpehocken Creek, and Conrad Weiser was a member of it. But in 1735 he fell under the influence of Conrad Beisel, founder of the German Seventh Day Baptists, and in May of that year became a member of that creed. The





Rev. John Peter Miller, a well-educated Reformed missionary, and nine other families of Tulpehocken joined the said creed at the same time. But Conrad Weiser tired of his association there and, on September 3, 1743, wrote a letter to the leaders of the church at Epherta and completely severed his connection with that denomination. He had in the meantime been under the influence of the Rev. Henry Melchior Muhlenberg, the founder of the German Lutheran Church in America. In 1742, Count Zinzendorf, of the Moravian Church, put in his appearance at Tulpehocken, and the result was a religious confusion in that locality. Soon the Lutheran church building passed into the control of the Moravians, and one hundred and sixty-six Lutherans founded a new congregation and built a church near Stouchsburg. It was known as Christ (Tulpehocken) Lutheran Church. Three adjoining land owners—Sebastian Fischer, Christian Laurer, and George Urich—gave five acres each to the congregation for church and burial purposes. Abraham Lauk and Michael Muehler were appointed to build the church. On the 12th of May, 1743, there was deposited in the cornerstone of the church then being built, a formal declaration signed by the hundred and sixty-six founders of the congregation, and it has the signatures of Abraham Lauk and his son, John George Lauk. In 1786, the church that was built in 1743, which was probably built of logs, was taken down and a new stone church was erected. The stone church still stands there, although it was badly damaged by an explosion of dynamite in 1884, and in 1887 all the woodwork was destroyed by fire, caused by a stroke of lightning.

Prof. I. Daniel Rupp, in his *History of Berks and Lebanon Counties*, beginning at page 466, gives the names of the members of Christ (Tulpehocken) Lutheran Church from 1743 to 1746, and in that list are the names of Abraham Lauk and Joh. Georg Lauk.





The first list of taxables in Berks County was made in 1753, and on the list for that year is found the name of Abraham Lauck taxed in Tulpehocken Township, and he was taxed there year after year until and including 1769. Abraham Lauck, Junior, was taxed also in Tulpehocken Township as early as 1754, and George Lauck was taxed in Heidelberg Township in 1754. In 1768 and 1769 George Lauck, Sr., and George Lauck, Jr., were taxed in the latter township.

On the 23rd of September, 1754, Abraham Lauck, Sr., of the township of Tulpehocken, Berks County, Pennsylvania, and Catharina, his wife, by deed, conveyed to Abraham Lauck, Jr., of the same township, his plantation on a branch of Tulpehocken Creek, consisting of two hundred and forty-two acres of the land in the said township (Deed Book A-1, pages, 110, 111, and 112). In the body of the deed the surname is Lauck, but the grantor's name is signed Abraham Luck, and his wife, Catharina, signed by her mark, but her name is written Lauck, which was evidently done by the scrivener.

On the 28th of January, 1771, Abraham Lauck of Heidelberg Township, Berks County, made his will. It was probated August 15, 1772. It names his wife and five of his children and names three grandchildren. It makes certain that he had two sons, namely: George and Abraham. The testator had apparently changed his residence theretofore, perhaps two years before writing his will.

I will quote from his will as follows:

Item.—It is further my Will and I do Order, that all and Singular my personal Estate, shall be divided into four equall Shares, which I give and bequeath, as follows, that is to say, one fourth part thereof unto my Daughter Christina (:Marry'd unto George Peter Zerbe:) one fourth Part thereof unto my Daughter Cathrina (:Marry'd to Lazerne Wenger:) one fourth part thereof to be divided into two equall Shares, one Share thereof unto my daughter Elizabeth (:Marry'd to Peter Zerbe:) and the other





Share thereof shall be Equally divided unto my Grand Children, to wit John Miller, Christina (:Marry'd to Jacob Mingh:) and Margretha (:Marry'd to Christopher Keiser:) one fourth thereof the residue unto my grand Children, born of the Body of my Daughter Maria Cathrina by her first Husband Jacob Mountz's divided in Equal Shares to them or to their each respectively Heirs or Representatives (Allowing out of the same five Pounds unto my Son George for his first Birth Right. And twenty Shillings unto my Son Abraham or to their respectively Heirs:).

And Whereas I have sold my Plantations or Real Estate at a Low rate unto my Sons George Louck and Abraham Louck their Heirs and Assigns forever, so that, I have by the Sale and bargain provided for my loving Wife Cathrina, that my Sons George Louck and Abraham Louck or their Heirs in like Equall Manner must maintain my beloved Wife (:their Mother:) with sufficient Victualling Apparel Washing and Lodging, during her Natural Life, and to give her sufficient Attendance, when she is unable to help herself or is sick.

And Whereas I have certain Obligations of my Sons George Louck and Abraham Louck, together of the Sum of four hundred Pounds Lawful Money of Pensilvania for the Real Estate sold to them, so is my Will and I do order that the said four hundred Pounds, shall be paid at the Expiration of one year after my decease, only with one year Interest for the same, unto my Daughters and grand Children, to be divided and paid unto each of them as aforesaid is mentioned and described and no other ways whatsoever.

The record of Christ (Tulpehocken) Lutheran Church shows the burial, August 10, 1772, of "Abraham Lauck, son of Valentine, 86 years, Heidelberg Church Yard: 7 Sirach, 46: Born 1686 in the electorate Mayns—emigrated in 1709, left 7 children some seventy grand children." Mayns is incorrectly spelled. It may be a type-written error in the copy of the English translation of the record in possession of the Berks County Historical Society. It means Mainz, also called Mayence.

As Abraham Lauck's will names his wife and only five children, and the church burial record says he left seven children, the latter may mean that he had had seven children. He names three grandchildren as devisees—





one male and two married females. The male was John Miller. His mother was therefore a daughter of the testator and was most likely dead when the will was made. The parent of one or both of the female grandchildren was either a son or a daughter of the testator. That would account for seven children. On page 89 of *Dr. Egle's Notes*, in 1896, appears the marriage of Peter Lauck on June 28, 1743, to Anna Barbara Kershner. This was in Tulpehocken. He was probably a son of Abraham Lauk, the testator, and the two female grandchildren named in the will may have been daughters of Peter Lauck. However, the testator may have left seven children and made devises to only five of them.

There is no room for doubt that Abraham Lauck had a son named Abraham and that both the father and son lived and were taxed at the same time in Tulpehocken Township. The Tulpehocken church record shows the marriage of Philip Beck of Lebanon to Anna Maria Lauck, a daughter of Abraham Lauck, on May 12, 1776.

I will now refer to the data that shows that Abraham Lauck, Jr., was the father-in-law of my mother's grandfather, John Philip Beck.

My mother's father, Emanuel Beck, told me more than sixty years ago that his father died at the age of sixty, that he was a gunsmith, lived in the town of Lebanon, and that he was buried in the Lutheran church cemetery in Lebanon. The only Lutheran church then in Lebanon was the Salem Lutheran Church, and it is still there. Its records show that Anna Maria, daughter of Abraham Lauk and his wife, Margaret, was born in Tulpehocken, September 29, 1756; married John Philip Beck, May 12, 1776, and died at six o'clock in the morning when she was forty years and one month old. She had given birth to a child when she died. She was seized with labor pains on Tuesday and died on Saturday of the same week, which was October 29, 1796. The record of





the same church also shows that John Philip Beck was born in 1751, died in October, 1811, and was married to Anna Maria Lauk in 1776. The same church record shows the baptism of my grandfather, Emanuel Beck, on the 25th of May, 1788. There can be no doubt, therefore, that I am a direct descendant of Abraham Lauk and his wife, who were Palatines and who arrived in New York in 1710, and that about thirteen years later they settled in Tulpehocken valley in Berks County, Pennsylvania. When they settled there that section of country was in the county of Chester. In 1723 there were only the three original counties in the State, namely: Bucks, Philadelphia, and Chester.

The reader has noticed the various spelling of the surname of the family and how it is spelled at the head of this chapter. My reasons for adopting that spelling are that when the person bearing that name wrote it himself, at least the first time, he wrote it Lauk. It is so found in the petition which is signed for a road from Tulpehocken to Oley in 1727, and it is written the same day on the list of the one hundred and sixty-six founders of the so-called Tulpehocken church in 1743. It is spelled the same way on the record of the church when he was named as first of the committee of two to build that church. Professor Rupp spelled it the same way on his list of members of the church from 1743 to 1746. Such is also the spelling of Doctor Knittle on page 300 of his book, and in the records of the Salem Lutheran Church it is spelled Lauk, both where reference is made to the death and burial of the wife of John Philip Beck in 1796, and again in the burial record of John Philip Beck in 1811.

However, Lauk, Lauck, Louck, and Louke sound exactly the same. I am inclined to think that the name is now most generally spelled Lauck.





On March 27, 1769, Abraham Lauk, Jr., of Tulpehocken Township and his wife, Margaretha, conveyed to John George Lauk the same premises that had been deeded to him by his father, Abraham Lauck, Sr., on March 23, 1754. After that the name of Abraham Lauk, Jr., (in any form or spelling) does not appear in any list of taxables in Berks County, and I think he went farther north. He was surely alive in January, 1771, because he is mentioned as a son and devisee in the will of his father, which was made in that year. Anyhow, on pages 650 to 652 in the third volume, *Fifth Series, Pennsylvania Archives*, it appears that Abraham Louke was a private in the Fourth Company of the new Eleventh Regiment in the Continental Line, from January 13, 1779, to January 17, 1781. This must have been my ancestor, the father-in-law of John Philip Beck, but what became of him after his enlistment in the Continental Army I do not know. The captain of his company, Lawrence Keene, lived in Sunbury and died there in 1789. According to page 644 in the volume just referred to, it appears that Abraham Louke's depreciated pay escheated to the State, showing that he either did not live long or that he moved to some distant point. The highway that had been constructed through the Tulpehocken section to Sunbury to carry on trade between Philadelphia and Sunbury long before the latter section of the State had been released by the Indians afforded Abraham Lauk, Jr., an opportunity to leave the Tulpehocken basin and settle on or near the Susquehanna River.

I have already shown that the first child of Abraham Lauck, Senior, was a girl named Maria Catharina, born 1711. I do not know of the order in which his other children were born. Anna Christina who was born in 1715 may not have been the second child. She married George Peter Zerbe. Mrs. Ella Zerbey Elliott published a *Blue Book of Schuylkill County* in 1916, and it





gives names and facts respecting the descendants of Martin Zerbe, whose oldest child was the said George Peter Zerbe. It will therefore not be necessary for me to put in the family tree at the end of this chapter the names of the descendants of George Peter Zerbe and his wife, Anna Christina Lauck. Suffice it to say that the late Joseph Henry Zerbey, deceased, who was the founder and publisher of the *Pottsville Republican*, was a brother of Mrs. Ella Zerbey Elliott.

Taking Abraham Lauck as the first generation of his line in America, Mrs. Elliott and the other members of her father's family were of the sixth generation in the Lauck line. Thus: Abraham Lauk (1); Anna Christina Lauk (2), wife of George Peter Zerbe; John George Zerbe (3), George Zerbe (4), William Merkle Zerbe (5), J. H. Zerbey (6). It will later appear that I am also of the sixth generation in the Abraham Lauk line. But taking Valentine Lauk as the first generation known to me, I am of the seventh generation in that line.

I have not tried to learn the names of the descendants of the first Abraham Lauk other than as they have already been shown down to the time of the marriage in 1776 of his granddaughter, Anna Maria Lauk, to my great-grandfather, John Philip Beck. I have said several times hitherto that the main purpose of this book is to show the full names of thirty of my ancestors that my personal knowledge and my searches have disclosed to me as a certainty. Among those thirty ancestors are none of the female spouses whose full maiden names have not yet become known to me.

The family tree following here will show only the trunk and a few bare branches of The Lauk Family.





## THE LAUK FAMILY TREE

VALENTINE LAUK (1), lived in the electorate Mainz—Mayence—Germany. I have no evidence that he came to America. He was the father of ABRAHAM LAUK (2), my first American ancestor in the Lauk line.

ABRAHAM LAUK (2), born in 1686 in the Commune Epstein, Darnstadt, Germany. Arrived in New York in June 1710. Eleventh September 1710, married Anna Catharina Becker, daughter of Johann Henrick Becker. Moved to Tulpehocken Valley, Berks County, 1723. Died testate in Heidelberg Township, Berks County, Pa., August 1772, aged 86 years. Buried in the Heidelberg Churchyard. Survived by his wife and some seventy descendants, among them being at least five children, namely: Maria Catharina, Anna Christina, Elizabeth, John George, and Abraham, and three grandchildren, viz: John Miller, Christina Mingh (wife of Jacob Mingh), Margretha Keiser (wife of Christopher Keiser). I do not know the order of birth of his descendants, but am sure Maria Catharina was born first.

MARIA CATHARINE LAUK (3), b. 7 September 1711, first married Jacob Mountz, and by him had several children. After his death she married Lazerne Wenger.

ANNA CHRISTINA LAUK (3), b. 24 October 1715, m. George Peter Zerbe. Mrs. Ella Zerbey Elliott, a descendant of this couple, published, in 1916, a *Blue Book of Schuylkill County*, and on page 439 showed that her father, William Merkle Zerbe, was a son of George Zerbe who was a son of John George Zerbe who was a son of George Peter Zerbe who married Christina Lauk in 1732. The late Joseph Henry Zerbey, proprietor and publisher of the *Pottsville Republican* newspaper, was a brother to Mrs. Elliott.

ELIZABETH LAUK (3), b. ————d. ————, m. Peter Zerbe. No further information.

JOHN GEORGE LAUK (3), son of ABRAHAM LAUK (2), b. ————d. testate in 1784, in Heidelberg Township, Berks County, Pa. In his will he named his wife Susanna, two sons, John and George, and three daughters, Anna, the wife of George Zerbey; Christina, the wife of Henry Walter, and Catharine, the wife of Jacob Freitz.

ABRAHAM LAUK (3), b. ————d. ————, m. Margaret ————. Enlisted as a private in the 4th Company, new 11th Regiment of the Continental Line from 13 January 1779 to 17 January 1781. Among their children was Anna Maria Lauk.

ANNA MARIA LAUK (4), daughter of ABRAHAM LAUK (3), b. 29 September 1756, d. 29 October 1796; m. JOHN PHILIP BECK, 15 May 1776. Both buried at Salem Lutheran Church, Lebanon, Pa. For their descendants see Chapter VII—The Beck Family. But I will here show my own descent in the Lauk line.

EMANUEL BECK (5), son of John Philip Beck and Anna Maria Lauk Beck, m. Barbara Fisher.

MARY ANN BECK (6), daughter of EMANUEL BECK, m. Daniel Koch.

RICHARD HENRY KOCH (7), son of DANIEL and MARY ANN BECK KOCH.

——— LAUK (3), daughter of ABRAHAM LAUK (2), but not named in his will, she then being dead. m. ———— Miller. Children:

JOHN MILLER (4); CHRISTINA MILLER (4), who married Jacob Mingh, and MARGRETHA MILLER (4), who married Christopher Keiser.

However, see the text. Either or both of these last two may not have been Mrs. Miller's children. They may have been children of Peter Lauk, to whom reference is made in the text.





## CHAPTER IX

### THE BECKER FAMILY

In Chapter VIII it is made to appear that Johan Henrich Becker of Weerheim, Commune of Dillenberg, Germany, was the father-in-law of the Palatine Abraham Lauck (MacWethy, 42), whose granddaughter became the wife of my great-grandfather, John Philip Beck. I have not learned much about my ancestor Becker. Doctor Knittle gives the lists of Palatines who sailed from Rotterdam to London on six different occasions in 1709 (pages 244 to 274). The name of Johan Becker appears on the lists of the fourth, fifth and sixth parties that sailed in that year, but the name of Johan Henrich Becker does not appear on the *New York Subsistence List* (pages 282 to 291), nor on the *Simmendinger Register* (pages 291 to 299). Doctor Knittle's *Simmendinger Register* shows only five Becker families, whereas, the Simmendinger list has six Becker families. The name of the head of the one omitted by Doctor Knittle is Magdalena Becker, widow, with two children. And I would not be surprised to learn that she was the widow of the Johan Becker, who, with his wife and three children were in the fifth party that sailed to England in 1709 (Dr. Knittle, 264), or the widow of the Johan Becker that sailed with his wife and three children in the sixth party (Dr. Knittle, 271). I think Magdalena's husband died at sea, or on Governor's Island, and that after the marriage of her daughter, Anna Catharina Becker, to Abraham Lauck, on September 27, 1710 (MacWethy, 42), Magdalena and her two remaining children are the persons referred to by Simmendinger as living in the village that was called New Stuttgart.





The omission of Magdalena Becker and her two children by Doctor Knittle was surely inadvertent, because his book shows very much research and great care in preparation.

It is quite possible that both of the Johan Beckers, who sailed respectively with the fifth and sixth parties from Rotterdam to London in 1709, died before, or shortly after, arriving in America. MacWethy, on page 42, shows the marriage on September 27, 1710, of Christian Hauss, widower, a carpenter, of Alten-Staeden, near Wetzler, Duchy of Solm, and Anna Catharina Becker, widow of the late Johann Becker of Duernberg, near Deitz, Commune Schaumburg. And the *Simmendinger Register* mentions "Hausz, Christian and his wife Maria Catharine with eight children." That Christian Hauss (or Hausz) may have been the Haus Johan's, widower, who sailed with his three children in the sixth party (Dr. Knittle, 272), and the same Johan Christian Haus whose name is shown on the *New York Subsistence List* (Dr. Knittle, 285), where it appears that in 1712 his family consisted of five persons over ten years of age and four persons under ten years of age. As Haus, the widower, and his three children sailed in the sixth party they may have become acquainted on that occasion with the wife of the Johan Becker who sailed in the same party, and after Becker died the widower and the widow may have pooled their issues and have become man and wife on the 27th of September, 1710 (MacWethy, 42). Some allowance must be made for differences in the names John, Christian, and John Christian. They more than likely are meant for the same person in that instance, and although the wife's name appears as Anna Catharine in the record of the marriage in 1710 and as Maria Catharine on the *Simmendinger Register*, they may have been the same person. Such errors are too frequent to





offer serious difficulty in drawing inferences where other indisputable facts exist.

If I am not mistaken, Magdalena Becker was the widow of the Johan Becker who sailed in the fifth party to London. I am inclined to believe such was the case. The reader who has carefully perused the previous chapters in this book should know by this time that the differences in the Christian name and various spellings of the surname are not a complete bar to a correct inference of the identity of the person. They cause me no difficulty whatever, nor lessen the satisfaction of my conclusions. They render my conclusions no less certain after I have exhausted all the existing data that have led me to the conclusions.

In any event, I am certain that Johan Henrich Becker was one of my ancestors, even though he may have died after leaving Rotterdam and before arriving in America, or may never have left Germany.

Therefore, taking him as the first generation of his line just as though he had come to America, I am of the seventh generation in the line of his descendants in America.

Believing that the baptismal name of Johan Becker's wife was Magdalena, the family tree stands thus:

#### THE BECKER FAMILY TREE

JOHAN HENRICH BECKER (1), b. 16—, d. 1709 or 1710, m. Magdalena ——— (1). Three children. The name of only one of which is known.

ANNA CATHARINA BECKER (2), b. 16—; m. Abraham Lauck, September 27, 1710, b. 1686, d. 1772. For descendants of this union see Chapter VIII — The Lauck Family.





## CHAPTER X

### THE FISHER FAMILY

The fact that the maiden name of my mother's mother was Barbara Fisher accounts for the heading of this chapter. Many Fishers came to this country. The founder of the family in my relationship was Wilhelm Fischer, but I shall hereafter generally spell the name "William Fisher," because the "c" is no longer used by the descendants, and Wilhelm is the German for William. He arrived in Philadelphia in the ship *Samuel* from Rotterdam on the 17th of August, 1733. The ship captain, when noting the names of his passengers, stated also the ages of those that he put on his list. Opposite the name of William Fisher he put "26" to denote his age (Volume 1, *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*, 107), but William Fisher's tombstone in the cemetery at Hain's church says he was born April 11, 1706. He was therefore twenty-seven years old when he arrived here. The captain spelled the surname as it is spelled at the head of this chapter, but in signing the oath of allegiance and the oath of adjuration, the immigrant wrote his name "Johan Wilhelm Fischer." However, he apparently dropped the first part of his name some time thereafter. It may be important therefore to note that another William Fisher arrived in the port of Philadelphia on September 24, 1737 (pages 175, 177, and 178, Vol 1, *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*). The captain of that vessel spelled the immigrant's name William Fisher and stated his age as twenty-eight, whereas the age of my ancestor then was thirty-one. That immigrant also spelled his name Wilhelm Fischer. On the same boat that brought my ancestor came also Hendrick Fisher, aged





thirty-eight, as noted by the captain, but when signing his name to the said oath, he wrote it "Johan Henrich Fischer." He seems to have been married, accompanied by his wife, Anna Lydia Fisher, aged thirty-six, and three children. I have been told that those two men were brothers. The reader will note that the first name of each one was Johan.

In their "Index of Christian Names" (Volume 3, *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*, page 229), Strassburger and Hinke say Johann, Johan, Hans, Hannes, etc., are the same as Johannes, which means John. If that be correct, the first Christian name of forty-two out of the eighty-nine male passengers aged sixteen years and upwards who came here in the same ship with Johan Wilhelm Fisher, in 1733, was John, and John was also the first Christian name of fifty-six out of the one hundred and four male immigrants aged sixteen years and upwards who arrived on the ship *Queen Elizabeth*, September 16, 1738, at which time my great-great-great-grandfather, Johann Hennrich Koch, and my great-great-grandfather, Henrich Koch, first set foot on American soil.

The name John appears so very frequently in some form or other among German immigrants of the eighteenth century that I have been prompted to inquire why it happened.

Prof. I. Daniel Rupp in his *Thirty Thousand Names of Immigrants* (page 488) says: "it seems to be a sort of Lieblingsnamen, occurring in this collection, upwards of eight thousand times, alone or connected with some other baptismal names a Han George, Johann Jacob, Han Niclaus, Hans Peter, Hannes Johann." The word "lieblingsnamen" as used by Professor Rupp means a pet or favorite name. My dear octogenarian friend, the Rev. P. C. Croll, D.D., of Womelsdorf, Pennsylvania, writes me that it is "a form of endearment naming.





Whilst it literally means John it is used as a sort of preface (as Mister) to the sons of a family: thus, John George, John Henry, John Frederick, et cetra. When one of these signed his will it was not necessary for him to include the Hans or Johannes, for Henry, Frederick or George alone would signify whose will it was." Charles R. Roberts of Allentown, Pennsylvania, wrote me thus: "In answer to your query will say that I have translated thousands of records of baptisms in church records and find that the boys were frequently named Johan Jacob, Johan Peter, etc., and the girls Maria Margaret, Maria Magdalena, Maria Elizabeth, etc."

It was a relic of the Catholic days when the boys were named after St. John and the girls after the Virgin Maria. I understand it is still done in Canada. I find that the name Johan was not so often used. Among the Pennsylvania Germans, Johan Peter became Han Peter and sometimes Hom Peter. My experience has been that when a boy was named John he was baptized Johannes. Some of my ancestors were also baptized Johan with the first name, but never used it.

As dependable local historians, genealogists, and authors of great learning, Doctor Croll and Mr. Roberts stand in the forefront among those of Pennsylvania German descent. That the Christian name of John was very frequently used when a son was baptized is clearly illustrated in the family of George Hain, after whom Hain's church was named. On page 161 of the *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, 1935, among the names of George Hain's sons are the following: John Christian Hain, John George Hain, John Adam Hain, John Frederick Hain, John Henry Hain, and John Casper Hain — a very good illustration to show that "Johan" was a sort of "lieblingsnamen."

In the history of that church, published in 1916, page 24 shows that William Fisher came here with a com-





mentatory letter given under the Seal of His Excellency, the Count, Secretary of the Chancery, Bierstein, dated 1733. I will take the liberty of quoting the translation there given:

We, the Chancellor of the Right Hon. Count and Lord Sir Wolfgang Ernst, Count of Isenberg and Diedingen, our gracious Count and Lord, hereby acknowledge and make known that William Fisher, heretofore inhabitant, neighbor and subject of Langenselbol, Amts Bonnenburg, obediently informed us that he has decided to depart and to emigrate to Pennsylvania, where he intends to settle, and at the same time humbly requests us to notify not only his honesty and integrity, but faithfully to attest that henceforth he owes no allegiance to his Excellency, the Count, as we should find by investigation, and as we would consider it our duty to bear witness to the truth and further the welfare of each and every one.

To this seemingly request to William Fisher we had to accede the more readily the better we have assured ourselves by authenticated reports that William Fisher has heretofore conducted himself to his Excellency, the Count, his counsellors, officials, and toward each and every one, that we can give to all good testimony in his behalf.

His Excellency and we his chancellor decree that William Fisher owes us no allegiance, and permit to him to leave the county of Isenberg and to settle wherever he may desire.

We therefore request all high and low, according to their stations and dignity, obediently, submissively and subserviently and kindly, not only to give implicit belief to our testimony, that the above named William Fisher, who comes from a place free from all infectious disease, be permitted to go free and unmolested by whomsoever met, and his long journey to give him all assistance and preferment, which we shall ever be ready to reciprocate whenever the opportunity shall offer.

From that letter one may infer that William Fisher was a man of some consequence. Soon after his arrival here he evidently settled in Heidelberg Township, then a part of Lancaster County, but later of Berks County.

A connected draft, which appears on page 158 in the said church history of 1916, shows that William Fisher





had two hundred acres of land as early as 1733. The land adjoined that of George Hain and was within two miles of where Hain's church stands. It was southwest of the church. He continued to live in that section until he died, October 23, 1771. In his time he became the owner of a number of tracts of land in that neighborhood, totaling about one thousand acres. In 1733, he married Elizabeth Gertrude Hain, a daughter of his neighbor, George Hain. She was born in 1711, very probably at the Livingston Manor on the Hudson River, her father having been one of the immigrants who had been sent over to New York in the days of Queen Anne to make naval stores for the British Government. She died June 4, 1768, and is buried by the side of her husband at Hain's church. The family tree, as far as I shall make it up at the end of this chapter, will show that this William Fisher became the father of three children before the other William Fisher got here in 1737.

William Fisher and Elizabeth Gertrude Hain, his wife, had eight sons and three daughters. In his will he named all of his children. A very noteworthy fact respecting those eight sons is that all of them are credited with service as soldiers in the Continental Army in the Revolutionary War. Four of them are buried at Hain's church, namely: Peter, Philip, Michael, and Frederick, and one grandson, Peter Fisher, Jr.

The will of William Fisher is dated November 2, 1768, and was probated at Reading, November 21, 1771. He was apparently a sick man when he made his will, but he lived three years after that. He bequeathed to his son, Peter, his first-born boy, four contiguous pieces of land with all the buildings thereon. He had prepared a general draft or plan of all his lands as early as 1763, and those bequeathed to Peter were designated on the draft by the letter "A." Peter was to pay to the executors two hundred and seventy pounds within twelve





months after the testator's death. To his son, Philip, he bequeathed three contiguous pieces of land which were designated by the letter "B" on said draft. Philip's land adjoined Peter's land, and he was to pay the executors one hundred and fifty pounds within twelve months after the testator's death. To his son, John Fisher, he bequeathed three pieces of land which were designated by the letter "C" on said plan. John was to pay to the said executors two hundred and ninety pounds within twelve months after the testator's death. The devises to Philip and John were made subject to certain water rights, because a stream ran from John's land across Philip's land and on to Peter's land. In fact, all the lands bequeathed were subject to certain water rights which are set forth in the said will. To his son, Henry, he devised a piece of land which was designed by the letter "D" on the said draft. Henry was to pay to the executors the sum of two hundred and eighty pounds within twelve months after the testator's death. Henry was living on that land when the will was made. Next, he bequeathed to his son, Michael, three pieces of land designated by the letter "E" on the said draft. It was the dwelling place of William Fisher, and Michael was to pay the executors six hundred pounds within twelve months after the testator's death.

William Fisher directed his executors to sell all his personal estate at public vendue. Although he made the specific devises of the lands already mentioned, he authorized his executors to sign, seal, and acknowledge to each of his devisees a good deed for the respective lands, "if the same shall become necessary," as soon as they paid the full sum they were required to pay for the lands. I have not searched the records to find whether it became necessary to make such deeds. He appointed John Heckert of Heidelberg Township and Peter Fisher executors. Heckert was his son-in-law, having married





his daughter, Elizabeth Gertrude Fisher, his first child, and Peter Fisher was his oldest son.

After the sale of the personal property and the payment of his just debts, and the payment to the executors, by the respective devisees, of the amounts the will required them to pay for the lands they received, the will says "my executors . . . shall divide all the money thence arising . . . into eleven equal shares among my children, to wit: one-eleventh part to my son Peter and so forth to Philip, John, Henry, Michael, Frantz, Frederick and George Fischer, and my daughters Elizabeth, Susannah and Rosina, or to their heirs in case one of my children shall then be deceased. And as such child hath received from me in my lifetime so much they shall receive less in the distribution. My oldest daughters shall have their shares first. All such sums they will find regularly set down in my Memorandum Book." When signing his will he wrote his name, William Fisher. That will, of itself, shows that William Fisher was a man of energy, fine intelligence and thrift—a farmer of a high order.

Morton L. Montgomery, Esquire, the author of two large volumes on *Berks County, Pennsylvania*, says, on page 1285, that: "Wilhelm Fischer . . . was the founder of a very large and prolific Berks County family," and that "He was a farmer by occupation, exceedingly industrious, and was known as a man of sterling qualities." Tombstones in the cemetery at Hain's church mark the graves of more than fifty of his descendants.

The descendants of William Fisher have been engaged in a great variety of activities, farming, trades, industries, and the various professions. I have known a large number of them and can vouch for their having been law-abiding and highly respected people. To me one of the most interesting was General B. Frank Fisher, a son of Rev. Peter S. Fisher, who was a son of William Fisher, who was a son of Peter Fisher, who was the oldest son





of the William Fisher that founded the family in America as early as 1733. The general was a lawyer, who practiced in Philadelphia, but lived at Valley Forge. He and I became very intimate friends, but I never knew of our blood relationship until within the last few years, when I began work on this branch of my genealogy. General Fisher was a good lawyer and a very likeable man. In the Civil War he was the chief of the Signal Corps in the Army of the Potomac. He was taken prisoner by the Confederates and confined for eight months in the famous Libby Prison at Richmond, but he and another soldier dug their way out of the prison and succeeded in making their escape — a thing that very rarely happened at that prison. I heard him deliver his famous lecture on that escape. He was a delightful talker and delivered the lecture in different towns. I heard him in the Academy of Music in Pottsville some time in the 1880's. How he ever learned of me, I know not; the first word that I got from him was a letter asking me to collect a claim of thirty-six hundred dollars in Schuylkill County for a client of his in Philadelphia, and I succeeded in collecting it without bringing a lawsuit. After that I met him occasionally at his office or at his home in Valley Forge.

In 1931 the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania and the Berks County Chapter of the Daughters of the American Revolution erected on the outside of the westerly wall of Hain's church a bronze tablet in commemoration of the services of Revolutionary War soldiers who are buried in the cemetery at that church. Among the fifty names appearing on that tablet is that of "Fredric Fischer," who was one of the sons of William Fischer. Frederic Fischer was a private in Captain Sebastian Miller's company. On page 211 in Volume 5 of the *Fifth Series, Pennsylvania Archives*, is "Return of Captain Miller's Company of Militia commanded by Colonel





Joseph Hister (Hister should be spelled Hiester) May 31, 1781." The return is found under the general heading of "Associators and Militia, County of Berks." There were eighty-five privates in Captain Miller's company. The captain resided in Cumru Township, and his men were evidently recruited from Cumru and Heidleberg Townships. He had at that time in that company six sons of William Fisher, namely: John Fisher, Henry Fisher, Fridrich (Frederick) Fisher, George Fisher, Pitter (Peter) Fisher, and Michael Fisher.

Colonel Joseph Hiester became a very prominent Berks countian. His father, Johannes Hüster, arrived in Philadelphia, September 25, 1732, and later settled in Bern Township, Berks County, where Colonel Hiester was born. The spelling of the surname had been changed. Before he was of age, young Joseph went to Reading and engaged in the store business, but, when the Revolutionary War broke out, he enlisted a company of eighty men for the so-called Flying Camp in July, 1776, and with them joined Washington's forces on Long Island. In the disastrous battle that ensued there late in August, he was taken prisoner. After suffering great hardship and being seriously reduced by sickness, he was exchanged as a prisoner of war, but later rendered further service in the Continental Army. In 1789, he was a delegate to the convention that formed the second constitution of this State, and in 1790 was elected as the first Senator from Berks County. He subsequently served five terms as a member of Congress and in 1820 was elected Governor of the State. In politics he was a Federalist.

The records of soldiers in the Revolutionary War are in many cases incomplete; in other cases they are entirely lacking, and tradition alone, without some collateral support of a persuasive character, may not be sufficient to warrant a conclusion of any person's service in that war. *The Colonial Records* and the *Pennsylvania Archives*





are generally regarded as dependable as far as they disclose any information, although some allowance must be made at times for variations in the spelling of proper names. The record evidence is sufficient to warrant the conclusion that Frederick Fisher was a soldier in the Continental Army.

Frederick Fisher was the tenth of William Fisher's children. He was born in Heidelberg Township, then Lancaster (but later Berks) County, May 5, 1750. He lived in that township until he became possibly forty years of age, when he settled in Cumru Township, where he died, October 17, 1828. He was a farmer and a blacksmith. With Gertrude Faust, whom he married, May 18, 1775, he had eight children, of whom Barbara, my grandmother, was the seventh. She was born in that part of Cumru Township which is now Spring Township, February 2, 1792. After her marriage to Emanuel Beck, July 11, 1812, she and her husband lived for some years in Bern Township, Berks County, and then moved to Schuylkill Township, Schuylkill County. They lived right at the upper end of the gap, near where the Cold Run and Beaver Creek unite, in what is now Walker Township, where he built a grist-mill and a saw-mill, later known as Yost's mill. It is now the property of the Delaware and Hudson Coal Company, and since they own it the mill has not been in operation. The stone building that stands there now was the grist-mill; the mill that Beck built was displaced by the stone mill. More will be found on this subject in Chapter VII relating to The Beck Family.

Chapter 17 in the *History of Hain's Church*, published in 1935, gives the names of William Fisher's children and grandchildren and some later descendants, and I shall avail myself somewhat of such data in making up the family tree in this chapter, but I will not go into all the details there found, for I am sure that, if I had





all the necessary information and were to note the names of all of William Fisher's descendants and their spouses, the number would become very large. I know that in the single case of my grandmother, Barbara Fisher, who was the daughter of Frederick Fisher, the number of descendants and spouses runs over three hundred. The main purpose of this book is to give the names of as many of my ancestors in America as tradition and records enable me to give; the purpose is not to ascertain and name all the descendants of those ancestors. So I will content myself with the following part of The Fisher Family Tree, indicating the generations in America by the appropriate figure in parentheses back of each name.

#### THE FISHER FAMILY TREE

WILHELM FISHER (1), born in Germany, 11 April 1706. Arrived in Philadelphia, 17 August 1733, and soon settled in Heidelberg Township, then in Lancaster, but later in Berks County, where he died, 23 October 1771.

In 1733, he married Elizabeth Gertrude Hain (2), who was born in 1711, probably in Livingston Manor, New York. She died 4 June 1768, and both are buried at Hain's Church. They had eleven children: Elizabeth Gertrude Fisher (2), Peter Fisher (2), Philip Fisher (2), John Fisher (2), Henry Fisher (2), Michael Fisher (2), Susanna Fisher (2), Rosina Fisher (2), Frantz Fisher (2), Frederick Fisher (2) and John George Fisher (2).

ELIZABETH GERTRUDE FISHER (2), born about 1734; m. John Heckert, with whom she had six children. For further information consult the *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, published in 1935.

PETER FISHER (2), born 8 September 1735; d. 23 November 1787; m. Appolonia Heckert in 1758, with whom he had six sons and three daughters. He was a private in Captain John Ludwig's company, 6th Battalion, Berks County Militia. He was a court martial man 17 May 1777. (*Pennsylvania Archives*, Volume 5, *Fifth Series*, page 238). For further family information consult *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, published in 1935.

PHILIP FISHER (2), b. 22 September 1736, d. 16 August 1803; m. Anna Maria ———, with whom he had seven daughters and two sons. He was a member of Captain Kerschner's company, Seventh Class. For further information respecting the family consult *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, published in 1935.

JOHN FISHER (2), b. about 1738, d. in 1812; m. Anna Catharine ———, with whom he had six sons and three daughters. For further family information see *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, published in 1935. For services in the Revolutionary War see text of this chapter.

HENRY FISHER (2), b. 1739, d. 1822; m. Christina Durst, 28 September 1761, and with her had four sons and seven daughters. For further family history see *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, published in 1935. For services in the Revolutionary War see text of this chapter.





MICHAEL FISHER (2), b. 1741, d. 1822; m. Catharine Bollman, who whom he had three sons and one daughter. For further family information see *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, published in 1935. For services in the Revolutionary War see text of this chapter.

SUSANNA FISHER (2), born about 1743. No further information.

ROSINA FISHER (2), born about 1735; m. Peter Grauel, son of Michael Grauel, 10 April 1764. No further information.

FRANTZ FISHER (2), b. 7 May 1747. Francis (Frantz) Fisher was a private in the company of Captain Henry Christ, Jr., of Reading, who was captain from 9 March 1776 to 19 March 1777, when he resigned. (Pages 231 and 232, Volume 10, *Second Series, Pennsylvania Archives*.)

FREDERICK FISHER (2), b. 5 May 1750, d. 17 October 1828; m. Gertrude Faust, 18 May 1775. She was born 15 February 1751 and died 31 October 1827. He was a farmer and a blacksmith and lived in Spring Township, Berks County. He had eight children: John Fisher (3), b. 1775, d. 1777; Peter Fisher (3), William Fisher (3), Eva Fisher (3); Catharine Fisher (3), m. Jonas Fry; John Fisher (3), b. 24 February 1787, d. 14 March 1852, m. Catharina Baum. Note that this boy had the same name as the first born son. I have seen other instances of that in families where one bearing the same name had died in infancy. Children: Barbara Fisher (3), b. 2 February 1792, d. 3 January 1879; m. Emmanuel Beck (3), 11 July 1812, and Jonathan Fisher (3). For further information respecting Frederick Fisher's descendants consult *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, published in 1935, and Emanuel Beck (3) in Chapter VII of this book, but I will show after the next item respecting John Fisher (2) my own descent in the Fisher line. For services of Frederick Fisher in the Revolutionary War see text of this chapter.

JOHN GEORGE FISHER (2), b. 31 May 1752, m. Katharine ——— No further family information. For services in the Revolutionary War see text of this chapter.

BARBARA FISHER (3), the seventh child of Frederick Fisher and Gertrude Faust, his wife. She was born in Spring Township, Berks County, 2 February 1792 and died 3 January 1879. On 11 July 1812 she married Emanuel Beck (3). He was born 12 May 1788 and died 24 November 1877. They had nine children, of whom Mary Ann Beck (4) was the third. For further family information see Emanuel Beck (3) in Chapter VII.

MARY ANN BECK (4), a daughter of Emanuel Beck and Barbara Fisher, his wife, was born 18 January 1818, d. 26 August 1888. She married Daniel Koch (5), 24 October 1839. Daniel Koch was born 24 December 1816 and died 7 January 1903. They are buried at Fleetwood, Pa. They had eleven children of whom I, RICHARD H. KOCH (6), am the seventh. For descendants of my father and mother see Daniel Koch (5) in the Koch Family Tree in Chapter III of this book.

RICHARD HENRY KOCH (5), seventh child of Daniel Koch and Mary Ann Beck, his wife. I was born 2 April 1852; m. Annie Susan Phillips, 30 September 1884. She was born at Mt. Hope, Drumore Township, Lancaster County, Pa., 22 April 1862 and died 14 July 1925. She is buried in Charles Baber Cemetery, Pottsville, Pa. We had five children: Leroy Phillips Koch (6), b. 11 July 1885, d. 27 May, 1886; Roscoe Richard Koch (6), b. 17 June 1887; Helen Elizabeth Koch (6), b. 7 July 1889; Marshall McKinley Koch (6), b. 24 September 1891, and Mary Morjorie Koch (6), b. 22 September 1893. More detailed information will be shown under the Koch Family, Chapter III.





ROSCOE RICHARD KOCH (6), b. 17 June 1887; m. Mary Louise Smyth, 30 June 1915. She was born 21 July 1888. They have two children: Richard Henry Koch, II, (7), b. 2 March 1918, and Mary Louise Koch (7), b. 10 January 1924. See further information in Chapter III.

HELEN ELIZABETH KOCH (6), b. 17 July 1889; m. Dr. Joel T. Boone, commander in the United States Navy, 20 June 1914. He was born 29 August 1889. They have one child: Susanne Boone (7), b. 22 May 1920. For further information see Chapter III.

MARSHALL McKINLEY KOCH (6), b. 24 September 1891; m. Mary Elizabeth Von Kaentzel, 21 July 1921. She was born 15 January 1900. They have three children: Richard Collier Koch (7), b. 23 June 1922; Marshall Koch (7), b. 19 February 1924; John Allen Koch (7), b. 19 February 1924. For further information see Koch Family Tree, Chapter III.

MARY MARJORIE KOCH (6), b. 22 September 1893; m. John Parke Hood, 2nd, 8 August 1917. He was born 21 April 1893. They have two children: John Parke Hood, 3rd, (7), b. 21 February 1919, and Marjorie Hood (7), b. 21 December 1921. For further family information see the Koch Family Tree, Chapter III.





## CHAPTER XI

### THE HAIN FAMILY

In the *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, published in 1935, thirty-nine pages are devoted to The Hain Family. I will therefore refer the reader to that book to find the names of very many of the Hain descendants, and I will content myself to show my own descent from George Hain, the founder of the family in this country.

The grandfather of my mother's mother, Barbara Fisher, was William Fisher, who married Elizabeth Gertrude Hain about 1733. She was a daughter of George Hain and his wife, Veronica. They were among those who arrived in New York in the days of Queen Anne, 1710. The *New York Subsistence List*, which shows the names of Palatine debtors to the British Government for subsistence given either in the city of New York or in the Hudson River settlements, from the landing of the Palatines in 1710 to September, 1712, contains the name of John George Hahn. His family at first consisted of two persons over ten years old and one person under the age of ten years, and in 1712 there were three persons over ten years old and one person under ten years old in the family (Dr. Knittle, 285). So far as the charge for their subsistence was concerned, all persons ten years old and upwards were regarded as adults.

Next, George Hain appears as having taken the oath of allegiance at the mayor's court in Albany on January 3, 1716, where the name appears as Johannes Jury Heyn (MacWethy, 3). The middle name is most likely Jurg, intended for George. Prof. I. Daniel Rupp in his *Thirty*





*Thousand Names of Immigrants* gives the interpretation of names, on page 485, saying:

GEORG, George, a farmer, one who tills the earth; Greek, georgos, Georgios, a husbandman, an agriculturist — occurs strangely spelled, Yerrick, Jerg, Jurg, Yerg.

And Strassburger and Hinke in Volume III, *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*, page 236, say:

GEORG

Geörg, Görg, Gorg, Gerg, Gurg, Jarig\*, Jerich, Jerch, Jerige\*, Jerrick\*, Gerich\*, Jorich, Jörg, Jereck\*, Jerick\*, Yearig\*, Yerg\*, Yorg, Yorick\*.

(St. George, venerated since the Crusades, fest. Apr. 23. Gr. name, the tiller of the earth.)

His name first appears (as John George Hain) in Ulster County, New York, where on June 6, 1717, his son, John, was baptized in the Old Dutch Reformed Church (*History of Hain's Church*, 159). At the time of the baptism of that child, George Hain lived with other Palatines in the Schoharie valley in the Province of New York, where they were generally much dissatisfied with their lot. Sir William Keith was the Governor of New York and for a time was also Lieutenant Governor of the Province of Pennsylvania. Charles Berwine Montgomery, in Notes on the Tulpehocken Lands (Volume I, No. IV, page 118, *The Historical Review of Berks County*), shows by a deposition of Godfrey Fiddler, dated October 6, 1726, that when Sir William Keith was at Albany in 1722, George Haine and another person, who had been appointed by the Palatines for the purpose, applied to Governor Keith "for encouragement to them to remove from thence to Pennsylvania," and that Hain and his companions returned to the Palatines who had sent them and told them that "Sir William Keith had given encouragement for forty or fifty families to remove from thence to settle





in Pennsylvania. That they to the number of sixteen families did thereupon remove into this Province, some of them making a stop on the Susquehanna River near Sawhatara & the rest sat down at Tulpehocken." But, "Upon information given Sir William Keith of their being settled in the two places he sent them orders to make their settlements near together that they might thereby give less uneasiness to the Indians." Fidler further deposed that before Keith went to Albany Hans Lawyer of the Palatines being at Philadelphia applied to Keith for a tract of land for his countrymen to settle, and that Keith gave Lawyer leave to search for a convenient tract of land, and that Lawyer then took four of his countrymen, made search in Pennsylvania and "found out the place called Turpehocken where" the Palatines settled. Mr. Montgomery quotes a letter by James Mitchell of Donegal, who wrote to James Logan on May 13, 1723, in which he said ". . . there is fifteen families of Dutch from Albany & are now settling upp Swattarra."

Notwithstanding the fact that George Hain had been a prime mover for a change of location of the Palatines as early as 1722, and the removal of a number of them as early as 1723, there is no evidence to show that George Hain moved at that time; and I think he did not move until about 1729. In Chapter VIII on The Lauk Family I stated my belief that thirty-three families moved in 1723, and that the next party moved about 1729, although it is possible that more parties came down from the Schoharie valley and settled in what are now parts of Lebanon and Berks County. Hain settled east of what are known as the Tulpehocken settlement. He settled in the water-shed of the Cacusi Creek which empties into the Tulpehocken Creek east of where the Tulpehocken settlement was. He took out a warrant for four hundred acres of land there on the 1st of July, 1735. His name





does not appear on the petition in the Court of Quarter Sessions in September, 1727, for the building of a road from Tulpehocken to Oley, although that road did go through the country where Hain settled. Hain became the owner of many acres of land. By his will, dated November 17, 1743, and probated April 8, 1746, he devised to certain of his children lands aggregating twelve hundred and sixty-four acres in one of the finest farming sections in Pennsylvania. He omitted some of his children so far as devisees of land are concerned, and I think it was because he probably had helped those other children to acquire land before he made his will. St. John's Reformed Church was established about 1735, and George Hain donated to the congregation four acres of land for the purpose. That is why it is sometimes best known as Hain's church. It is beautifully located on a hill where it commands a fine view of the surrounding country. The first church was built of logs, and in 1766 a new church was built of stone near the location of the log church. Over the main entrance is a red sandstone slab about three feet long, two feet wide and four inches thick. It was painted white and upon it was put an appropriate German inscription, the English of which was:

"All who here go in and out  
Should be subject to God and the King."

But after the Revolutionary War began the congregation was no longer willing to be subject to the king, and the building committee ordered the words "and the King" be removed from the inscription. They were promptly removed.

In 1844 the church was remodeled, the brick floor was taken up and reduced to sand, which was used for a plaster on the outside of the church so as to give the walls a brick imitation. In the churchyard stands a very





fine granite monument in memory of George Hain. In the course of time the acreage for burial purposes has been increased so that the congregation now owns forty acres and eighty-eight perches of land. The congregation has a membership of over twelve hundred. The increase of membership necessitated the enlargement of the old church, but, as far as possible, the old walls, which are three feet thick, were retained. In 1878 the church was enlarged by a new addition on the south side, giving the church dimensions of 50 feet by 82½ feet, and so it has remained for the last sixty years.

In his will George Hain names his wife and nine children, but in the family tree as it appears on page 161 of the *History of the Church* in 1935, the names of ten children appear, the youngest being Joseph, who is supposed to have lived with the Indians and whose name does not appear in the will. In the devises of his lands he named only six children in the will, and he gave to the other three, Annie Sibilla, Peter, and John George, only one shilling apiece. He had undoubtedly given each of those children a substantial amount before he made his will. It is said that he owned over seventeen hundred acres of land.

I will copy the names of his children as they appear on page 161 of said church history:

George and Veronica Hain had ten children:

- (A) Anna Sabilla Hain, married Jacob Freymeyer. .
- (B) Elizabeth Gertrude Hain, married William Fisher. (See Chapter X in this book on 'The Fisher Family.)
- (C) John Christian Hain, married Maria Barbara ———.
- (D) Peter Hain, married Barbara Weiss.
- (E) John George Hain, married Elizabeth ———.
- (F) John Adam Hain married Magdalena Heckert.
- (G) John Frederick Hain, married Anna Elizabeth ———.
- (H) John Henry Hain, married Anna Christina ———.
- (I) John Casper Hain, married Catherine Laucks.
- (J) Joseph Hain. Supposed to have lived with the Indians.





The child of George Hain from whom I am a descendant was the second one mentioned in the above list of George Hain's children, namely: Elizabeth Gertrude Hain. She was the wife of William Fisher. She was born April 11, 1711, in a settlement on the Hudson River. One of their sons, Frederick Fisher, married Gertrude Faust, and their daughter, Barbara Fisher, married Emanuel Beck, whose daughter, Mary Ann Beck, married my father, Daniel Koch. I am therefore of the sixth generation in the Hain line, taking George Hain as the first generation in America. As Chapters III, VII, VIII, X, and XI show enough in my line of descent from George Hain, I need not put a family tree at the end of this chapter, but I may say that I will cast a stone at nobody for fear of striking a distant relative. My relatives certainly make a legion, and among them can be found individuals in every one of my ten family lines whose lives have been an honor to the communities where they were spent.

If any reader desires to see The Hain Family Tree, I refer him to Chapter 16 in the *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, published in 1935, where he will find thirty-nine very interesting pages devoted to this subject.





## CHAPTER XII

### THE FAUST FAMILY

The maiden name of my mother's maternal grandmother was Gertrude Faust, who was born in this country February 5, 1751, and died October 31, 1827. She married Frederick Fisher on May 18, 1775, and one of their daughters, Barbara Fisher, who was born February 2, 1792, became the wife of Emanuel Beck on July 11, 1812, and one of the latter couple's daughters, Mary Ann Beck, who was born February 28, 1818, married my father, Daniel Koch, on October 24, 1839. Therefore, one of my ancestral stocks in this country was named Faust.

From two conversations that I had with my grandfather and grandmother Beck in 1874 and 1876, and of which I made brief lead-pencil notes at those times, I learned from grandmother Beck that the father and grandfather of Gertrude Faust came from Germany; that Gertrude Faust's father lived about one hundred years; that Frederick Fisher was in the Revolutionary War; that grandmother Beck was born in that part of Cumru Township which is now Spring Township, Berks County, February 2, 1792, and that she married Emanuel Beck, July 11, 1812, when he was twenty-four years old.

Frederick Fisher, who married Gertrude Faust, was born and raised in Heidelberg Township. Cumru Township was south of and adjoining Heidelberg Township. In those days young men and women generally got their spouses in the same neighborhood; they did not live as far apart as London and Baltimore, nor did their love affairs entail the loss of a king's crown. Frederick Fisher's mother was a daughter of George Hain, who





was the donor of the land where St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church and cemetery are, near the borough of Wernersville, Pennsylvania, and when I examined the printed records of that church, I found Gertrude Faust mentioned as sponsor at the baptism on three separate occasions of as many children before her marriage, the first being on November 6, 1771. I therefore felt sure that she and Frederick Fisher did not live many miles apart. In my conversations with my grandmother Beck I did not note the Christian name of either Gertrude Faust's father or grandfather, but I have a very distinct recollection of hearing the name "Andony Faust" mentioned at home in conversation between my father and mother. One such occasion was about 1879 or 1880, when my father spoke to my mother and said something about "Alt Andony Faust." The conversation was in Pennsylvania German, their native tongue, in which they generally spoke to each other. The occasion just referred to was, I think, after my mother's father and mother had passed on at the ripe old ages of over eighty-nine and eighty-six, respectively, and the subject of the conversation was very likely longevity in my mother's family. I never knew of an Anthony Faust in any neighborhood where my parents lived in my lifetime, namely: Middleport, Auburn, Monocacy, and Fleetwood. I therefore concluded that an Anthony Faust had existed at some time in the family relationship of my father or mother. Less than a year ago, without letting her know my purpose, I asked my sister, Sarah (who is two years and a week older than I am) whether she ever heard the name Anthony Faust mentioned at home, and she instantly replied, "Yes; that name is familiar, but I did not know him." Nor did she recall in what connection the name had been used, but we agreed that such references apparently concerned only family matters and not business affairs. That theory induced the belief that a person by





the name of Anthony Faust had come to the Province of Pennsylvania at some time prior to the birth of Gertrude Faust in 1751, and three volumes of *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*, by Strassburger and Hinke, support that theory most satisfactorily. They show the names of the immigrants who arrived from Continental Europe between 1727 and 1808, but the name of only one of them approximates Anthony Faust. That one is Anton Faust, who arrived at Philadelphia in the ship *Francis and Elizabeth* from Rotterdam, September 21, 1742. On the same ship came also John George Faust and Peter Faust. The latter two could not write their names, and, by their mark, signed both the oath of allegiance and the oath of abjuration. Anton Faust could write his name. It is found so written by himself on the oath of adjuration, but he spelled Faust with a small "f." The sheet on which his name was written under the oath of allegiance has been lost. The entire signature of his name exactly as it appears is very important to remember when trying to trace his course and final settlement in this country, for that form of spelling and writing occurs only when done by himself. Nowhere is such spelling as his own on the lists of taxables, in church records, etc. In such records it generally appears as Anthony Faust, although the spelling varies somewhat.

When I found that those three Fausts had come here on the same ship in 1742, I opined at once that as Anton could write his name he was the son of one of the other two who could not write, and that, if such were the fact, the father and the son finally settled somewhere not far apart on the land of Penn's primeval forests.

Lists of taxables among early settlers are a great help to genealogists, but variations in spelling on such lists, as well as on church records, must be duly considered. English-speaking assessors put down the name as Anthony instead of Anton, and church records also show





variations in spelling the name. I found such to be the case in this instance.

Knowing that Gertrude Faust and Frederick Fisher were reared in Berks County, Pennsylvania, I thoroughly examined the lists of resident taxables from the time the first assessment was made in that county in 1753 up to at least 1790 and found Peter Faust and Anthony Faust (but no Anton) on all the existing lists for all of that long period in the township of Heidelberg. Up to 1753 fifteen Fausts had arrived at the port of Philadelphia, but among them was only one Anton Faust, and no Anthony Faust. And no other Anthony Faust was taxed anywhere in Berks County until 1771, when that name appeared for the first time on the list for Bern Township, and there continued to be taxed. I looked only up to 1790. A John Faust and a Philip Faust were taxed in Bern Township for many years beginning with 1753, and the Anthony Faust there taxed after 1771 had, in all probability, his parentage there. I find that the will of an Anthony Faust, dated January 6, 1790, was probated November 14, 1807, and that at the time of his death the testator was a resident of Bern Township, whereas the Orphans' Court records in Berks County show that another Anthony Faust had lived in Heidelberg Township and that letters of administration were taken out for his estate on April 21, 1806. As after 1771 there were at least two Anthony Fausts in the county, identification of them became necessary for the purpose of my investigation.

When the Revolutionary War was in progress every male over eighteen years of age in this State was obliged in the year 1777 or 1778 to take and to subscribe to an oath of allegiance to the United Colonies. The original record of those who took that oath in Berks County is in possession of the Berks County Historical Society. It shows that "Anton faust" took and subscribed said oath





before Henry Christ, who was the justice of the peace for the Reading district, and that "Anthony his X mark Faust" took the oath before Peter Spyker, who was the justice of the peace in the western district. Spyker lived in Tulpehocken Township. There were only ten justices of the peace in the entire county, and those who took the oath of allegiance most likely did so before the justice living nearest to them. However, from the manner of writing his name, we can safely conclude that the "Anton faust" who signed said oath before Henry Christ was the same "Anton faust" who arrived here in 1742. He was the only person who wrote his Christian name "Anton" and spelled his family name with a small "f." But he could undoubtedly do more than simply write his name, for he was the tax collector in Heidelberg Township in 1755.

It may be interesting to say here that most, if not all, of the Fausts who came to Pennsylvania prior to 1790 settled in that part of the State which in 1752 became Berks County. I believe all those Fausts were related, and that later comers always settled in the same general section where the first comers settled, for the census of 1790 shows no Faust family anywhere in Pennsylvania outside of Berks County, and most of them were then in that section of Berks County that lies west of the Schuylkill River and extends from southwest and west of Reading, north and northwest to the top of the Blue Mountain. It is in that section only that Fausts are found on the lists of taxables for at least twenty-five years after Berks County was organized in 1752. That section of the county was then subdivided into five townships, namely: Bern, Tulpehocken, Bethel, Heidelberg, and Cumru. Bern Township was bounded on the east by the Schuylkill River; Tulpehocken was west of Bern, and Bethel was west of Tulpehocken; Heidelberg was south of those three, and south of it was Cumru. But





that section has since then become so subdivided that it now consists of sixteen townships and as many thriving towns, among them being the boroughs of West Reading, Wyomissing, West Lawn, Sinking Spring, Wernersville, Robesonia, and Womelsdorf.

For many years, beginning with 1753, Peter Faust and Anthony Faust were the only people of that family name who were taxed in Heidelberg Township. But in later years the names of two other Peter Fausts, a Henry, a John and a Philip Faust also appear on the lists of taxables in that township. All those men were apparently closely related, because the will of Peter Faust, Senior, of Heidelberg Township, dated December 28, 1788, and probated January 31, 1789, names Peter, Anthony, Henry, John, and Philip as his sons, and makes devises to each of them. So we are sure now that Peter had a son named Anthony. The testator signed his will by his mark; just as he had signed the oath of allegiance and oath of abjuration when he came to America in 1742. And an agreement made between "Anton faust" and "his son Peter Faust" of Heidelberg Township, dated April 27, 1805, and recorded at Reading in Deed Book 27, page 234, on its face, accounts for a third Peter Faust on the tax lists in that township some years before that time.

Now, to further make sure that the Anthony Faust who was taxed for so many years in Heidelberg Township was the "Anton faust" who came here in 1742, let me state that, in addition to the said agreement, two separate deeds which were made by him and his wife, Elizabeth, in the years 1805 and 1806, and recorded at Reading in Deed Book No. 21, respectively, at pages 502 and 370, show that they lived in Heidelberg Township, and that he in each case signed his name "Anton faust." Such things do not happen by mere chance. One of the deeds was to John Faust of the same township, conveying to him over one hundred and eighteen acres





of land in that township, which was part of a tract of two hundred and forty-three acres that Anthony Faust had obtained by a patent dated December 4, 1749. It was evidently the plantation on which he lived. Tax lists show that he was assessed there for taxes on two hundred and forty-three acres of land after Berks County was organized. The other deed was to Peter Faust.

The patent referred to in the deed from Anton Faust to John Faust indicates that Anton Faust apparently lived in Heidelberg Township at least as early as 1749. The will of Peter Faust, Senior, mentions the name of his wife, Anna Maria, and apparently all of his children; his sons being Peter, Henry, Anthony, Philip, and John, and his daughters having been Anna Elizabeth, Anna Barbara, Magdalena, Maria, Catherine, and Christina. The first two daughters were apparently dead, because he made devises to their respective children. As Peter Faust, Senior, did not mention Gertrude as a daughter, we can only conclude that Gertrude was the daughter of Anthony (Anton) Faust, because he is the only other Faust found on the lists of resident taxables in Heidelberg Township in 1753 and for many years subsequent to that. As already stated, the Anthony Faust who lived in Bern Township died there testate in 1807, his will being dated January 6, 1790, and probated November 14, 1807. In it he names his wife, Magdalena, and his children: Leonard, Anthony, Daniel, "defunct" son Philip, Elizabeth, and Catherine; so he had no daughter named Gertrude. He signed his will "Anthony Faust." His son Anthony died in the same township of Bern unmarried but testate in 1810.

I do not know how soon after their arrival here in 1742 Peter Faust and his son, Anthony (Anton), found their way into Heidelberg Township, Berks County, and settled there. Peter Faust obtained a warrant for land in that township when it was part of Lancaster County





in 1746, and the return shows the survey of one hundred acres of land for him on October 28, 1746. In later years he was taxed for one hundred acres in that township in Berks County. One may therefore infer that Peter and Anton were there before Anthony obtained a patent for two hundred and forty-three acres of land in that township in December, 1749.

The records of Hain's church show, in 1747, the baptism of Magdalena Faust, a daughter of Peter Faust and wife, born March 1st of that year, her sponsors being Adam Hain and wife, and also that Anna Maria Faust, the wife of Peter Faust, was sponsor to the baptism of a daughter of Adam Hain and his wife, Anna Magdalena, on January 28, 1750. Such facts tend to show that Peter Faust resided in that section as early as 1747 at least. As the records of that church also contain the name of Anthony Faust, I will note that Anthony (Antonius) Faust and wife were sponsors at the baptism of Elizabeth Grauel, a daughter of Michael Grauel, on March 20, 1754. As children when baptized were generally named after the sponsor of the same sex, we may infer that the name of Anthony Faust's wife was Elizabeth. When "Anton faust" signed the deeds hereinbefore referred to, he was joined in such execution of the papers by his wife, Elizabeth; and when Anthony Faust died intestate in April, 1806, letters of administration were granted to his son, John, because his widow, Elizabeth, renounced her right to them.

When communion was had in Hain's church on Easter Sunday, April 7, 1765, Maria Elizabeth and Susanna Margretha, daughters of Anthony Faust, were among those who were confirmed on that occasion. On August 13, 1786, Antoni Faust was sponsor at the baptism of Anthony, a son of Peter Diehl, and, subsequently to that, Anna Maria Faust was sponsor on two occasions at the baptism of two of Peter Diehl's daughters. Peter Diehl





was a taxable in Heidelberg Township and was probably a son-in-law of Peter Faust.

I have now identified and located to my entire satisfaction, and I think to a certainty, Peter Faust and Anton Faust, respectively, as the grandfather and father of Gertrude Faust, but I have not learned the dates on which they were born or died, although the issues of letters on their estates enable me to approximate the dates of their respective deaths. Neither of them is buried at Hain's church, unless their graves are unmarked, or the inscriptions on their tombstones have become obliterated.

The *History of St. John's (Hain's) Reformed Church*, which was published as the Bicentennial Supplement in 1935, lists thirty-seven tombstones in the cemetery there, which mark the graves of Fausts. But the first-born among them did not come into the world until January 27, 1756, which was long after the immigration of Peter Faust and his son, Anthony. Those men may have been buried privately on their own plantations. That frequently happened in the eighteenth century. I have known of quite a number of such graves, and I have no doubt that, with the change of ownership of the lands, such graves are generally neglected and in the course of time become completely obliterated and forgotten. Some are preserved, however, but very few of them. The grave of the distinguished Conrad Weiser was on his own land within a few rods of his house near Womelsdorf, where it is now cared for by the State of Pennsylvania. Isaac LeFevre and more than thirty of his descendants and their spouses are buried in a private cemetery within a very short distance from the dwelling of the founder of that family near Strasburg in Lancaster County. The Kirby family of Kirbyville in Richmond Township, Berks County, have a private cemetery on the southern side of Route Number 222, between the Half-way House





and the Moselem Hotel. But very few of such private burial grounds are still in a state of preservation.

As the papers on file in the estate of Anthony Faust, one of my ancestors, do not disclose the names of all his children, I must collect them as best I can from the data already mentioned. According to all such data, Anton (Anthony) Faust's children were: John, Peter, Maria Elizabeth, Susanna Margretha, and Gertrude. The fact that the first two girls were admitted to the church on April 17, 1765, inclines me to think that Gertrude, who was born February 5, 1751, was younger than either of her two sisters, or else they were admitted to the church when they were very young.

From the little information that I had by tradition when I started to find the data for this chapter, I proceeded upon the theory that the Christian name of Gertrude Faust's father was Anthony, and when I found that prior to her birth only one Anthony (Anton) Faust had come to America and that he could write his name, while the other two Fausts who had come with him could not write theirs, I concluded that Anton Faust was the most intelligent and the youngest of the three, and that he was a son of one of the other two. My subsequent investigation proved that my theory was entirely correct, and that he was a son of Peter Faust, and I wound up, as if demonstrating a theorem in geometry, by saying to myself, "*Quod erat demonstrandum.*"

Before subjoining The Faust Family Tree, showing the trunk and main branches, I shall give the following additional information that certain church records fortunately contain.

The Rev. John Waldschmidt was in charge of the congregation at Hain's church from the fall of 1757 to the spring of 1771. That church was often also called Cacoosing or Cacusi church because it is located in the basin of the creek so named, which empties into the Tul-





pehocken Creek within two miles of the latter's mouth. The Tulpehocken Creek discharges into the Schuylkill River west of Reading. Reverend Waldschmidt was also for some years in charge of the Reformed church at Egypt in Lehigh County. The records of that church can be seen translated and published in English in Volume 6, of the *Sixth Series, Pennsylvania Archives*. They show that the Reverend Waldschmidt married Magdalena Faust, a daughter of Peter Faust, to Christian Theel, on March 24, 1767; that on November 2, 1768, he married Elizabeth Faust, a daughter of Anthon Faust, to John Yost Stamm, a son of Adam Stamm, and that on June 12, 1769, he had a double wedding in his house, by marrying Elizabeth Faust, a daughter of Peter Faust, to Daniel Maurer, a son of Christofel Maurer, and Henrich Faust, a son of Peter Faust, to Magdalena Weimer, a daughter of Nicolaus Weimer. Those four young couples therefore appear to have made a wedding trip of thirty-five or forty miles. But the minister, I feel sure, misspelled Theel for Diehl, because the lists of resident taxables disclose no person by the name of Theel in either Heidelberg or Cumru Townships, and the records of Hain's church show the baptism of two children of Christian Diehl on March 18, 1787; one was his daughter, Maria Christina Diehl, born March 2, 1787, and the other was his son, John Christian Diehl, born in September, 1783. The Hain's church record also shows baptisms of the other three married couples' children, namely, of John Faust, a son of Henry Faust, on May 14, 1775; of Sussanna Maurer, a daughter of Daniel Maurer, on July 30, 1786, she was born January 21, 1786; of Gertrude Stamm, a daughter of John Yost Stamm, on July 20, 1772; of Anna Maria Stamm, a daughter of John Yost Stamm, April 17, 1774; and of John Stamm, a son of John Yost Stamm, on January 19, 1777. They further show that Daniel Maurer and his wife, Eliza-





beth, were sponsors to the baptisms of two children in 1796 and 1797.

I have not tried to ascertain the names of collateral kindred among the Fausts further than the names of those disclosed in the investigations which were essential for the affirmation or negation of my theory. I can, therefore, supply no more of The Faust Family Tree than the trunk and branches already shown, excepting the descendants of Gertrude Faust, who married Frederick Fisher in 1775 and became one of my great-grandmothers.

The figure in parentheses after the name of each Faust descendant indicates the generation of that Faust descendant in America.

#### THE FAUST FAMILY TREE

PETER FAUST (1), born in Germany, arrived in Philadelphia, 21 September 1742; settled in Heidelberg Township within several years after his arrival. The township was then in Lancaster County; in 1752 it became part of Berks County. He died in that township, testate, in January 1789, and according to his will had had five sons and six daughters, but I do not know the order of their birth. They were: Peter Faust (2), Anthony Faust (2), Henry Faust (2), Philip Faust (2), John Faust (2), Anna Elizabeth Faust (2), Anna Barbara Faust (2), Magdalena Faust (2), Maria Faust (2), Catharine Faust (2) and Christina Faust (2). His will seems to indicate that the first two daughters had died leaving children before Peter Faust made his will. The name of Peter Faust's widow was Anna Maria ———, b. ———d. ———.

ANTHONY FAUST (2), born in Germany; arrived at Philadelphia with his father, Peter Faust, 21 September 1742; within a few years settled in said Heidelberg Township, where he died, intestate apparently, in April 1806. Survived by his widow Elizabeth ——— and at least the following children: John Faust (3), Peter Faust (3), Maria Elizabeth Faust (3), Susanna Margretha Faust (3) and Gertrude Faust (3). Tombstones at Hain's Church mark the graves of two Peter Fausts, one born 1 December 1761, died intestate 28 June 1824, and the other born in 1763, died testate 3 May 1840. Both lived in Heidelberg Township. I feel sure that one was the son of Peter Faust (1), and the other was the son of Anthony Faust (2). The first of these two was survived by his widow, Elizabeth, and nine children: Peter, Elizabeth, Catharine (the wife of Daniel Faust), John, Jacob, Molly (the wife of Samuel Kraemer), Joseph, Daniel, and Anna, a minor above the age of fourteen years. The second Peter Faust was survived by four sons: William, Daniel, Adam, and Isaac, and by two daughters: Sally, and Anna, the wife of Israel Moyer. The wife of the second Peter Faust had been Anna Barbara ———, born 13 January 1768, and died 14 December 1826.

MAGDALENA FAUST (2), a daughter of Peter Faust (1). She was born 1 March 1747; m. Christian Theel (Diehl?), 24 March 1767. Among their children were Maria Christian Diehl, b. 2 March 1781, and John Christian Diehl, b. September 1783. No further information.





HENRY FAUST (2), son of Peter Faust (1), b.———d.———; m. Magdalena Weimer, 12 June 1769. Know of only one child: John Faust (3), baptized 14 May 1775.

ELIZABETH FAUST (2), a daughter of Peter Faust (1), b.———d.———; m. Daniel Maurer, 12 June 1769. Know of only one child, Susanna Maurer (3), b. 21 January 1786. No further information.

MARIA ELIZABETH FAUST (3), a daughter of Anthony Faust (2). She joined Hain's Church, 7 April 1765; m. John Yost Stamm at Egypt, Lehigh County, 2 November 1768, and had with him at least three children, namely: Gertrude Stamm (4), baptized at Hain's Church, 20 July 1772; Anna Maria Stamm, baptized at Hain's Church, 17 April 1774, and John Stamm (4), baptized at Hain's Church, 19 January 1777. No further information.

GERTRUDE FAUST (3), a daughter of Anthony Faust (2). She was born 5 February 1751, d. 31 October 1827; m. 18 May 1775, Frederick Fisher (2), b. 5 May 1751, d. 17 October 1828. They lived in what is now Spring Township, Berks County, where he was a farmer and a blacksmith. They had the following children: John Fisher (4), Peter Fisher (4), William Fisher (4), Eva Fisher (4), Catharine Fisher (4), John Fisher (4). The first John Fisher died in infancy, and I know of other instances in which a second child with the same name occurs in a family, where the first one had died in infancy. Barbara Fisher (4) and Johnathan Fisher (4). For further information, respecting most of those children see the Family Trees of Fisher and Beck in the appropriate chapters. But I shall, nevertheless, show here my own descent from the Fausts.

BARBARA FISHER (4). She was a daughter of Gertrude Faust (3) and Frederick Fisher (2). She was born in what is now Spring Township, Berks County, 2 February 1792, d. 3 January 1879; m. Emanuel Beck (3), 11 July 1812. He was born 12 May 1788, d. 24 November 1877. They had nine children, of whom Mary Ann Beck (5) was the third, and after her marriage to Daniel Koch, 24 October 1839, became my mother. For further information respecting the other eight children see the Beck Family Tree in Chapter VII.

MARY ANN BECK (5), a daughter of Barbara Fisher (4) and Emanuel Beck (3). She was born 28 January 1818, in Bern Township, Berks County; died at Fleetwood, Pa., 26 August 1888; m. Daniel Koch (5), 24 October 1839, with whom she had eleven children, of whom Richard H. Koch (6) was the seventh. For information respecting the other ten children see the Koch Family Tree in Chapter III.

RICHARD HENRY KOCH (6), son of Mary Ann Beck (5) and Daniel Koch (5). Born at Middleport, Schuylkill County, Pa., 2 April 1852; 30 September 1884, m. Annie Susan Phillips of Quarryville, Pa., b. 22 April 1862, d. 14 July 1925. Five children: Leroy Phillips Koch (7), b. 11 July 1885, d. 27 May 1886; Roscoe Richard Koch (7), b. 17 June 1887; Helen Elizabeth Koch (7), b. 17 July 1889; Marshall McKinley Koch (7), b. 24 September 1891; Mary Marjorie Koch (7), b. 22 September 1893; so their children are of the eighth generation in the Faust line of descent. For further information respecting my children and grandchildren see the Family Tree at the end of Chapter III.





## CHAPTER XIII

### MY DEPARTED WIFE

Annie Susan Phillips was born at Mount Hope, Lancaster County, Pennsylvania, April 22, 1862. Her father was William H. Phillips, whose wife before her marriage was Elizabeth LeFevre. They had two children; Ella N., the first one, died March 12, 1868.

William H. Phillips was born in Lancaster County, October 21, 1840. His education was obtained in the common schools. When the Civil War broke out in 1861, he recruited most members for a company in his community and became its captain. It was Company C, in the One Hundred and Thirty-fifth Regiment, Pennsylvania Volunteers. It is said that he was then the youngest captain in Pennsylvania. Upon the expiration of his term of enlistment he became captain of Company G in the Twenty-first Pennsylvania Cavalry. That company was organized at Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, and was mustered into the United States service on February 12, 1864. The regiment became part of the Army of the Potomac, and, at the battle of Cold Harbor on June 3, 1864, Captain Phillips were severely wounded. Upon his recovery he rejoined his company and was with it until it was mustered out of service on July 5, 1865. His wound still gave him some trouble. He finally got sick and died on January 4, 1866, and was buried in the Mount Hope Cemetery in Drumore Township, Lancaster County. Of course, I never knew him, but back in the 1880's a man who had been an officer in the same regiment and knew Captain Phillips well told me that "He was a very bright, brave and popular officer."







MY WIFE  
ANNIE SUSAN PHILLIPS KOCH  
Picture taken February, 1915





An interesting incident respecting Captain Phillips' case shows how big-hearted was Abraham Lincoln. Some time after her husband was wounded, Mrs. Phillips went to Washington, called at the White House, asked to see President Lincoln and was granted an interview. She was received most kindly; she asked the President for permission to see her wounded husband in the hospital where he was confined and for permission to take him along home with her, and that great, good man saw that both of her requests were granted. She returned home with Captain Phillips, where he was properly cared for.

Unfortunately, I did not have in mind writing a book under the title of this one when my wife and her mother were alive, otherwise I think I would have learned from her mother and noted data respecting Captain Phillips and his ancestors. I met his mother only once that I can recall, back in the 1880's, but our conversation was brief and only general. She is buried in the same cemetery where he is buried. I understand he was of English descent. His mother, Ann Phillips, was born December 8, 1821, and died November 5, 1914.

Some time after Captain Phillips died, his widow went to Quarryville and there lived with her father, Christian LeFevre, and his wife, and after Mrs. LeFevre died, Mrs. Phillips came to live with me and my wife in Pottsville. That was in 1891, and she lived with us until she died on the 13th day of April, 1925. Her father was a descendant of Isaac LeFevre, a Huguenot, who came to America in the days of Queen Anne. The maiden name of the wife of Christian LeFevre was Susanna Groff. I knew her well; she was a very dear, old woman. Both she and her husband are buried at Mount Hope.

Annie Susan Phillips attended common schools where she lived until she was over fourteen years old, and in the fall term of 1876 became a student in the Keystone State Normal School at Kutztown, where she graduated





with second honor in her class in June, 1879. Her class had eighteen members. After graduation she taught in common schools for five seasons. At the normal school (now teacher's college) she recited to me with her class in mental arithmetic, written arithmetic, algebra, geometry and civil government. After her graduation we corresponded regularly, and I went to see her occasionally. I came to Pottsville in August, 1879, and, after reading law twenty months, was admitted to the bar, and when I found that my practice warranted my marriage, I proposed marriage in April, 1884, and we were joined in wedlock on the 30th of the following September. We boarded six months, and in April, 1885, started house-keeping. We had five children who came along on an average of a little over two years. Our married life was very happy. I let her run the house to suit herself, and I ran the office. She understood that my clients' affairs were not for disclosure to her, and she, therefore, never inquired about them. She and I never quarrelled. Her passing away at the age of sixty-three was due to heart trouble, of which she had been a victim for many years, but she was always cheerful and was deservedly popular with all the people who knew her best, both old and young. She was of a very charitable disposition, and I let her exercise it without any interference on my part. She died on the 14th of July, 1925. So I lost both her and her good mother within a period of three months and a day and was left alone, because my children, excepting the first one who died within a year, were all married and had families of their own. I then had Mary Marjorie, my youngest one, bring her family to my house until the house where she lived could be enlarged. Then I took up my quarters with her family near the end of January, 1926.

In his *Events Down Lancaster Way*, published in the *Philadelphia Inquirer* on July 17, 1925, George W. Hen-





sel, Jr., who in boyhood had attended Annie S. Phillips' school, had this to say about her: "Mrs. Annie Phillips Koch, wife of Judge Richard H. Koch, of Pottsville; whose death occurred on Wednesday, was a child of Lancaster county and one of the fairest daughters that ever left the 'Garden Spot.' Graduating at Kutztown Normal School, where she first met her future husband, she taught school for several years at Quarryville, and in that vicinity where she was best known.

"She was one of the type of teachers that not only had a wonderful faculty of imparting knowledge, but she moulded the character of her pupils, and left a deep impression on every mind she developed. Retaining the beauty of her youth, and the charming disposition of girlhood, with a graciousness of manner that endeared her to every one, she was indeed a noble wife, a loving mother and a queen in her household.

"Her death is a great sorrow, not only to the bereaved family, but to countless numbers of friends, verily—none knew her but to love her. None named her but to praise."

As I have tried to tell something about thirty of my own ancestors, I will now try to tell something of my wife's paternal ancestors on her mother's side.

Her mother was born in Lancaster County on the 15th of October, 1836. She was of French extraction on her father's side. The name of LeFevre (variously spelled) has been well known in France for centuries. No "History of France" would be complete without it.

The immigrant French ancestors of Christian LeFevre fled from France into the Palatinate before coming to America. The story of religious persecution in France is very pathetic, and I will briefly note some facts respecting it.

After the crucifixion of Jesus and after the Apostolic Age and the establishment of the Roman Catholic





Church, differences still existed between certain followers of the Crucified One. Some were unwilling to submit to the control, creeds and practices of the Roman Catholic Church and remained what were sometimes called Primitive Christians, in different parts of Europe. This was especially true in France where, for several centuries, they were called Vaudois in that part of France that embraces the lower valley of the River Rhone and extends westward to the Pyrenees and northward to Toulouse. They got their name from Peter Valdo (or Waldo), a rich merchant of Lyons, who gave up his business and translated the Bible from the Latin into the language of the people, in the latter part of the twelfth century, and spent the balance of his life in preaching. But when Innocent III became Pope (1198-1216) he concluded that *his* church should dominate in temporal as well as in spiritual affairs, wherever it existed, and that all must cooperate with him. The supremacy of the church reached its highest position during his papacy, and he resolved upon the extinction of heresy everywhere within his ecclesiastical domain. No compromise with heretics was permitted; they were to be ruthlessly destroyed. He said: "To keep faith with heretics is an offense against the faith." So he directed his fanatical co-religionists to "exterminate the whole pestilential race." And when Beziers was taken by the Pope's crusaders in July, 1209, no distinction was made between old and young, and women and babes at their breasts. On that occasion when Arnold Amalric, abbot of Citeaux, was asked by some of his companions in arms how the Romanist citizens were to be distinguished from the Vaudois, he replied, "Kill them all: God will well know his own." And only one escaped with his life. The estimates of those killed on that day vary by different historians from fifteen thousand to sixty thousand persons. In July, 1210, after being besieged in the Castle





of Minerva for seven weeks, the Vaudois were compelled to capitulate for want of water; and it was agreed that those Vaudois who were converted to the Catholic Faith might quit the castle alone, but when the agreement was read in the council of war, that term of the agreement was opposed, a nobleman among the besiegers violently declaring: "the Pilgrims would never submit to this because it was not to convert heretics or to show mercy to them, but to kill them, that they had taken up the Cross." And those poor people were destroyed by being burned to death upon piled-up enormous masses of dry wood. That was more than three hundred years before Martin Luther became the leader of the Reformation. The horrible details of the persecution of the Huguenots can be found in a *History of the Huguenots*, by W. Carlos Martyn, published by the American Tract Society, in 1866. Every well-informed person knows what happened after the great Reformation began and will recall the massacre of many thousands of Huguenots in Paris on the night of St. Bartholmew in August, 1572.

After the death of the Prince of Conde in 1569 the White-Plumed Henry of Navarra became the chief defender of the Primitive Christians (then called Huguenots) in southern France and so continued until he became the king of France in 1589, when he abjured his Protestantism and became a Roman Catholic in order to be invested with the Crown of France as its rightful heir. Of course, he continued to have sympathy with those whom he knew so well. He admired them for their austere virtues and the purity of their lives, and, on April 13, 1598, made his famous Edict of Nantes, which gave them equal political rights and also religious freedom in certain parts of France. But in 1610 he was cruelly assassinated by a Catholic fanatic because he had treated the non-conformists charitably by his Edict of Nantes twelve years before that. However, his son and





successor, Louis XIII, let the Edict stand until, under his chief minister, Cardinal Richelieu, the political rights of the Huguenots were annulled in 1628. Before that time the name of all Protestants in France had become Huguenots, a name whose origin and meaning are unknown. It had been used as a political nickname in Switzerland before it was applied to the Protestants in France. Louis XIII, after his ascension to the throne, had an investigation made of the Huguenots and found no fault with them. He said that they were better Christians than he was himself. He said: "Let them remain unmolested." But Louis XIV was of a different state of mind; he was a son of Louis XIII and reigned from 1643 to 1715. He was surnamed "LeGrand—the Great." Just as, in our own day, we have certain men in the world who would like to control all of it, so Louis XIV, in his day, desired to establish a French universal monarchy. The presence of Protestantism was objectionable to him and he got it into his head that all Huguenots should be exterminated. So he started with the revocation of the Edict of Nantes on the 22nd of October, 1685, and began the wholesale murder of Huguenots. There is no telling how many Huguenots were murdered during his reign, but it is said that about three hundred thousand escaped by fleeing into Germany and other countries of Europe.

Among those who found such refuge in Germany were Daniel Fuehre (also variously spelled Ferie, Fiere, Ferrie, and Verree, but finally Ferree, which I shall use hereafter), Maria, his wife, and six single children, namely: Daniel, Philip, John, Catharine, Mary, and Jane. He was a silk-weaver and a Calvinist who had lived not far from the Rhine. When the murder of the Huguenots began, he and his family abandoned his property, taking only a few trifles and his money with them, and located near Strasburg in Germany, where they





lived for some years. As they were about to flee from France they were joined by Isaac LeFevre, a young man who said that nearly all of his father's family had been murdered by the soldiers of the French king. He remained with the Ferree family and married their daughter, Catharine. The spelling of his surname varies greatly. Guizot, in his *History of France*, when referring to that profound professor in the University of Paris whose name is coupled with the Reformation in France, in the first half of the sixteenth century, gives the name of the professor as Jacques Lefevre (Vol. 3, Chapter XXX).

Of Professor Jacques Lefevre, Erasmus said: "Among many thousands of men, you will not find a man of higher integrity and more versed in polite letters," and Zwingle wrote: "He is perfectly open and good: he argues, he sings, he plays, and he laughs with me at the follies of the world." (Guizot, Vol. 3, p. 144.) But when Guizot refers to one of Napoleon's marshalls, he spells it Lefebvre (Vol. 7, Chapter IX). On page 315 in Volume X of the *American Encyclopaedia*, published by D. Appleton & Company in 1875, the name appears thus: "L E F E V R E (Called also Favre, Faivre, Faber)." Professor I. Daniel Rupp, in his book of *Thirty Thousand Names of Immigrants*, at page 440, puts the name, Feber (LeFever).

Mr. George N. LeFevre, a scholarly gentleman who lives near Strasburg in Lancaster County, and is very well informed respecting Isaac LeFevre, his ancestors, and descendants, wrote me that in one single deed in the recorder's office in Lancaster, he found the family name written in six different ways. So far as I have become personally acquainted with people of that surname, the spelling of the name has not varied from LeFevre—and I shall adopt that form.





Daniel Fuehre (Ferree) died in Germany and, in 1708 his widow went to London with her family and her son-in-law, Isaac Feber (LeFevre), who was married to her daughter, Catharine. Upon the death of her husband she assumed her maiden name, which I find was variously spelled. For much of my information I am indebted to Rupp's *History of Lancaster County*, published in 1844, in which he gives valuable facts respecting the Ferree's and LeFevres.

On page 93 he gives, respecting Mrs. Ferree, the translation of a certificate reading as follows:

#### TRANSLATION

Whereas Maria, Daniel Fuehre's (Feries') widow, and her son Daniel Ferie with his wife and other six single children, in view of improving their condition and in furtherance of their prosperity, purpose to emigrate from Steinweiler in the Mayoralty of Bittigheim, High Bailiwick Germersheim, via Holland and England, to the island of Pennsylvania, to reside there, they have requested an accredited certificate that they left the town of Steinweiler with the knowledge of the proper authorities, and have departed themselves peaceably and without cause for censure, and are indebted to no one, and not subject to vassalage, being duly solicited, it has been thought proper to grant their petition, declaring that the above named persons are not moving away clandestinely — that during the time their father, the widow and children resided in this place they behaved themselves piously and honestly — that it would have been highly gratifying to us to see them remain among us — that they are not subject to bodily bondage, the mayoralty not being subject to vassalage — they have also paid for their permission to emigrate; Mr. Fischer, the mayor of Steinweiler being expressly interrogated, it has been ascertained that they are not liable for any debts. In witness whereof, I have, in the absence of the counsellor of the Palatinate, &c., signed these presents, gave the same to the persons who intended to emigrate. Dated Bittigheim, March 10th, 1708.

J. P. DIETRICH, Court Clerk.

L. S.





And page 95 of the same history has this:

TRANSLATION

We, the Pastor, Elders and Deacons of the Reformed Walloon Church of Pelican, in the Lower Palatinate, having been requested by the Honorable Daniel Firre, his wife Anna Maria Leininger and their children Andrew and John Firre, to grant them a testimonial of their life and religion, do certify and attest that they have always made profession of the pure Reformed religion, frequented our sacred assemblies, and have partaken of the supper of the Lord with the other members of the faith: in addition to which they have always conducted themselves uprightly without having given any cause for scandal, that has come to our knowledge; being now on their departure to settle elsewhere, we commend them to the protection of God, and to the kindness of all our brethern in the Lord Christ. In witness of which we have signed this present testimonial, with our signatures and usual marks. Done at Pelican in our consistory, the 10th of May, 1708.

MICHAEL MEESSAKOP,  
J. ROMAN, Pastor and Inspector,  
PETER SSCHARLET,  
JAMES BAILLEAUX, Deacon,  
JOHN BAPTIST LAPLACE, Deacon.

The undernamed children, to wit: Andrew and John Firre were baptized, the first in the church of Steinweiler in the year 1701, on the 28th of September: his sponsors were Andrew Leininger and his wife Margaret Leininger: the other, to wit: John was baptized in the church of Rhorbac, in the year 1703, on the 8th of February: the sponsors were Abraham Ptillion and Judith Miller, both of Steinweiler.

Foot note says:

It was customary among the Reformed to procure a Church Certificate before leaving their Vaterland.

I call the reader's attention to the various spellings of the surname Ferree in those two certificates. Madame Ferree's name appears as Fuchre, while that of her son, Daniel, is Ferie in the first certificate and Firre in the second. The certificates were given as testimonials because





Madame Ferree and her family intended to emigrate "via Holland and England to the island of Pennsylvania."

The Ferree family are of the nobility in France. According to a short history of the family, as it appears in French and Latin on pages 357, 358, and 359 in Volume II of the *Nobility of Normandy*, it became such in 1265, in Lower Normandy, and Robert Ferree was its founder. The coat of arms is there described, but it is not necessary to quote here the language concerning it, because, in this country, we have no distinguishing marks. We are supposed to be equal in our rank as citizens, although we may differ greatly in our qualifications and accomplishments in both private and public life.

And the LeFevre family was not without a coat-of-arms. George N. LeFevre, to whom I have already referred, wrote me that R. G. LeFevre, a genealogist of Cleveland, Ohio, investigated the matter and found that in 1543 a coat-of-arms was registered in France for Wengen LeFevre, who was born in 1510. My correspondent said that "The coat-of-arms of old families were quite plain in design, while later ones are more elaborate and generally include a motto." He sent me "an exact copy of the design registered in 1543, according to a photostat positive of the original register. The French description, translated is: 'Blue field. Three crosses re-crossed of gold, so constructed as to permit being driven: Stag head proper of silver'." He secured a certificate in which "the exact size, proportion and coloring are set forth" and sent me a copy of the coat-of-arms.

Madame Ferree was a woman of great force of character. After her arrival in London she employed a man to show her where William Penn lived. Presently William Penn came driving along in his carriage. The man told her and pointed him out and she called to him in the street. He stopped, and, as he could speak French





well, they had a short chat which pleased William Penn so much that he invited her into his carriage and took her home with him. His delight in her acquaintanceship caused him to introduce her to Queen Anne the next day, and Queen Anne took such an interest in her that lodgings were provided for her near Kensington (where the Queen resided) until she was ready to sail for America. In that year, 1708, the Rev. Joshua Kocherthal had also come from the Palatinate to London with a view of sailing to America. His party, including himself and his family, numbered forty-one persons. The newly appointed governor of New York, Francis Lovelace, sailed in October in the ship *Globe*, and the Kocherthal and Ferree parties were on the same ship which arrived at New York late in December. Queen Anne had, by letters patent, dated August 21, 1708, made all of both parties subjects of Great Britain before they sailed. In the letters patent the name of Madame Ferree appears as Mary Wemarin. They remained in New York for some time and then went up the Hudson River early in 1709 and located at Esopus, now Kingston, New York. The Dutch first settled in the State of New York by establishing a trading post on Manhattan Island, in 1614, and from thence forward settlements were made by the Dutch on Long Island and up the Hudson River. In 1660 a number of Huguenots came from France to New York and settled at various places, twelve of them locating at, and founding, Esopus. Among those twelve were Andries Lefevre and Simon Lefevre (Rupp, 101). And Michael Ferree also was settled there as early as 1663 (Stapleton, 103). I feel sure the two Lefevres and the one Ferree who had settled at Esopus about 1660 were relatives of the Ferrees and the Isaac Lefevre who moved there in 1709, and such relationship may account for Madame Ferree's group going to Esopus soon after its





arrival in New York. Stapleton has no doubt of blood relationship of those people (103).

Rupp, in his *Thirty Thousand Names of Immigrants*, listed Madame Ferree as Maria Wemarin, widow, which was her maiden name. Underneath her name is that of her son-in-law, Isaac Feber (Lefever). Next, Rupp names Daniel Fiero (page 440). He was a son of Madame Ferree, and his age is given as thirty-two years while that of his mother is put down at only thirty-seven. Her age is very evidently a mistake. She was much older than that, for it is said that when she died in 1716 she died at an advanced age.

After residing at Esopus over a year, Madame Ferree, her children, grandchildren and son-in-law, Isaac LeFevre, went to Philadelphia in 1710. She had negotiated with Martin Kendig for the purchase of land in Pennsylvania and, at her request, he conveyed two thousand acres of land in the valley of the Pequea Creek, in 1712, for which land he had obtained a warrant dated October 10, 1710. As they cast much light upon that transaction, I will here quote two footnotes from Rupp's *History of Lancaster County*:

William Penn, Proprietor, &c.—Whereas my late commissioners of property, by a warrant bearing date the 10th October, 1710, granted unto John Rudolph Bundley, Hans Herr, and divers other Germans, late inhabitants in or near the Palatinate of the Rhine, 10,000 acres of land, to be laid easterly of Conestogo, and near the head of Pequea Creek, in this province, by virtue of which warrant there was surveyed and subdivided, at the instance of the said Martin Kendig, for the use of Daniel Ferree and Isaac LeFevre, late of Steinmeister, in the Palatinate of the Rhine, a certain tract of land, situated and bounded by lands of Thomas Story, &c., two thousand acres. Recorded July 12th, 1712. (Page 85.)

At a meeting of the commissioners Sept. 10, 1712 — the late commissioners having granted 10,000 acres of land to the Palatines, by their warrant dated 6th, 8th, 1710, in pursuance thereof there was laid out to Martin Kendig, besides the 2,000 acres already





confirmed and paid for, the like quantity of 2,000 acres, towards Susquehanna, of which the General Surveyor has made a return. The said Martin Kendig now appearing desirous that the said land may be granted and confirmed to Maria Warenbuer, for whom the same was taken up, or intended, and who is to pay the consideration of it. But upon further consideration of the matter, it is agreed among themselves that the said land shall be confirmed to Daniel Fierre and Isaac Lefevre, two of the said widow's sons, and the consideration money, viz: £ 140 at £ 7 per 100 acres, by agreement having been for some time due, but is not to be paid down in one sum. 'Tis agreed that they shall only pay £ 10 for interest, that is £ 150 for the whole. (Isaac LeFevre was her son-in-law, not her son.) (Pages 90-91.)

The reader will note that Mrs. Ferree's name appears as Maria Warenbuer and the name of her son as Daniel Ferree on the first footnote and as Daniel Fierre on the second footnote, while that of her son-in-law appears as Isaac Lefevre on both footnotes.

They all settled on that land in 1712. At that time there were only a few Europeans living within the present confines of Lancaster County. There were five Indian tribes in the southern part of Lancaster County, namely: Conestoga, Pequea, Mingoe, Martock, and Shawanese, from whom the white settlers had nothing to fear. When Madame Ferree and her group settled in Lancaster County in 1712, she was met by Chief Beaver who very soon introduced her to King Tanawa and he became friendly with her and all of her group. King Tanawa was known to William Penn and was always friendly with Penn's colonists.

Several years before the coming of the Ferree group into Lancaster County, a Swedish minister from Delaware appeared among the Indians, and, by the help of an interpreter, worked for their conversion to Christianity. As I refer to the simple-minded honesty of the Indians in Chapter I and speak of their belief in the Great Spirit, I beg to submit, for the reader's thought,





a speech that one of the Indian chief's made after a sermon by that missionary at Conestoga in 1710. The minister was so impressed with the Indian's speech and so puzzled by the questions that he asked, that he translated both his sermon and the speech into Latin and sent them to the University at Upsala in Sweden, begging to know how to confute the Indian's arguments. The speech was as follows:

Since the subject of his errand is to persuade us to embrace a new doctrine, perhaps it may not be amiss, before we offer him the reasons why we cannot comply with his request, to acquaint him with the grounds and principles of that religion he would have us abandon. Our forefathers were under a strong persuasion (as we are) that those who act well in this life, will be rewarded in the next, according to the degree of their virtues. And on the other hand, that those that behave wickedly here will undergo such punishments hereafter as were proportionate to the crimes they were guilty of. This has been constantly and invariably received and acknowledged for a truth through every successive generation of our ancestors: it could not then have taken its rise from fable; for human fiction, however artfully and plausibly contrived, can never gain credit long among people where free enquiry is allowed, which never was denied by our ancestors; who, on the contrary, thought it the sacred inviolable natural right of every man, to examine and judge for himself.

Therefore, we think it evident that our notions of future rewards and punishments were either revealed from Heaven immediately to some of our forefathers, and from them descended to us, or that it was implanted in each of us at our creation by the Creator of all things. Whatever the method might have been, whereby God has been pleased to make known to us his will and give us a knowledge of our duty, it is in our sense a divine revelation. Now we desire to propose to him some questions. Does he believe that our forefathers, men, eminent for their piety, constant and warm in their pursuit of virtue; hoping thereby to merit eternal happiness were all damned? Does he think, that we, who are zealous imitators in good works, and influenced by the same motives, as we are, earnestly endeavoring with the greatest circumspection to tread the path of integrity, are in a state of damnation? If that be his sentiments, it is surely as impious as it is bold and daring. In the next place we beg that he would explain himself more, par-





ticularly concerning the revelation, if he admits of no other, than what is contained in his written book; the contrary is evident from what has been shown before.—But if he says, God has revealed himself to us, but not sufficiently for our salvation, then we ask, to what purpose should he have revealed himself to us in any wise? It is clear, that a revelation insufficient to save, cannot put us in a better condition than we be without revelation at all. We cannot conceive that God should point out to us the end we ought to arrive at, without opening to us the way to arrive at that end. But supposing our understanding to be so far illuminated as to know it to be our duty to please God, who yet has left us under an incapacity of doing it; will this missionary therefore conclude we shall be eternally damned? Will he take upon him to pronounce damnation against us for not doing those things which he himself acknowledgeth were impossible by us to be done. It is our opinion, that every man is possessed with sufficient knowledge for his own salvation. The Almighty, for any thing we know, may have communicated himself to different races of people in a different manner. Some say, they have the will of God in writings; be it so, their revelation has no advantage above ours, since both must be equally sufficient to save, or the end of revelation would be frustrated; besides, if they both be true, they must be the same in substance, and the difference can only lay in the mode of communication. He tells us there are many precepts in this written revelation, which we are entirely ignorant of; but those written commands could only be assigned for those who have the writings, they cannot possibly regard us. Had the Almighty thought so much knowledge necessary for our salvation, his goodness would not so long defer the communication of it to us.—And to say in a matter so necessary he could not at one and the same time reveal himself to all mankind, is nothing else than an absolute denial of his omnipotence. Without doubt he can make his will manifest without the help of any book, or the assistance of any bookish man whatever. We shall, in the next place, consider the arguments which arise from the consideration of Providence.

If we be the work of God, (which we presume will not be denied) it follows from thence, that we are under the care and protection of God; for it cannot be supposed that the Deity should abandon his own creatures, and be utterly regardless of their welfare. Then to say that the Almighty has permitted us to remain in a fatal error through so many ages, is to represent him as a tyrant.

How is it consistent with his justice to force life upon a race of mortals without their consent, and then to damn them eternally





without ever opening to them a door to salvation? Our conceptions of the gracious God are much more noble, and we think that those who teach otherwise, do little less than blaspheme. Again it is through the care and goodness of the Almighty, that from the beginning of time through so many generations to this day, our name has been preserved unblotted out by our enemies, and unreduced to nothing. By the same care we now enjoy our lives, and are furnished with the necessary means of preserving these lives. But all these things, compared with our salvation, are trifling.—Therefore, since God has been so careful of us in matters of little consequence, it would be absurd to affirm that he has neglected us in cases of the greatest importance; admit he has forsaken us, yet it could not be without a just cause.

Let us suppose that some heinous crimes were committed by some of our ancestors, like to that we are told of another race of people, in such a case, God would certainly punish the criminal, but would never involve us that are innocent in the guilt; those who think otherwise must make the Almighty a very whimsical evil-natured being.

Once more: are the christians more virtuous? or rather, are they not more vicious than we are? if so, how came it to pass that they are the objects of God's beneficence, while we are neglected? does he daily confer his favors without reason, and with so much partiality?

In a word: we find the christians much more depraved in their morals than we are — and we judge from their doctrine by the badness of their lives."—(Rupp, pages 60 to 64.)

That speech throws much light on the Indian's religion and shows that the untutored savage who made it and asked the questions in it was a very sincere man and was possessed of an extraordinary mind and an exalted character, and that he could be trusted farther than many professing Christians can be trusted even in our own day. His intellectual honesty was of the highest order, and his ideas about religion were entitled to profound respect.

The Swedish minister did not labor in vain among the Indians. He made a very respectable number of converts, and friendly relations existed between the Indians and the pioneer settlers in that neighborhood until the French and Indian War broke out.





No part of the territory that now composes Lancaster County was settled by Europeans before 1708 or 1709, although some white traders with the Indians had established themselves at or near the mouths of the creeks entering the Susquehanna River at different points below Columbia. Therefore, the number of white settlers was very small when Madame Ferree, her son, Daniel, and her son-in-law, Isaac LeFevre, became the first settlers in the valley of Pequea Creek in 1712. That was then in Conestoga Township, Chester County. It was a very large township at that time, but after the county of Lancaster was erected by an Act of the General Assembly, passed May 10, 1729, the township was greatly subdivided and the Ferree and LeFevre lands were in Strasburg or Paradise Townships. Lancaster County has been much reduced since the time of its creation. Other counties have been taken out of it, either in whole or in part.

Isaac LeFevre obtained additional land from William Penn and built his home upon it, a little over a mile east of the town of Strasburg. The Pequea Creek is quite near the house, and George N. LeFevre, my correspondent, occupies the house. Close by is the cemetery in which Isaac LeFevre and about thirty of his descendants have been buried. A corporation was lately formed to take possession and have perpetual care of that cemetery. That is in Strasburg Township. Mrs. Ferree also vested in trustees a piece of ground near Paradise as a burial place for the use of the settlement, and she is buried there. In those days cemeteries, connected with churches, were too remote for the burial of many of the dead. The land was heavily timbered and the roads were in very bad condition. It therefore became the custom with many land owners to provide a burial place within their own domain. Very few of those cemeteries are now well kept. Many of them have become so neglected that their loca-





tion is no longer known. I know of only a few that are still well cared for.

My wife's mother, Elizabeth LeFevre, was the second child of Christian LeFevre, a local Methodist preacher, who lived in, or on the edge of, Quarryville, Pennsylvania. He was born in Lampeter Township, Lancaster County, on the 20th of August, 1811. The next year his father, John LeFevre, moved to Drumore Township. In his eighty-second year, Christian LeFevre made some biographical notes in which he, *inter alia*, said: "My father sprang from the Isaac Lefevre stock that took up a large tract of land at the Big Spring in Lampeter Township, Lancaster County, Pa. He was a blacksmith by trade and it is said that he put the first whole tire on a wagon wheel that was known to be put on whole in Pennsylvania." He also says that the name of his father was John LeFevre, a son of Adam LeFevre, and that his mother was Elizabeth Keenports, a daughter of Daniel Keenports. He did not know the names of his ancestors between Isaac LeFevre and Adam LeFevre, nor how many generations were between Isaac and Adam LeFevre. In his notes he always spelled the family name Lefevre.

There was only one generation between Isaac LeFevre and Adam, and Phillip, the father of Adam, was one of the sons in that generation. In August, 1938, I inquired from George N. LeFevre of Strasburg, about the ancestors of Isaac LeFevre in France, and he replied, saying: "I have the following records. —Mengen LeFevre, born 1510; John, b. 1540; Phillip, b. 1574; Andrew, b. 1604; Abraham, b. 1632, died 1685; Isaac, b. March 26, 1669.

"Isaac of 1648, an attorney in the French Parliament, an uncle of our Isaac of 1669, suffered martyrdom by the Roman Catholics for 17 years, from 1685 to 1702. And Isaac's other uncles, Andrew (1636), and Simon (1640), doubtless would have suffered martyrdom too, but they





fled from France in 1655 and in 1665 were members of the Huguenot Colony at Kingston (Esopus) N. Y., and his aunt, Judith (1644), after whom Isaac's sister (1660) was named was a faithful Huguenot and helped her brother Isaac during his martyrdom."

According to Christian LeFevre, his father, John LeFevre, bought three hundred and twelve acres of land from a Daniel Keenports, and part of that tract is in the borough of Quarryville. One of the adjoining properties belonged to George W. Hensel.

While Christian LeFevre spelled the surname of his mother and her father, Keenports, I am told that the correct form is Keeports. It appears in only that form in the census of 1790.

The census of 1790 shows two Daniel Keeports, both in Lancaster County—one in Conestoga Township and the other in Lampeter Township. As Christian LeFevre was born in the latter township, the Daniel Keeports in that township was evidently the father of Elizabeth Keeports who married John LeFevre and became the mother of Christian LeFevre. The name of Daniel Keeports' wife was Catharine LeFevre, but I do not know the name of her father. It is, however, apparent that Christian LeFevre had LeFevre blood in him from two sources that were most likely related to each other. The name of the wife of Daniel Keeports of Conestoga Township was Elizabeth. She died as his widow, testate, in 1828, and her will in Book P, Volume 1, page 146, shows that they also had a daughter named Elizabeth who was then the wife of Jacob Thomas. So this should satisfy the reader that Christian LeFevre's mother was the daughter of the Daniel Keenports of Lampeter Township. In fact, the record of the First Reformed Church in Lancaster shows the marriage of John LeFevre to Elizabeth Keenports on March 27, 1804, and it is marked "Lampeter Township." And the marriage record in the





Trinity Lutheran Church in Lancaster shows the marriage of Daniel Keenports and Catharine LeFevre on December 17, 1782. So I feel sure that it was their daughter, Elizabeth, who married John LeFevre and became the mother of Christian LeFevre. John LeFevre died in 1851, and the Orphans' Court record shows that his widow, Elizabeth, and the six children, Daniel, Christian, Mary, Elizabeth, Catharine, and Benjamin, petitioned that Court respecting ninety-five acres of land in Drumore Township, and that Christian, the second son, took Tract No. 1 containing sixty acres.

In the Elizabeth Keenports estate already referred to, it becomes apparent that she was one of Jacob Bear's children by his first wife and that she was first married to John Snevely. That occurred in February, 1774. Snevely died intestate in 1793, and later she married Daniel Keenports.

Christian LeFevre married Susan (Susanna) Groff on the 13th of February, 1834. She was born February 22, 1809. In his notes, Christian LeFevre says: "Jacob Bare, the grandfather of Susan Groff owned over 900 acres of land in one tract and in his lifetime was married three times. Built three mills, namely, Comargo, Bossler's, and one at Conowingo Furnace, and in 1793 he built what is now known as the Old Ark in Quarryville."

As the maiden name of Christian LeFevre's wife was Susan, or Suzanna, Groff, I have made some investigation respecting her lineage, and have found that Hans Graaf of Earl Township was her immigrant ancestor. He fled from Switzerland to Alsace with one of his brothers about the year 1695-6 and later came to Germantown, Pennsylvania, where he remained some time. Finally, he went to Grove's Run in Lancaster County and began a settlement that was known as Graaf's Thal. He obtained a warrant for land in that section on the





22nd of November, 1717. The name of his wife was Susanna —————.

According to Rupp's *History of Lancaster County*, Hans Graaf had six sons and several daughters. The names of the sons are given by Rupp, as Peter, David, John, Daniel, Marcus, and Samuel. But he also had a son Jacob. Hans died testate, and his will, dated November 8, 1738, probated at Lancaster, May 7, 1746, after providing for the payment of his debts and funeral expenses, proceeds:

(Item) I give and bequeath unto my beloved son Jacob Graeff, the sum of Thirty pounds Lawful Money of the said Province which sum of Thirty pounds I have already paid unto the said Jacob and it is my will and I do order it shall be to him in full of all claim or demand which he hath or hereafter shall or may have — Pretend or claims against my executor, administrator or Estate and I do absolutely declare and cut him off from all and every other claime and claims to my Estate Real and Personal in this Province or Elsewhere.

The man who wrote the will misspelled the name of Graaf.

The township of Earl in which Hans Graaf settled in 1717 was named after him. Graf means earl or count. He, however, was not the only settler of that family name in Lancaster County. Rupp says (page 132) that the settlement of the Ferrees and LeFevre received considerable augmentation between 1706 and 1733, among them being Groff and Graaf, who, I believe, were both Swiss. But Hans Graaf was the first settler in Earl Township. He got one thousand acres of land in 1717 and the next year he transferred it to Abraham DuBois, the father-in-law of Philip Ferree. It adjoined the Ferree tract. Hans learned the Indian language and became a trader with the Indians. He was very prosperous and the founder of a large and influential family.





Robert C. Bair, deceased, who had been a lawyer in York, Pennsylvania, was related to Suzanna Groff, the wife of Christian LeFevre, her brother, David Groff, having been the grandfather of Mr. Bair. Mr. Bair's mother was Suzanna Groff, a daughter of said David Groff. She had married John Bair. Answering my inquiry, Attorney Bair said there is "a firm tradition that we are from Hans of Earl." But he had "doubt if we will ever escape the clutches of Hans Groff of Bart Township." I find that fear was groundless. Hans Groff's clutches were nothing to fear; first, because there was no Hans Groff in Bart Township, and second, he lived in Martic Township, and was a son of Hans Groff of Earl. He had lived in Martic Township, where he died, testate, in 1777. His will is dated April 5, 1777, and was probated May 2 and May 7, 1777. He signed his will John, instead of Hans. Hans is an abbreviation of Johannes, which, in English, means John. He had lived in Earl Township until 1763, when he moved into Martic Township, where he had acquired land from the Penns in 1762. His father's will is dated November 8, 1738, and was probated May 7, 1746. He owned one thousand four hundred and nineteen acres of land in Earl Township, and, in certain deeds which were made respecting parts of that land on July 30, 1746, his son, John, is named Hans. Jacob Groff, a brother of said Hans, or John, had moved into Martic Township about 1743 and died there testate in 1766. His will is dated 15 March, 1760. He was born in 1699, and I think his brother John was considerably younger. John was married twice; his second wife was Catharine Eshelman, the widow of Jacob Eshelman. Her maiden name was Herr. When her second husband made his will, he appointed her as executrix, and also appointed his two "trusty Friends," Benjamin Groff and Jacob Bear, executors. The said Benjamin Groff was a son of the said Jacob Groff, and





the said Jacob Bear was married to a sister of the said Benjamin Groff. Strange as it may seem, said Benjamin married the widow of his uncle John a few years after John died, and Benjamin's nephew, Jacob Groff, a grandson of the Jacob who died in 1766, married Anna Groff, a daughter of the said John, by his first wife. Two of the sons of old Jacob Groff married Herr girls. Certain Groff boys were apparently partial to Herr girls. The four marriages just mentioned show such partiality. Next, I find that another Jacob Groff, a son of the said John, by his second wife (Catharine Herr Eshelman), married Suzanna Bear, a daughter of one of John Groff's "trusty Friends"—Jacob Bear. This last couple, Jacob Groff and Suzanna Bear, became the parents of Suzanna Groff who married Christian LeFevre in 1834. And Christian LeFevre and his wife became the parents of Elizabeth LeFevre, who married Captain William H. Phillips, and these last two became the parents of my departed wife.

Let me say, in passing, that the name of Bear is sometimes spelled Barr. It so appears in the book on the genealogy of the Herr family. Barr Ferree, who, for years prior to his death, was the very efficient secretary of the Pennsylvania Society in New York, was a descendant of those two Lancaster County families.

Jacob Groff, the father of Suzanna Groff LeFevre, died intestate in Bart Township in 1815. He was born September 25, 1768, and was some, but not many years, older than his wife. His wife's mother was Elizabeth Brubaker, the second wife of Jacob Bear. The records show a deed executed by Jacob Bear and Elizabeth, his wife, on April 3, 1775. Jacob Bear's third and last wife was Anna Herr Kendig, the widow of Henry Kendig, who died in 1787. I infer from the will of Jacob Bear, who died testate in 1803, that he had six children by his first wife and three by the second, the last being Anna,





John, and Susanna. And Susanna married Jacob Groff, and when the latter died in 1815, he had seven children.

Jacob Groff's widow died in 1831. She remained single after her husband died in 1815. The names of their children, as they are disclosed by Orphans' Court proceedings in her husband's estate, and in her own estate, were, Catharine, Elizabeth, David, Benjamin, Jacob, Suzanna, and Martin. But I do not know the order of their birth.

Now I will state the reasons why I put down Suzanna, instead of Susan, as the first name of the wife of Christian LeFevre. In the first place, her mother's name was Suzanna. In the second place, when Suzanna Groff, the widow of Jacob Groff, who died intestate in 1815, presented her own petition to the Orphans' Court in Lancaster County in 1817, asking for the appointment of a guardian for her three children under the age of fourteen years, she called that daughter Suzanna; and in 1819 when another petition was presented to the same Court, praying for the sale of the decedent's land, that daughter's name again appeared as Suzanna. But, on her tombstone in the cemetery at the Mount Hope Church in Lancaster County, her first name appears as Susan. I presume she was called Susan from girlhood to the time of her death, and that that is the reason it so appears at her final resting place. Some women named Susan or Suzanna go through life only as Sue, and Elizabeth only as Lib. Letters and syllables, in the course of time, occasionally drop out like some soldiers of an army on a long march, as observed by Horne Tooke and mentioned by Trench on the *Study of Words* (page 164).

I have no doubt of the correctness of my statements respecting the Groff genealogy. I feel sure it stands thus: (1) Hans Graaf, the immigrant; (2) John Groff, one of his sons; (3) Jacob Groff, a son of John by his second wife, and (4) Susanna Groff, a daughter of Jacob.





But the identity of (3) Jacob Groff as the husband of Suzanna Bear is only my inference. However, I feel sure of the inference, because he is the only Jacob Groff that I could find it possible to have become the husband of Susanna Bear and the father of Susanna Groff, who married Christian LeFevre.

The "firm tradition" that Mr. Bair mentioned may receive slight confirmation from the following facts:

My wife was a first cousin of Grace Young, the wife of Dr. Clinton J. Kistler, of Lehighton. Her mother and my wife's mother were sisters. Mrs. Kistler informed me that she often heard her mother speak of Sebastian Groff, but Mrs. Kistler does not know who Sebastian Groff was. Well, Hans Graaf of Earl Township had a grandson named Sebastian who was born in Earl Township about 1750 and died in 1792. He was a delegate to the Provincial Convention in 1775, a delegate to the Federal Constitution Ratification Convention in 1787, and a State Senator in 1790. His brother, Andrew, was a member of the Provincial Assembly in 1776 and for some years was treasurer of Lancaster County. The kinsfolk of Sebastian Groff were naturally proud of him and, for several generations after his departure from life in 1792, spoke of him. And I am inclined to think that when Mrs. Kistler's mother spoke of Sebastian Groff she was indulging in family reminiscence and had in mind the noted grandson of Hans Graaf of Earl Township.

Without tradition, a genealogist cannot even begin his work. No person, of himself, knows his own birthday, although he was present at the time of his birth. He learned the date of his birthday from his parents or from the family Bible records, or from the church, or from some other record, and to him such information is at best hearsay. But it is the best evidence at hand, and passes muster in the courts of law. Consequently, family tradi-





tion is of great value to the genealogist, and, when dependable, is of the very highest value.

In my efforts to learn names of my departed wife's ancestors, I did not try to ascertain records, if any, respecting services in the French and Indian War, or in the war of the American Revolution. All the immigrant ancestors on her mother's side were pioneers who settled among the Indians. They were frontiersmen, and I have no doubt that some of them or some of their descendants fought for England in the first of those wars and against England in the second.

I find that the text of this chapter and the LeFevre Family Tree at the end of it disclose ten family stocks from which Annie Susan Phillips, my wife, descended, and the full names of twenty-nine of her ancestors.

The names of the family stocks are: (1) LeFevre; (2) Ferree; (3) Wemarin; (4) Herr; (5) Paules; (6) Keenports; (7) Groff; (8) Bear; (9) Brubaker; (10) Phillips.

The full names of the twenty-nine of my wife's known ancestors are: 1-Mengen LeFevre, b. 1510; 2-John LeFevre, b. 1540; 3-Philip LeFevre, b. 1574; 4-Andrew LeFevre, b. 1604; 5-Abraham LeFevre, b. 1632; 6-Isaac LeFevre, b. 1669; 7-Philip LeFevre, b. 1710; 8-Adam LeFevre, b. 1745; 9-John LeFevre, b. 1776; 10-Christian LeFevre, b. 1811; 11-Elizabeth LeFevre, b. 1836; 12-Daniel Ferree; 13-Maria Wemarin, wife of Daniel Ferree (Best known as Madame Ferree); 14-Catharine Ferree, b. 1679, wife of 6-Isaac LeFevre; 15-Mary Herr, wife of 7-Philip LeFevre; 16-Elizabeth Paules, b. 1743, wife of 8-Adam LeFevre; 17-Daniel Keenports; 18-Catharine LeFevre, wife of 17-Daniel Keenports; 19-Elizabeth Keenports, b. 1784, daughter of 17-Daniel Keenports. She married 9-John LeFevre; 20-Hans Groff (modern spelling) of Earl Township, b. 1661, d. 1746; 21-John (Hans) Groff of Martic Township, died





1777, was son of 20-Hans Groff; 22-Isaac Herr, the father of 23-Catharine Herr, who was the second wife of 21-John Groff; 24-Jacob Groff, b. 1768, d. 1815, son of 21-John Groff by his second wife; 25-Jacob Bear, d. 1803; 26-Elizabeth Brubaker, the second wife of 25-Jacob Bear; 27-Susanna Bear, the daughter of 25-Jacob Bear who married 24-Jacob Groff; 28-Susanna Groff, the daughter of 24-Jacob Groff who married 10-Christian LeFevre; and 29-William H. Phillips, b. October 21, 1840, d. 4 January, 1866, who married 11-Elizabeth LeFevre. This couple were the parents of Annie Susan Phillips.

In the LeFevre Family Tree I will give all the generations I have learned of both in France and America, marking each by the appropriate figure back of the name spelled in present fashion, as follows:

#### THE LEFEVRE FAMILY TREE

WENGEN LeFEVRE (1), b. 1510. Got Coat-of-Arms 1543.

JOHN LeFEVRE (2), b. 1540.

PHILIP LeFEVRE (3), b. 1574.

ANDREW LeFEVRE (4), b. 1604.

ABRAHAM LeFEVRE (5), born about 1630. Murdered by the French fanatics in 1685. His Bible is in possession of the Lancaster County Historical Society. His children were:

JUDITH LeFEVRVE (6), b. 20 October 1660, d. 1685. Murdered in France.

PHILIP LeFEVRE (6), b. 1 March 1664.

JACOB LeFEVRE (6), b. 20 December 1666, d. 1685. Murdered in France.

ISAAC LeFEVRE (6), b. 26 March 1669, d. October 1751; m. Catharine Ferree in Bavaria about 1704. Arrived in New York, 31 December 1708. Settled in Lancaster County, Pa., 1712. His wife was born in 1679 in France and died about 1749. Both buried in the LeFevre cemetery near Strasburg, Lancaster County, Pa.

MARY LeFEVRE (6), b. 15 January 1671, d. 1685. Murdered in France.

SUSANNA LeFEVRE (6), b. 12 September 1672, d. 1685. Murdered in France.

CHARLES LeFEVRE (6), b. 24 October 1680, d. 1685. Murdered in France.

It was one of the first things that I saw when I stepped out of the car. The sun was shining brightly, and the air was warm. I had heard that the weather was perfect, and now I knew it was true. The little fish were everywhere, swimming in the water and jumping out of it. They were so small, but they were so full of life. I had never seen anything like them before. They were like tiny diamonds, sparkling in the sun. I had heard that the little fish were the best thing to eat, and now I knew it was true. They were so delicious, and they were so easy to cook. I had heard that the little fish were the best thing to eat, and now I knew it was true. They were so delicious, and they were so easy to cook.

The little fish were everywhere. They were in the water, and they were on the shore. They were in the air, and they were on the ground. They were everywhere. They were so small, but they were so full of life. I had never seen anything like them before. They were like tiny diamonds, sparkling in the sun. I had heard that the little fish were the best thing to eat, and now I knew it was true. They were so delicious, and they were so easy to cook.

### THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH

THE LITTLE FISH



## CHILDREN OF ISAAC LeFEVRE (6) AND CATHARINE FERREE (2)

1. ABRAHAM LeFEVRE (7), b. 9 April 1706, d. 20 November 1735. Had married Elizabeth Fiere.
2. PHILIP LeFEVRE (7); b. 16 March 1710, d. 1761; m. Mary Herr, about 1730.
3. DANIEL LeFEVRE (7), b. 29 March 1713, d. April 1781; m. Mary Catharine Kerr, about 1736.
4. MARY LeFEVRE (7), b. 24 August 1715, m. Dr. David Deshler.
5. ESTHER LeFEVRE (7), b. 3 May 1717, m. Daniel Harmon.
6. SAMUEL LeFEVRE (7), b. 28 June 1719, d. 4 May 1789; m. Lydia Fiere, b. about 1731, d. 8 February 1778.

## CHILDREN OF 2. PHILIP LeFEVRE (7) AND HIS WIFE, MARY HERR

1. ISAAC LeFEVRE (8), b. about 1732, d. October 1783.
2. CATHARINE LeFEVRE (8), b. 2 March 1734, d. 2 October 1804; m. Nicholas Meck, b. 12 December 1731, d. 16 April 1803.
3. GEORGE LeFEVRE (8), b. 18 February 1739, d. 20 August 1820; m. Anna B. Slaymaker, February 1761. Wife died and he married a Mrs. Quigley. He was a lieutenant in the Revolutionary War.
4. ELIZABETH LeFEVRE (8), b. about 1742, d. about 1791, m. Henry Christy.
5. ADAM LeFEVRE (8), b. 27 February 1745, d. 15 February 1814; m. Elizabeth Paules, b. 4 July 1743, d. 30 August 1816.
6. ESTHER LeFEVRE (8), b. about 1747; m. Henry Eckman, b. 9 February 1769, d. 2 August 1795.
7. EVE LeFEVRE (8), b. ————d. ————, m. Rudolph Haup.
8. JACOB LeFEVRE (8), b. 24 February 1753, d. 8 January 1827. In 1771 he married Susanna ————, b. ————d. ————, and on 28 August 1782, m. Catharine Peterman, b. 22 May 1756, d. 22 July 1845.

## CHILDREN OF 5. ADAM LeFEVRE (8) AND ELIZABETH PAULES

1. CATHARINE LeFEVRE (9), b. 15 December 1767, d. 18 December 1854, m. Henry Manderbach, b. 29 August 1762, d. 15 August 1825.
2. MARY LeFEVRE (9), b. 16 October 1769, d. 20 August 1825; m. Peter LeFevre, b. 6 May 1774, d. 9 July 1844.
3. ELIZABETH LeFEVRE (9), b. 28 September 1770, d. 14 September 1857; m. Daniel Esbenshade, b. 11 August 1765, d. 24 September 1856.
4. HENRY B. LeFEVRE (9), b. 11 September 1772, d. 26 September 1824; m. 4 August 1822, Elizabeth Hess, b. 29 August 1792, d. 4 September 1826. Later m. Elizabeth Smeltz, b. 25 September 1787, d. 3 September 1875.
5. JACOB LeFEVRE (9), b. 24 July 1773, d. 6 July 1826; m. 9 March 1802, Catharine Meck, b. 22 November 1780, d. 13 May 1857.
6. GEORGE LeFEVRE (9), b. 25 September 1774, d. 15 October 1815. Never married.





7. JOHN LeFEVRE (9), b. 13 December 1776, d. 13 October 1851; m. 27 March 1804, Elizabeth Keepports, b. 3 January 1784, d. 25 September 1864.

8. PHILIP LeFEVRE (9), b. 6 April 1778, d. 1813, m. Elizabeth Clack.

9. ADAM LeFEVRE (9), b. 21 February 1779, d. 26 March 1847; m. Catharine Erb, b. 27 May 1781, d. 27 August 1853.

10. PETER LeFEVRE (9), b. 8 May 1780, d. 22 July 1830; m. Barbara LeFevre, b. 15 October 1789, d. 6 June 1878.

11. DANIEL LeFEVRE (9), b. 3 February 1783, d. 23 February 1852; m. Esther Witmer, b. 2 September 1785, d. 30 August 1854.

12. HESTER LeFEVRE (9), b. 6 December 1784, m. Jacob Rathfon.

13. SAMUEL LeFEVRE (9), b. 26 February 1786, d. 18 April 1808. Never married.

CHILDREN OF 7. JOHN LeFEVRE (9) AND ELIZABETH KEEPORTS,  
27 MARCH 1804

1. DANIEL LeFEVRE (10), b. 13 August 1805, d. 15 July 1880; m. 1830, Elizabeth LeFevre, b. 22 September 1807, d. 28 October 1853. On 30 May 1854, m. Susan Sweinhart, b. 3 October 1831, d. 30 May 1884.

2. CATHARINE LeFEVRE (10), b. 21 December 1807, d. 26 December 1807.

3. JOHN LeFEVRE (10), b. 17 February 1809, d. 12 April 1815.

4. CHRISTIAN LeFEVRE (10), b. 20 August 1811, d. 3 July 1894; m. 13 February 1834, Susan Groff, b. 24 February 1809, d. 16 March 1891.

5. BARBARA LeFEVRE (10), b. 30 November 1813, d. 5 April 1815.

6. MARY LeFEVRE (10), b. 31 March 1816, d. 27 November 1851, never married.

7. ELIZABETH LeFEVRE (10), b. 25 May 1819; m. twice. First, Benjamin Groff; second, Dr. R. B. McAllister.

8. CATHARINE LeFEVRE (10), b. 26 June 1822, d. 15 May 1861; m. John Stanton, b. 22 July 1818, d. 26 March 1888.

9. SAMUEL LeFEVRE (10), b. 15 November 1825, d. 15 November 1825.

10. BENJAMIN LeFEVRE (10), b. 3 August 1827, d. 6 May 1914; m. 12 July 1855, Susan Brubaker, b. 9 July 1835, d. 1 March 1922.

CHILDREN OF 4. CHRISTIAN LeFEVRE (10) AND SUSAN GROFF

1. WESLEY LeFEVRE (11), b. 10 February 1835, d. 25 November 1890; m. Sarah Baughman, b. ———, d. 16 December 1874.

2. ELIZABETH LeFEVRE (11), b. 15 October 1836, d. 13 April 1925; m. Captain William H. Phillips, b. 21 October 1840, d. 4 January 1866. Both buried at Mt. Hope.

the first of these is the fact that the first of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the second of these is the fact that the second of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the third of these is the fact that the third of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the fourth of these is the fact that the fourth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the fifth of these is the fact that the fifth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the sixth of these is the fact that the sixth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the seventh of these is the fact that the seventh of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the eighth of these is the fact that the eighth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the ninth of these is the fact that the ninth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the tenth of these is the fact that the tenth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the eleventh of these is the fact that the eleventh of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twelfth of these is the fact that the twelfth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the thirteenth of these is the fact that the thirteenth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the fourteenth of these is the fact that the fourteenth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the fifteenth of these is the fact that the fifteenth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the sixteenth of these is the fact that the sixteenth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the seventeenth of these is the fact that the seventeenth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the eighteenth of these is the fact that the eighteenth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the nineteenth of these is the fact that the nineteenth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twentieth of these is the fact that the twentieth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twenty-first of these is the fact that the twenty-first of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twenty-second of these is the fact that the twenty-second of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twenty-third of these is the fact that the twenty-third of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twenty-fourth of these is the fact that the twenty-fourth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twenty-fifth of these is the fact that the twenty-fifth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twenty-sixth of these is the fact that the twenty-sixth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twenty-seventh of these is the fact that the twenty-seventh of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twenty-eighth of these is the fact that the twenty-eighth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the twenty-ninth of these is the fact that the twenty-ninth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century

the thirtieth of these is the fact that the thirtieth of the three  
 years of the first century of the first century of the first century



## MY DEPARTED WIFE

3. JOHN FLETCHER LeFEVRE (11), b. 7 December 1838, d. 24 April 1916; m. 18 November 1872, Mary F. Robinson, b. 7 January 1849.
4. JACOB M. LeFEVRE (11), b. 2 September 1840, d. 20 May 1910; m. 8 November 1870, Catharine Wolf, b. 1852, d. 8 November 1905.
5. SUSAN CATHARINE LeFEVRE (11), b. 17 January 1842, d. 16 March 1918; m. 1 February 1872, Prof. George C. Young, b. 1848, d. 9 October 1910.
6. DANIEL W. LeFEVRE (11), b. 19 January 1844, d. 14 April 1844.
7. BENJAMIN G. LeFEVRE (11), b. 1 March 1845, d. 25 November 1923; m. 28 September 1876, Sarah E. W. Kohr, b. 6 March 1843, d. 27 April 1899.
8. EMMA M. LeFEVRE (11), b. 9 March 1847, d. 2 June 1921; m. 18 September 1867, Franklin W. Helm, b. 9 December 1842, d. 7 December 1909.
9. GEORGE W. LeFEVRE (11), b. 15 October 1848, d. 23 April 1928; m. Margaret J. Johnson, b. 11 October 1852, d. 19 October 1875; m. 12 July 1877, Martha A. Longnecker, b. 20 July 1850, d. 25 January 1922.
10. WILLIAM H. LeFEVRE (11), b. 12 October 1851, d. 18 August 1853.
11. FRANCIS A. LeFEVRE (11), b. 20 December 1852, d. 28 June 1916; m. 4 April 1877, May Ogden, b. 28 May 1856.

CHILDREN OF 2. ELIZABETH LeFEVRE (11) AND WILLIAM H. PHILLIPS

1. ELLA PHILLIPS (12), b. 25 June 1860, d. 12 March 1868.
2. ANNIE SUSAN PHILLIPS (12), b. 22 April 1862, d. 14 July 1925; m. 30 September 1884, Richard H. Koch, b. 2 April 1852.

CHILDREN OF 2. ANNIE SUSAN PHILLIPS (12) AND RICHARD H. KOCH

1. LeROY KOCH (1), b. 11 July 1885, d. 27 May 1886.
2. ROSCOE RICHARD KOCH (13), b. 17 June 1887; m. 30 June 1915, Mary Louise Smyth, b. 21 July 1888.
3. HELEN ELIZABETH KOCH (13), b. 17 July 1889; m. 20 June 1914, Joel Thompson Boone, b. 29 August 1889.
4. MARSHALL McKINLEY KOCH (13), b. 24 September 1891; m. 21 July 1921, Mary Elizabeth Von Kaentzel, b. 15 January 1900.
5. MARY MARJORIE KOCH (13), b. 22 September 1893; m. 8 August 1917, John Parke Hood, b. 21 April 1893.

the first part of the paper, we shall consider the case in which the system is in a state of equilibrium.

Let us suppose that the system is in a state of equilibrium at a temperature  $T$ . Then the probability of finding the system in a state with energy  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{e^{-\beta E}}{\sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}}$$
 where  $\beta = 1/(kT)$  and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant.

Now let us suppose that the system is in a state of equilibrium at a temperature  $T$ . Then the probability of finding the system in a state with energy  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{e^{-\beta E}}{\sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}}$$
 where  $\beta = 1/(kT)$  and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant.

Now let us suppose that the system is in a state of equilibrium at a temperature  $T$ . Then the probability of finding the system in a state with energy  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{e^{-\beta E}}{\sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}}$$
 where  $\beta = 1/(kT)$  and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant.

Now let us suppose that the system is in a state of equilibrium at a temperature  $T$ . Then the probability of finding the system in a state with energy  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{e^{-\beta E}}{\sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}}$$
 where  $\beta = 1/(kT)$  and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant.

Now let us suppose that the system is in a state of equilibrium at a temperature  $T$ . Then the probability of finding the system in a state with energy  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{e^{-\beta E}}{\sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}}$$
 where  $\beta = 1/(kT)$  and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant.

Now let us suppose that the system is in a state of equilibrium at a temperature  $T$ . Then the probability of finding the system in a state with energy  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{e^{-\beta E}}{\sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}}$$
 where  $\beta = 1/(kT)$  and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant.

Now let us suppose that the system is in a state of equilibrium at a temperature  $T$ . Then the probability of finding the system in a state with energy  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{e^{-\beta E}}{\sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}}$$
 where  $\beta = 1/(kT)$  and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant.

Now let us suppose that the system is in a state of equilibrium at a temperature  $T$ . Then the probability of finding the system in a state with energy  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{e^{-\beta E}}{\sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}}$$
 where  $\beta = 1/(kT)$  and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant.

Now let us suppose that the system is in a state of equilibrium at a temperature  $T$ . Then the probability of finding the system in a state with energy  $E$  is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{e^{-\beta E}}{\sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}}$$
 where  $\beta = 1/(kT)$  and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant.



CHILDREN OF 2. ROSCOE RICHARD KOCH (13) AND MARY LOUISE SMYTH

1. RICHARD HENRY KOCH, II (14), b. 2 March 1918.
2. MARY LOUISE KOCH (14), b. 10 January 1924.

CHILD OF 3. HELEN ELIZABETH KOCH (13) AND JOEL THOMPSON BOONE

- SUZANNE BOONE (14), b. 22 May 1920.

CHILDREN OF 4. MARSHALL McKINLEY KOCH (13) AND MARY ELIZABETH VON KAENTZEL

1. RICHARD COLLIER KOCH (14), b. 23 June 1922.
2. MARSHALL KOCH (14), b. 19 February 1924.
3. JOHN ALLEN KOCH (14), b. 19 February 1924.

CHILDREN OF 5. MARY MARJORIE KOCH (13) AND JOHN PARKE HOOD

1. JOHN PARKE HOOD (14), b. 21 February 1919.
2. MARJORIE HOOD (14), b. 21 December 1921.





## CHAPTER XIV

### MYSELF

It is difficult for a man to speak long of himself without vanity; therefore, I shall be short.—*David Hume, Esq.*

Dr. Samuel Johnson seemed to think little of historians as writers. All they have to do is to tell the truth, and telling the truth requires no literary skill. If a historian does not tell the truth he is no good, and may be positively harmful. But there have been times when historians did not tell all the truth. Montaigne, a French essayist of the sixteen century, said: "I tell the truth, not as much as I would, but as much as I dare, and the older I grow, the more I dare." As I am at least twenty-five years older than Montaigne was when he wrote that, and as I live where the press is free, I dare to tell nothing but the truth, and I will, therefore, try to do my self-assigned duty, as I have hitherto done it in this book.

The title of this book may prompt a reader to inquire: "Who's R. H. Koch?" and "Why did he write this book?" This chapter is to answer those two questions, but in reverse order.

I gathered the data and committed it to paper in order first, to pass a lot of unoccupied time, and second, for the benefit of some of my relatives who may be interested in their own genealogy. I must confess that after I got to work in real earnest, I found the work very interesting, and I hope others who are concerned will find the data interesting, although they are of little or no real monetary value, notwithstanding the fact that their ascertainment cost me much time and an outlay of considerable







MYSELF IN MAY, 1931





cash. The cost of printing this book and its free distribution is quite an item in the amount of that cash.

I was born in Middleport, Schuylkill County, Pennsylvania, on the second day of April, in 1852. My father kept a store there at that time. I can still recall very distinctly the names of a number of people there and some incidents that happened there, although I was only five years and nine months old when our family moved to a farm in the lower part of Auburn, Pennsylvania. As soon as I got old enough to spread grass back of the men who cut it with scythes, I began that kind of work, and as I became older, I did all kinds of work about the farm, except mowing, thrashing with a flail and ploughing. When the Confederate Army invaded Pennsylvania in the summer of 1863, my father and my three older brothers were all in the Union Army, and I was the oldest male member of the family left at home. After Lee's defeat at Gettysburg on the third of July, and the withdrawal of the Confederates from Pennsylvania, my father, and Jeremiah, the youngest of the three boys in the Union Army, returned home, because they had enlisted only for the emergency. Such soldiers were called emergency men. They enlisted to serve as long as the Confederates remained in Pennsylvania. My oldest brother, Francis, served from the beginning to the end of the war. Allen, my next oldest brother, served three years and forty-five days. Speaking of war, three of my great-great-grandfathers served the Colonies in the French and Indian War; four of my great-grandfathers served in the War of the Revolution, and one of my sons and my two sons-in-law served in the World War. I am emphatically opposed to war. "Thou shalt not kill" (Ex. 20:13) has come ringing down through the ages as a command to all mankind, and war violates that Commandment. It is nothing but the commission of murder and every other crime in the calendar and is





organized on a national scale for the sole purpose of committing most of those crimes. It is sinful waste in every direction and will eventually cause woeful want in the world. If the men at the top, whose words, attitudes, and conduct cause a particular war were obliged to do all the fighting themselves and the survivors of the conflict were then executed, there would be no more wars. As a rule, the men whose attitudes and conduct cause a war rarely do any fighting themselves. Such people deserve no asylum excepting the insane asylum in some cases.

Were it in my power, public parks, buildings, and battlefields would have fewer monuments of marble and bronze to war heroes. I would put in the places of some of them statues of unselfish patriots and statesmen, scholars, scientists, discoverers, astronomers, mathematicians, inventors, architects, composers, writers, publishers, artists, artisans, chemists, physicians, teachers, preachers, engineers, geologists, agriculturists, and others, including certain business men, founders of schools and libraries, and other big financial benefactors whose work in the world and whose liberal endowments have brought about our present high state of civilization and have increased the average length of human life, and is saving mankind from much sickness and misery. Such men and women are the only conquerors that I admire. Their name is legion. My hat is off to them, and not to Cyrus, Caesar, Napoleon, and others, whose paths to power and fame, from beginning to end, are covered with human blood. Ambition for place for the sake of power and fame feeds no power and makes paranoiacs of its victims, and such victims move through human blood up to their boot tops, smiling at so-called glorious victory. They are obsessed with the conceited delusion that they are foreordained to conquer and rule by brute force, and they pervert the





use of civilized knowledge for their most barbarous warfare. All the victories in all the wars of the world have not added one square foot to the surface of the earth. They only changed the dividing lines between contending nations. I am for the speedy ending of the lives of men who insist on creating wars. In the course of my four and a third score years, war has prevailed most of the time in some part of the world, without permanently increasing the happiness of mankind one iota. On earth peace, good will toward men (Luke 2:14) appeals to me, tocsins of war do not. I agree with Longfellow:

Were half the power that fills the world with terror,  
Were half the wealth bestowed on camps and courts,  
Given to redeem the human mind from error,  
There were no need of arsenals or forts.

The warrior's name would be a name abhorred!  
And every nation that should lift again  
Its hand against a brother, on its forehead  
Would wear forevermore the curse of Cain.

Lest I be misunderstood, I will say that when a nation is invaded and attacked it must defend itself, although such action is warfare. Self-defense is one of the first laws of nature, and I would not punish the defenders of an invaded country. I would punish those whose attitudes toward, or conduct among, the invaders caused the invasion and brought on the war. No words justify an assault and battery. That is no proper way to settle any dispute. Human society has knowledge enough to create proper courts of justice for the settlement of many controversies that otherwise would end in breaches of the peace. Society owes it to itself to agree on proper courts of justice for the settlements of disputes between nations. Common sense, wisdom, and justice demand that such courts take the place of battlefields. Their cost stands





no comparison to the cost of war and the evil consequences that sometimes endure for ages after a war.

We left the farm at Auburn and moved to a grist-mill property near the mouth of Monocacy Creek, in Berks County, in April, 1866. We had some farming land also there. I worked on the land and in the mill. After residing there a year, we moved to Fleetwood, in the same county, where my father had bought another grist-mill and some farm land, and there I worked on the land and in the mill. Of course, I attended common schools five or six months each year after I became six years old. I liked the grist-mill work and would have learned the trade, but I was thin and puny and my nose bled so frequently that it was thought best that I pursue some other occupation. So, in March, 1868, my father sent me to the Keystone State Normal School at Kutztown. (It is now called Teachers' College.) I had studied nothing in common schools but reading, writing, arithmetic, orthography, political geography, and very little grammar.

I got along well in the Normal School and graduated there at the head of my class in 1871. In the summer of 1869, while on a visit at the home of one of my aunts in Schuylkill Township, Schuylkill County, I attended the examination of school teachers by the county superintendent, Prof. Jesse Newlin, at Tuscarora. I just tried to see how well I could do. I did not know a single person present, and, when it became apparent that I wanted to be examined and that I came from Berks County, I was laughed at and looked at by all in the room. But, after the oral examinations were over, the attitude of the audience, as well as that of Professor Newlin, changed, and, after my graduation in 1871, I was, without examination, chosen as one of the teachers in that township, for a term of eight months at sixty dollars per month. The salaries paid there were the





highest in Schuylkill County, and the average standing of the teachers was at the top. Mr. Fletcher, one of the teachers there, was one of the best spellers to be found anywhere. Because of that fact, Mr. Newlin had given us seventy unusual words to write when he conducted the examination in 1869, and they were so unusual to me that I missed about half of them. In everything else, excepting United States history, which I had not yet studied, I did very well on that occasion. The branches in which we were examined in 1869 were orthography, reading, writing, grammar, mental arithmetic, written arithmetic, political geography, and United States history. I taught the school near Lewistown for the term 1871-2. That township was divided in 1878, and the new part in which Lewistown is located is called Walker Township.

During my attendance at the State Normal School, I studied, besides the eight branches already mentioned, physical geography, algebra, geometry, trigonometry, surveying, etymology, rhetoric, geology, physiology, Constitution of the United States, drawing, vocal music, natural philosophy, mental philosophy, book-keeping, theory of teaching, practice of teaching, and Latin. Trigonometry, surveying and Latin were outside of my regular course. Later on I gave some attention to botany, general history, and logic.

Graduation in the elementary course, which I did, exempted one from examination by county superintendents, and after teaching two years successfully, a graduate was always exempt from such examination and could teach those branches in any of the common schools of this State. The diploma one received when he graduated made the recipient a Bachelor of the Elements, and after two years teaching, one became a Master of the Elements, although, up to the present time, I feel that I never became the master of anything—not even of myself.





The boss of the school board in Schuylkill Township was a leading Mollie Maguire, and when he learned to know whose son I was, he told me at the end of my first term of teaching, in 1872, that they had some young people of their own who would be qualified to teach and that I could not have a school again in that township. The decision created much disappointment among all my school patrons, who wanted me back there again, but I knew that a plea for reappointment would be useless. Professor Newlin was disappointed also, and asked me to appear at the examination of teachers in Butler Township in the summer of 1872. I did that in Girardville and could have had a school in the township, but I preferred an offer to teach in the Model School in North Whitehall Township, in Lehigh County. It was so called because the building and equipment in it were brand new and up to date.

One afternoon in January, 1873, while I was fixing the fire in my schoolhouse, before going to my boarding place for the night, I suddenly decided to read law, although I had never been in an open court in my life. I did so because I saw that, after a six months term of teaching, I would have nothing to do excepting to teach a summer school on my own account, or do some kind of peddling or farm work. So I immediately wrote to my father telling him of my determination, and saying I would seek a living in the county where I was born and would try to enter the office of the Hon. Lin Bartholomew in Pottsville in the coming summer. He was regarded as the most eloquent lawyer at the Schuylkill County Bar, and was very well known. He and my father and Harry Huhn of Tamaqua had been elected members of the State Legislature when Lincoln was elected President of the United States in 1860. I asked my father to write to Mr. Bartholomew and arrange for my becoming a law student under his tutelage. I got a quick reply





from my father saying that Francis W. Hughes was the best lawyer in Pottsville, as well as one of the most outstanding in Pennsylvania, and that he would soon go to Pottsville and see Mr. Hughes about my reading law with him. He did that early in February, and reported that Mr. Hughes would be very glad to have me registered with him. But a few days later I was greatly pleased and surprised by the receipt of an unexpected letter from the secretary of the board of trustees of my Alma Mater, telling me that I had been chosen by the board as an assistant teacher for the spring term, which began early in March. Fortunately, I had among my pupils a young man who intended to become a minister, and whom I taught specially in branches outside of those generally taught in the township. His name was Masonheimer. I soon saw County Superintendent Knauss, made my plans known to him, and he specially examined Mr. Masonheimer and gave him a certificate to teach. I then attended a meeting of the school board in Egypt, and, after hearing my story, they released me and elected Mr. Masonheimer as my successor. He finished my term. In due time he became a minister, and for many years prior to his death had charge of the Lutheran Church in Weatherly, Pennsylvania.

At the end of the school year at Kutztown in June, 1873, Professor Achenbach resigned, got married and went to Iowa, where he settled for life, and I was elected as his successor in the faculty of the Normal School. In July of that year I went to Pottsville and saw Mr. Hughes. After hearing my story, he kindly registered me as a law student under him and said I could enter the office at any time thereafter. I liked my position at Kutztown so much that I remained there for six years. At the end of August, 1879, I came to Pottsville and entered Mr. Hughes' office as a law student on the first of September. I found four other students in the office





at that time, but Isaac M. Price, who was one of them, was admitted to the Bar on September 3rd. However, he remained in the office for some time after his admission and did clerical work for Mr. Hughes. Mr. Hughes' son-in-law, Guy E. Farquhar, was his law partner, and Mr. Price did clerical work for both. The four students then in the office were: Wesley K. Woodbury, Fred C. Oliver, Burd S. Edwards, and myself, I being the last of them. We had a large room in which we all did our work. It was the reception room for the clients of the law firm. When I entered the office of Mr. Hughes to make my presence known as a law student, he was very cordial and handed me Blackstone's Commentaries, saying: "This is the primer—master it and you will have no trouble to master the other books in your course of study." I have seen and met many prominent men in my time, but Mr. Hughes was the most distinctive looking man that I have ever seen.

I had repaid my father the cost of sending me to the Normal School and had saved enough money to study law. I was no longer a boy. I was then over twenty-seven years old and knew what I was trying to accomplish. So I applied myself with diligence, and, in April, 1881, I asked Mr. Hughes to examine me and see whether he could recommend me for final examination by the Committee of the Bar. He soon complied with my request and was highly complimentary by saying that I was unusually well prepared. As a result, I appeared before the Bar Examining Committee, in the last week in April, 1881, and was admitted to the Bar on the second of May, just twenty months after I had entered the offices of Hughes and Farquhar.

I entered upon the practice of law immediately. Shortly before my examination for the Bar, a medicine peddler, "Dr." Smith, had cut the throat of a young man named Seltzer in the bar room of Boyer's Hotel in





McKeansburg, and I was retained as private counsel for the Commonwealth in the prosecution of "Dr." Smith, who was indicted for murder. It was my first case, and, after learning the facts, I spoke to Mr. Hughes about the wisdom of my acting as counsel in it, because I had grave doubts of Smith's conviction. But Mr. Hughes advised me to go on. I did so, and "Dr." Smith was acquitted. He was at least twenty years older than the man he had cut, and, when he did the cutting, the man had him down on his back and was pounding him severely with his fists. Smith established a fine reputation for peace and good order prior to that encounter. Strange to say, I recently spoke to a man who had known "Dr." Smith very well. He said that his father had kept "Dr." Smith overnight occasionally at his house in Walker Township. He told me of a fact that was not known to me and was not brought out at the time of the trial, otherwise, "Dr." Smith might have been convicted of murder in the second degree or voluntary manslaughter. His acquittal did no professional harm to me. In the course of a comparatively short time I gained a good practice at the Bar.

W. J. Whitehouse, who was elected district attorney in 1886, made me his first deputy, and in 1889 I was elected to succeed him. The term was then for three years. I was the only Republican who carried the county in 1889.

Before the end of my term in 1892, while I was at professional work in my private office, the Republican County Convention nominated me for the judgeship, without my being a candidate, or even having thought of such a candidacy. Hon. Cyrus L. Pershing, a lawyer from Johnstown, had been a member of the State Legislature from his county some twenty years before that, and as such had become well acquainted with certain Schuylkill County Democratic lawyers, who were much opposed





to the re-election of Judge James Ryon in 1872. And they so engineered matters that year that while Judge Ryon had been re-nominated by the Democrats, Pershing was nominated by the Republicans and Labor Reformers in Schuylkill County and won the election. He made a great reputation as a judge when presiding in the trial of certain Mollie Maguires in Schuylkill County, and was nominated by the Democrats for Governor in 1875, but was defeated by a small majority, and some of the Mollie Maguires helped to make up that majority. In 1882 the Republicans and Greenbackers nominated Pershing, and the Democrats nominated Hon. James B. Reilly for the judgeship, and Pershing was again elected. I worked and voted for his election that year. I had no personal objections to Judge Pershing's candidacy in 1892. I had served in the district attorney's office six years, learned to know him well, and liked him, but he lost ground with certain Republicans near the end of his second term of service by the way he handled a single case. Big Jack Toole, as he was best known, was a Democratic politician who gained office and power, but he had a violent temper when aroused (which was rarely) and, in such a moment, brutally knocked down Samuel DeTurk in the corridor of the Court House. DeTurk was a Democratic county commissioner and had very many friends among the Pennsylvania Germans. Toole was as slick as oil. He was clerk of the courts. He went into the chambers of Judge Pershing and told him all about the case, and there entered a plea of guilty to assault and battery, and the judge sentenced him to pay a fine and the costs of prosecution. It did not occur to Judge Pershing at the time that he was sentencing Toole *privately* instead of *publicly*; and that greatly displeased some of Judge Pershing's best Republican friends at the Bar, as well as many other Republicans. So, when the County Republican Convention was held,





the delegates did not all feel like giving Cyrus L. Pershing a third nomination, and, after his name was proposed, some delegate (I don't know who) arose and placed me in nomination, and when the vote was taken I had one hundred and twenty-six votes to Pershing's sixty-three. When I appeared on the street late in the afternoon of that day, I was hailed by all of my friends that I met, and wished success, save by only one that I can recall, who said I should decline to stand as a candidate. I told him the convention said that I should run for the office, and that I would not withdraw and muddle things for the other nominees of the convention. The Democratic Convention met later and nominated Judge Pershing, but John W. Ryon, then the leader of the Bar, was also a candidate before that convention, and ran independently as a candidate that fall. His vote was thereby kept away from me, and Pershing was re-elected. The vote stood thus: Pershing, 11,992; Koch, 10,869, and Ryon, 2,357, while our Republican candidate for Congress (Brumm) got 11,539, and Reilly, the Democrat, got 13,440. The country went Democratic that year, Grover Cleveland defeating Benjamin Harrison for the presidency.

Judge Pershing was an honorable man, and when Jack Toole tricked him into accepting his plea and sentencing him privately, he was momentarily forgetful and committed only a harmless technical mistake. Judge Pershing would never have been knowingly guilty of such an error. He was no scheming politician.

When my term as district attorney ended on January 1, 1893, I found that during my six years service in that office I had lost two-thirds of my general practice as a lawyer. But I was then only forty years old, and I very soon became a busy lawyer again and had all the work I could do.





In 1895 there was considerable objection in both sides of the Bar of Berks County against the re-election of Judge James N. Ermentrout, and a committee of three lawyers, of both political parties, called on me in Pottsville, and asked me to become the Republican candidate against Ermentrout. They had had under consideration the leader of the Bar in Northampton County, a prominent lawyer in Philadelphia (P. F. Rothermel, later district attorney there), and myself, and concluded that, because of my long services at the Keystone State Normal School, I had made many friends and acquaintances in Berks County and would be the most available candidate of the three. I withheld my answer for two weeks. In the meantime I consulted all of our judges and all the leaders of our Bar, and they were unanimous that I should accept the nomination, although Berks County was then the Gibraltar of Democracy. I was unanimously nominated in the Republican Convention in Berks County, and when the election took place, Ermentrout won by a majority of 5,006, but that was 1,665 less than the majority received by the Democratic candidate for district attorney. I know the judge well and favorably; in fact, I knew all of his brothers. One of them, Rev. John S. Ermentrout, was the principal of the Normal School when I was a student and when I graduated there, and later he and I served five years as members of the faculty in that school. I have always thought that he had the best mind that it has been my good fortune to contact with intimately, and I am sure he had the purest tongue of any man that I ever knew. I never heard him use a word that could not have been properly uttered in any pulpit. We were very fond of each other, although I was his junior by more than twenty-four years. He had been a minister of the Reformed Church, but in 1871 became a Roman Catholic. He left Kutztown then, but returned again in 1874, and was a member of the faculty





until he died in July, 1881. In his will he bequeathed me two books. I asked him one day why he renounced his faith and became a Catholic, and he said he thought over the matter a great deal and the question was whether he should become a Rationalist or Romanist, and settled it by changing his faith. His brother, Daniel, was a distinguished lawyer, a member of the State Senate and Congressman from Berks County. His brother, Samuel, was a fine physician, and the remaining brother was a locomotive engineer, to the best of my recollection, but I have forgotten his full name.

Judge Weidman died in September, 1897, and twenty-three lawyers of both political parties and one layman, of their own accord, went to Harrisburg and urged Governor Hastings to appoint me for the vacancy on the Bench. Soon afterward I received a letter from the Governor, and promptly went to the State Capitol in answer to the letter. After a short chat between the Governor, the Attorney General and myself, the Governor stood up, extended his hand to me and said: "I congratulate you, Judge Koch, your commission will be dated to-day, and it will be forwarded to you to-morrow." That was on the 29th of September. I served as judge until the first of January, 1899, having been defeated for election in November, 1898. I lost by 886 votes, while the Republican candidate for Congress (Brumm) lost by exactly 2,500 votes.

In 1907 I again ran for judge, and I have no doubt that most of the votes were cast for me, but I was counted out. I was urged to contest the election, but I did not want to spend all the time and money required for such a purpose. I could not afford to abandon my law practice for so long a time.

In 1911, while I was on a vacation of several weeks in Canada, some members of the Bar and others circulated necessary papers to have my name appear for





nomination on the Republican ticket for judge. Being advised of the fact upon my return, I withheld my consent until within a few days of the time limit for filing the petitions, when I yielded to the importunity of my friends and agreed to stand as a candidate. It resulted in my nomination at the primary, and I was elected for a ten-year term in November.

In 1921, I ran for re-election and was nominated on all of the tickets that year, namely: Republican, Democrat, Prohibition, and Socialist. I had a vote of at least two to one against my opponent on every ticket, and was re-elected without opposition in November. Hon. James B. Reilly drew up the Bar's endorsement of my candidacy.

In 1931, I hesitated to run, but could not disregard the appeals that came to me from the great majority of the Bar and many others. John F. Whalen, Esq., the leader of the Bar, came to my office and said, "I wish you would run." I replied that I would. He formulated the Bar's endorsement of my candidacy, and it was signed by eighty-eight resident members of the Bar in this county. The endorsement was as follows:

WE, THE UNDERSIGNED, members of the Bar of Schuylkill County, Penna., do hereby heartily endorse the candidacy of the Honorable Richard H. Koch, President Judge of the Court of Common Pleas of said county, to succeed himself.

Judge Koch has won an enviable position among the jurists of this Commonwealth. His patience, integrity, impartiality, ability, industry and fearlessness are well known throughout the County and State.

We commend him most highly and earnestly to the voters of Schuylkill County, and we ask their support of him at both the Primary and General Election this year.

At a meeting of the Schuylkil County Bar Association held on June 29, 1931, it was unanimously resolved, in support of my candidacy, that "We are for his retention on the Bench because he listens with great patience and





decides impartially at all times. He treats all alike, whether high or low, rich or poor, powerful or weak. He respects no persons in judgment but decides all questions in strict accordance with the law of the land as he understands it."

I stood again for the nomination, but lost. The only arguments against my candidacy were that I was too old, and, if elected, might live but a short time, and that the Governor, then in office, would appoint as my successor some undesirable member of the Bar. I was then well up in my eightieth year, and could not rebut the first part of the argument against my candidacy, nor could I deny the second part of the argument, because I believed it was correct. The arguments prevailed, and my defeat for nomination in September relieved me from running for election in November.

After twenty years of continuous service on the Bench, I became a retired judge, and such continue to be. In my position as a retired judge, I must certify, each month, "that I hold myself in readiness to advise with my successor and his colleagues of the court of which I am a member and to perform such duties as may be imposed upon me as special master, referee, auditor and examiner in such case as I may be reasonably able to do and that I am not regularly engaged in any remunerative business or employment."

I am contented and happy in my position. I am glad that I became a retired judge, because, owing to my impaired sight, I would not now be able to do the necessary work of a general practitioner at the Bar.

The career of my life since my admission to the Bar has not been spent exclusively at the law. Over forty years ago I became interested in the promotion of several trolley lines, and that took some part of my time. I was president of the local trolley line when I was





appointed judge in 1897, but declined re-election in 1898 on account of my being a member of the Bench.

For two years I was president of the United Railways Light and Water Company, which controlled several trolley lines leading out of the city of Chattanooga, Tennessee, and the Incline Railroad on the side of Lookout Mountain. I was also president of the Danville and Bloomsburg Street Railway, of the Shamokin and Edgewood Electric Railway Company, and of the trolley roads that connected Cumberland, Maryland, with Frostburg and Lonaconing. I continued to hold my investments in most of those railways until the very general use of the automobile ruined them; and I lost over ninety-five per cent. of my investments, but, in the meantime, I had received dividends and interest that amounted to more than the sum total of my investments.

I never went into the banking business, although I was offered the presidency of four different banks in Pottsville, on as many different occasions. They were within my grasp, but I declined all of them, because I never wanted to become responsible for the handling of other people's money. Losing my own money never bothered me, but losing other people's money would bother me. Consequently, I never had any desire to become a director or officer of any bank.

Factionalism in the Republican Party in Schuylkill County divided it badly in the early eighties, and in 1883 the leaders in both factions got together and made me the Republican county chairman, before I knew anything of such a movement. General Joshua K. Sigfried, with whom I was very friendly, was the chairman for years before that. I accepted the position and was re-elected in 1884, when James G. Blaine was the Republican candidate for the presidency. He would have been elected had not the Rev. Dr. Burchard made his famous "Rum, Romanism, and Rebellion" speech at a banquet in the





city of New York shortly before the election. That speech resulted in the election of Grover Cleveland, because of his majority of between twelve and thirteen hundred in the State of New York.

When I got through with the campaign of 1884, which I ran at financial loss to myself, I decided to quit the chairmanship and not seek re-election in 1885, and did so when the convention met in 1885. I found so much of my time was taken up by local politicians from all parts of the county by their calling at my office when in Pottsville just to have a chat and put in the time while they were waiting for train time. After that, I still took an interest in politics, and in my time made a good many political speeches. I directed my attention to my professional work. However, I became a delegate to the National Republican Conventions which nominated Calvin Coolidge and Herbert Hoover for the presidency of the United States. I was always against the Prohibition Amendment, and I believe now, as I did in 1932, that if a plank that I had proposed for the National Platform had been made a part of the platform, President Hoover would have received several million more votes than he did that year. I had prepared a printed statement and two resolutions that I circulated among the members of the Pennsylvania delegation and was accorded respectful attention for three-quarters of an hour by our committee on resolutions, when I argued the matter, but it was without avail. I will here submit what the statement and resolutions said, just as they read:

#### STATEMENTS OF THE PROPONEMENT OF THE RESOLUTIONS

\* \* \* \* \*

The liquor question should be taken out of partisan politics. Let the people make their constitution exactly as they want it.

The only method by which the actual number of votes favorable to the retention, the modification or the repeal of the Eighteenth Amendment can be certainly ascertained is by affording the elec-





torate an opportunity to express themselves individually through the ballot box. The people should be given a chance to speak directly on the fundamental question, whether or not intoxicating liquors may be lawfully used for beverage purposes. Any fair-minded political party can, without the sacrifice of any principle whatever, commit itself by its platform to a policy that will give such a chance to the electorate in every state at the earliest opportunity. The election of a President of the United States should not be made to turn solely upon an issue arising out of the liquor question. All right-thinking people will agree that the liquor traffic is a matter that demands regulation by law; but, in view of much disappointing experience, it seems wise at this juncture to pursue such a plan as will afford the American people an opportunity to decide for themselves in what body, or bodies, and to what extent, the law-making powers shall be vested. The author of the proposed resolutions believes their adoption and application will lead to that end. The vote of the electorate can be readily and inexpensively obtained at any primary, municipal or general election, and a change in the Constitution of the United States can be effected within a reasonable time, if the people in the required number of states desire any change to be made.

Respectfully submitted,

Richard H. Koch, Delegate,  
13th Congressional District,  
Pennsylvania.

RESOLUTIONS SUGGESTED BY RICHARD H. KOCH,  
DELEGATE FROM THE 13TH CONGRESSIONAL  
DISTRICT IN PENNA.

\* \* \* \* \*

RESOLVED That, in as much as it is provided in the 5th Article of the Constitution of the United States that "The Congress, . . . on the application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a Convention for proposing amendments" to the Constiution, and in as much as the retention, modification or repeal of the 18th Amendment can be achieved by the method so provided, and without making the subject an issue between the major political parties, and may be carried into effect in such manner as will afford every voter individually an opportunity to express his or her desire for the retention, modification or repeal of said amendment, the Republican National Convention hereby calls to the attention of all citizens, irrespective of their various political beliefs, the said provision in the Constitution





of the United States and commits itself to the proposition that the Legislature in each state shall provide by law, as early as possible, for a vote by all the citizens of such state to ascertain how many citizens therein favor the retention of the 18th Amendment to the Constitution of the United States, how many favor a modification of said amendment, and how many favor the repeal of said amendment, and further declares that, in every state where the number of votes cast in favor of the retention of said amendment is less than the combined number of votes cast for the modification or the repeal of said amendment, the Legislature of such state shall promptly apply to the Congress to call a Convention for proposing amendments to the Constitution of the United States. And it is further

RESOLVED That, until the said amendment is modified or repealed, this Convention stands for the enforcement thereof and of all laws passed pursuant thereto.

Franklin D. Roosevelt was elected President in November, 1932, and within a few months the Congress of the United States, by a two-thirds vote of each branch, proposed an amendment to the Constitution doing away with the Eighteenth Amendment, and the General Assembly of Pennsylvania passed an Act on the third of May, 1933, providing for the election of fifteen delegates in November for the purpose of ratifying, or not ratifying, the proposed amendment. The fifteen delegates favoring the repeal of the amendment were made up of Republicans and Democrats, I being one of them. Our election in no way affected the election of candidates for offices. The highest vote polled in favor of repeal was 1,864,411, and the highest vote polled against the repeal was 583,513. Strange to say, no two delegates on either ticket got the same number of votes. Each ticket was cut. The highest vote polled for a delegate on our ticket was 12,068 more than the lowest vote polled, and the highest vote polled for a delegate on the other ticket was 6,452 more than the lowest. I received 1,853,138 votes, whilst the highest vote on the opposite ticket was 583,513—a majority of 1,269,625 in my favor. That





majority was the highest I ever got for any office, and I have concluded not to spoil it by ever running for any other office. We were all elected by a vote that was better than three to one. We met in the State Senate Chamber at Harrisburg on the 5th of December, 1933, and our session was of short duration. We voted unanimously for the ratification of the amendment proposed by the Congress of the United States. The record shows that I then arose, made a short statement and submitted a resolution. The statement and resolution being as follows:

The Chairman. The Chair recognizes Judge Koch.

Mr. Koch. Mr. Chairman, since we have discharged the great work for which we have been elected, in order to relieve the people of the United States from the anxiety from which they may suffer, I submit and ask the adoption of a resolution.

The resolution was twice read by the Secretary as follows:

Hall of the Senate,  
December 5, 1933.

Resolved, That the Chairman and Secretary of this Convention, duly called and convened to determine the action to be taken by the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania with respect to the proposed amendment to the Constitution of the United States to repeal the eighteenth amendment, be directed to forthwith execute a certificate setting forth at length the resolution adopted by this convention ratifying said proposed amendment to the Constitution of the United States, and to transmit said certificate to the Secretary of the Commonwealth of this State, who shall transmit the said certificate under the Great Seal of the Commonwealth to the Secretary of State of the United States;

Resolved, That a copy of this resolution be transmitted to the Secretary of the Commonwealth by the Secretary of the Convention.

The Chairman. The Chair recognizes Judge Koch.

Mr. Koch. Mr. Chairman, I move the adoption of the resolution.

Mrs. Miller. Mr. Chairman, I second the motion.

The motion was agreed to unanimously.

The Amendment to the Constitution of the United States that we voted for is known as the Twenty-first.





The Twenty-first Amendment was ratified at various dates prior to December 5, 1933, by conventions in thirty-three States. Pennsylvania, Ohio, and Utah ratified the amendment on December 5, 1933, and the repeal of the Eighteenth Amendment became effective. The bootleggers and more than a million others in every walk of life who had become criminals by violating the Eighteenth Amendment and laws passed pursuant to it again joined the ranks of the law-abiding citizens of the Republic. When the prevailing sentiment within the domain of any legislative power is opposed to a law, the violation of which constitutes a crime, that law will in the course of time be modified or repealed. No law that makes it a crime to properly exercise any natural and inalienable right will long bear the respect of the people whom it affects. Such laws do more harm than good. They do not improve the morality of the people.

As certain facts respecting my married life appear in the thirteenth chapter of this book, they will not find repetition here.

Nine months and eleven days after our marriage our first child, LeRoy, was born, but he died within a year. Roscoe Richard, our second child, was born June 17, 1887. He was educated in the schools of Pottsville and the college of Princeton, where he graduated in 1909. Then he read law in my office and was admitted to the Bar early in 1912. During the administrations of Harding and Coolidge, he was for four years an assistant in the attorney general's office in Washington. He served under Daugherty, Sargeant and Stone. When John S. Fisher became Governor of Pennsylvania, Roscoe served as a deputy attorney general in Harrisburg. He got both positions without being an applicant, and even then accepted them only upon my great urging that he should do so, because of the experience he would have and the acquaintanceships that he would make. He was doing





very well in his private practice, but he yielded and served as already stated. However, in the latter position he spent only three days each week in Harrisburg. He is now associate counsel of the Insurance Company of North America in the city of Philadelphia and spends his time there. He married Louise Smyth and has two children, Richard Henry, who is a junior at Princeton, and Mary Louise, who is attending school near her home at Ardmore. When the World War was in progress, Roscoe wanted to enlist, but I objected because both of my sons-in-law and my other son, Marshall, were in the army or navy, and I thought three out of four were enough.

Helen Elizabeth, our third child, was born July 17, 1889. After graduating from Pottsville High School she went to Wilson College, but in the middle of her junior year voluntarily remained at home to help take care of her sick mother. In 1914 she married Joel T. Boone, a doctor in the United States Navy. He served as such during the World War in the front line and was in the severest battles in France. He was a surgeon in the Marine Corps. His heroic conduct and faithful services attracted the attention of higher officers, and he has received ten different decorations, being, I believe, the most decorated surgeon in the United States Navy. Without regard to the different times and places when he received these decorations, I will simply mention them.

Haitian Campaign Medal.

French Croix de Guerre (awarded twice).

Marine Corps Expeditionary Medal.

Order of The Purple Heart—cited four times.

Order of The Silver Star—cited five times.

Italian War Cross.

Victory Medal—for service in the World War. This medal has five "Battle Clasps" on the ribbon, naming engagements in which he took part.





Distinguished Service Cross.

Congressional Medal of Honor.

Officer of the Legion of Honor (French).

Being an officer of the United States, Doctor Boone could not accept the last decoration until permission was given to him by a Special Act of Congress for that purpose.

Helen remained at home with us during the World War. Her husband has had quite a career as a physician. President Harding made him surgeon on the Presidential Yacht, *Mayflower*, and as assistant physician at the White House. President Coolidge retained him in both positions. When Herbert Hoover became the President, he made Joel the physician at the White House. He is now Chief Medical Officer on the *Saratoga*, in the United States Navy, and is with the division of the fleet in the Pacific Ocean. His present rank is Captain. They have one child, Suzanne, who is a sophomore at Scripps College in California.

Our next child, Marshall McKinley, was born September 24, 1891. We named him Marshall after John Marshall, who was the greatest Chief Justice that the United States has ever had. I attended the Republican National Convention at Minneapolis in 1892, and when I saw the wonderful reception that Major William McKinley received upon his election as presiding officer, I predicted that in 1896 he would become the Republican nominee and would be elected President of the United States. Upon my return home, I mentioned the facts to my good wife, and we added McKinley to Marshall's name. McKinley was elected in 1896, and my wife was so elated over the fact that she wrote him a letter telling him of the prediction and the addition of his name to Marshall's. She promptly received a very cordial reply from that great man. After Marshall graduated in the Pottsville High School, he selected Cornell





University to finish his education. I allowed each of my children to select his or her finishing school, but upon the condition that, once begun, the education had to be finished at the particular school where it was begun. Upon graduation at Cornell in 1913, Marshall was surprised by his unsought and unexpected selection for a fellowship for the following year. He was allowed five hundred dollars toward the payment of his expenses for that year, and, at the end of it, he was awarded the degree of master of engineering and electricity. He has a fine mathematical mind. I had become acquainted with the firm of Henry L. Doherty & Co. in New York City. The firm controlled the Cities Service Company. On one occasion before Marshall graduated at Cornell, I told Mr. Brown, one of the firm, about Marshall, with the result that, when Marshall got his final degree, the company at once sent him a check to pay his way and expenses from Pottsville to Denver, Colorado. After being in Denver some time, the firm transferred him to their offices in New York. When the United States entered the World War he made several attempts to enlist, but was rejected because of "heart murmur." However, he was later drafted and sent to a training camp in Virginia, but, to his surprise, he was soon taken out of the camp and sent to the Bureau of Standards in Washington, where he was kept doing special work for the government until the war was over. Then he returned to his former employment in New York City. He there fell in love with Mary Elizabeth Von Kaentzel and married her in 1921, and, at his own request, he was transferred to Denver, Colorado. He wanted to go there to live because he liked Denver better than any place he had ever been in, and he has lived there ever since. He has never changed his employment since his graduation. He has three boys, Richard Collier, Marshall, and John Allen. The latter two are twins. Richard is in his





seventeenth year and is a student in the high school in Denver. The twins are twenty months younger. They also go to public school in Denver. They resemble each other so closely that they have been put in different schools because the teachers do not know them apart. When they were in the same school room one of them had an engagement with a dentist after school closed on a certain day, but, because he had violated some rule, the teacher told him to remain after school. His brother substituted, and he met his appointment with the dentist. The joke was too good to be kept secret, and, when it became known, the twins were put in different schools.

Mary Marjorie, our last child, was born September 22, 1893. After her graduation in Pottsville, she went to Dana Hall, Wellesly, Massachusetts, and graduated there in a year. In 1917 she married John Parke Hood, Jr., and is the mother of two children, John Parke Hood, 3rd, and Marjorie. John graduated at the Pottsville High School and is now a junior at Lafayette College. Marjorie is in the graduating class in the Pottsville High School.

When my daughter, Marjorie, was about eighteen months old she had a very severe attack of what the doctor called cerebro spinal meningitis. She was unconscious for seventeen days. I remained at home during all of that period. She required care during every minute of those four hundred and eight hours. Her right arm was in action practically all of the time, and her right cheek would have been pounded into a jelly, had not some one constantly watched and prevented the blows from landing. Dr. Francis W. Boyer, her physician, told me not to wish for her recovery. He thought she would be a paralytic or feeble-minded for the balance of her lifetime. I told him that, like some lawyers, he might have fallen into a rut and become too puzzled to know how to get out of it. So I called in Dr. Charles H.





Haesler for consultation. He was a great physician and had a natural intuition of disease. He sat by Marjorie's side and held her pulse for half an hour, and then turned to me and said, "We will not give this baby up," and we did not. Nor is she a paralytic or feeble-minded. Marjorie's illness was followed by a long spell of illness by her mother.

In 1891 my wife's mother came to live with us, her mother having died that year. She lived with us until she died in April, 1925, three months before my wife died.

All in all, I had a great deal of sickness in my house during my married life, but I always provided the best medical care and nurses that I could get. During the last four years of my wife's life, I had a nurse constantly in the house.

Like many other men, I have not stood aside. I became a member of a number of different organizations. In 1871 I joined Washington Camp, No. 100, Patriotic Order Sons of America, in New Ringgold, and I have continued my membership in that order ever since. But I quit my membership in Camp 100 in the early eighties in order to help reorganize Camp 14 in Pottsville. That Camp had gone out of existence in the early part of the Civil War, because all of its members, excepting one, had enlisted in the service of the Union army or navy.

During the Centennial Celebration in 1876, Valley Forge was visited by many people, and some of those resident there and in its vicinity later conceived the idea of acquiring Washington's Headquarters for patriotic purposes. They negotiated for the purchase of the property for six thousand dollars, and one of them advanced the down payment of five hundred dollars. They made heroic efforts to raise all the required cash and arranged for the Centennial Celebration of Washington's evacuation of Valley Forge on the 19th of June, 1878. The





celebration was a great success — it was attended by about fifty thousand people, but the net cash result was disappointing. However, with money raised elsewhere by fetes, celebrations, etc., a sum total of three thousand dollars was raised to apply to the purchase of Washington's Headquarters. Seven leaders in the movement formed a corporation under the name of "The Centennial and Memorial Association of Valley Forge" and obtained a charter on the 5th of July, 1878. Therein it is stated that "The purpose of this Association shall be to purchase, improve and preserve the lands and improvements thereon, occupied by General George Washington, at Valley Forge, and maintain them as a memorial park for all time to come."

Later on, I became well acquainted with all of the incorporators.

Upon acquisition of the title to the Headquarters, payment of the balance of the price, three thousand dollars, was secured by a purchase-money mortgage. To pay the interest, taxes, upkeep and services of a warden, an admission fee of ten cents was collected from visitors to the Headquarters. But that fee did not yield all the cash required. That fact was brought to the attention of Henry J. Stager in the latter part of 1885. He was the State President of the Patriotic Order Sons of America in Pennsylvania. He made an appeal to the various camps in the State for cash contributions to prevent the sale of Washington's Headquarters under foreclosure proceedings. At the next annual meeting of the State Camp (in August, 1886), he was assailed for his action by one or two delegates, but won the State Camp's approval by a practical unanimous vote. He had raised nearly all the money necessary to pay off the mortgage. Those in control of the association were so pleased with President Stager's action that eleven members of the Order were made directors of the association, on Novem-

The first of these is the fact that the system is not self-sufficient. It is not possible to produce all the goods and services that are needed for the system to function. This is because the system is based on a division of labour. Some people are specialized in producing certain goods, while others are specialized in producing other goods. This specialization allows for a more efficient production of goods, but it also means that the system is dependent on the production of other goods. If one of the specialized producers fails to produce their goods, the system as a whole will be affected. This is why it is important to have a system of exchange that allows for the distribution of goods and services. Without such a system, the system would be unable to function.

The second of these is the fact that the system is not self-sufficient. It is not possible to produce all the goods and services that are needed for the system to function. This is because the system is based on a division of labour. Some people are specialized in producing certain goods, while others are specialized in producing other goods. This specialization allows for a more efficient production of goods, but it also means that the system is dependent on the production of other goods. If one of the specialized producers fails to produce their goods, the system as a whole will be affected. This is why it is important to have a system of exchange that allows for the distribution of goods and services. Without such a system, the system would be unable to function.

The third of these is the fact that the system is not self-sufficient. It is not possible to produce all the goods and services that are needed for the system to function. This is because the system is based on a division of labour. Some people are specialized in producing certain goods, while others are specialized in producing other goods. This specialization allows for a more efficient production of goods, but it also means that the system is dependent on the production of other goods. If one of the specialized producers fails to produce their goods, the system as a whole will be affected. This is why it is important to have a system of exchange that allows for the distribution of goods and services. Without such a system, the system would be unable to function.



ber 9, 1886, I being one of them. Each of us became a member of the corporation by purchasing a share of stock for one dollar. On that day we turned over to the treasury of the association three thousand, three hundred and seventy dollars and ninety-eight cents, plus our eleven dollars for shares of stock. The association had eighty-seven dollars and forty cents in the treasury before that. The cash was soon applied to pay off the mortgage of three thousand dollars, plus three hundred and sixty-eight dollars and ninety-one cents of interest and one hundred and ten dollars for back taxes. The Headquarters then stood redeemed and free of debt.

At the meeting on November 9, 1886, I was made chairman of a committee to draw a special bill for an appropriation, by the General Assembly, of five thousand dollars to our association. I went to Harrisburg and saw Governor Beaver about the matter in January, 1887, and he said that, if the attorney general considered such a law constitutional, he would gladly support its passage and sign it. I then saw the attorney general and satisfied him respecting the matter.

When General Beaver lost a leg in the Civil War, Mrs. Holstein was one of his nurses. She was the regent of our association. The general and I had made political speeches on the same platforms before he was elected Governor and were well known to each other. That acquaintanceship gave me assurance for my mission, and I was cordially received by the Governor when I called on him in the State Capitol. At a meeting of the officers and board of directors of the association on April 29, 1887, I reported the passage of the special bill and payment of the five thousand dollars to our association. I may say here, that, when Grover Cleveland was President, for the second time, I went to Washington to see him about getting an appropriation of twenty-five thousand dollars for our association. But he was opposed to





it, and we dropped the matter. I considered his objections as irrebuttable. He said that, if Congress gave us twenty-five thousand dollars, Mount Vernon, Newburgh, and all other places where Washington had headquarters or perhaps had stayed only over night would make similar requests, and, if ours were granted, all would have to be granted. And besides, he thought it wiser for the people living in such places to have sufficient patriotic pride for their perpetual preservation.

In 1888 the association built a lodge for its warden, or caretaker. The land at the Headquarters was over two acres. In 1890, a property in the rear of it, having Washington's Spring on it, was acquired by the association for twelve hundred dollars, and in 1894 a property on the side of the Headquarters, known as the Crawford property, was bought by the association for three thousand dollars. The barn on that property was used as a hospital during Washington's encampment at Valley Forge. It is now the Headquarters for the Valley Forge Park Commission. After the acquisition of the Crawford property the total acreage of the association was four and eighty-eight one hundredth. The Valley Forge Park Commission was created by virtue of an Act of Assembly of May 30, 1893. That Act authorized the commissioners to "condemn not exceeding 250 acres for Park purposes but not including the property of The Centennial & Memorial Association of Valley Forge." But the Act was so amended by an Act, approved April 7, 1905, that the acreage of the State Park was increased to one thousand, and condemnation of the property of The Centennial and Memorial Association of Valley Forge was not excluded. To the best of my recollection, that legislation was not known to any officer or director of the association until, when we were holding our yearly meeting at Washington's Headquarters on June 19, 1905, the president of the commission, accompanied by several of the commis-





sioners, appeared and informed us of their condemnation of our property and of our ouster of its control thereafter. The surprise was unpleasant to all of us. In the nineteen years of our management, not a single dollar was ever taken out of the treasury to reimburse any officer, or director, for travelling or other expenses incurred to attend any meetings. Such expenses were quite an item for one member of our board who lived in Williamsport and another who lived in Altoona. The total number of meetings of members and officers was one hundred and seventeen when the association was dissolved on the 10th of June, 1910. The objection to our existence was the admission fee of ten cents, which was charged to visit the Headquarters. We had no other source of revenue, and that was used to pay for the upkeep, taxes, and salary of our warden, or caretaker.

Appraisers fixed the value of our property, and it was paid by the State. Then arose the question whether the numerous camps and stockholders should receive that money in proportion to the amount they had put into the association, or whether the sum should be devoted to a charity, and, if so, to what charitable purpose the fund should be awarded. By the time the litigation was over, and when the courts had finally decided against the camps and the stockholders, the cash balance on hand was fifteen thousand dollars. There were two rivals for this charitable fund, and the court awarded it to the Valley Forge Park Commission in Trust.

I had been a director of the association from November 9, 1886, to the date of its dissolution, June 10, 1910.

In 1923, the Governor of the State, upon the suggestion of some person unknown to me, appointed me as one of the commissioners of the park, and, at the first meeting of the commissioners thereafter, I was appointed trust officer of the said fifteen thousand dollars, which was in the form of coupon bonds. I acted as such trust officer





for the next eight years, during which time I was one of the commissioners. My joint active service in connection with some of the camping ground therefore extended through a period of twenty-seven years—a longer time than that of any other person that I can recall.

In 1874, I became a member of Huguenot Lodge No. 377, F. & A. M., at Kutztown, and was Master of the Lodge in 1879. Up to that time I was the twelfth to hold that position, and well knew all of my predecessors in office. Of the first nineteen, I am the only surviving Past Master, and for some years have been a life member of the Lodge. I am also a Royal Arch Mason, a Knight Templar, and a Shriner.

I am the last surviving officer of the famous Pottsville Fishing Party, being its secretary. I became a member of the party in the early eighties and secretary in the nineties. The party was instituted August 21, 1853, and was re-organized August 27, 1873. The party had only one meeting in each year, and that was in the last week of August. It met in the People's Railway Park, where there was a fine, large pavilion, and a good spring. Originally the party met at beautiful place on the Tumbling Run Creek, near the upper end of the upper dam on that stream. But in the early years of the party's life, one of its members fell into the Tumbling Run, and they immediately resolved never to go near the water again. That was long before I became a member of the party. Hon. Simon Cameron, who was one of Lincoln's first cabinet officers and a United States Senator from Pennsylvania, and a leading Republican politician during his whole lifetime, helped to institute the party and always remained a member of it, and attended its annual meetings. The party had its own song book, containing twenty-five selected songs. It was entitled *Songs of the Pottsville Fishing Party*.





Our invitation was very beautiful. On the first page was the picture of a brook trout in its natural colors. The trout had a fly hook in its mouth attached to a taut line. Any invited guest who received that invitation was greatly pleased, and, occasionally, such a guest came to the party full rigged for fishing, not knowing that we stayed away from places that contained too much water. We did not fish; we ate, drank fish-house punch, old rye and champagne, told stories, made speeches, played cards, chatted, and sang from 11 A. M. to 6:30 P. M., when all went home happy, although not all drank anything stronger than coffee, tea or water. We always had a fine caterer from Philadelphia. He came with all the food and the help required to serve a great dinner. We had our own specially made decorated dishes of every kind, and all necessary linen which was well identified by a special decoration, and we had all the silverware we needed. The decoration on the dishes showed a man sitting on the border fishing; and a great American sucker hooked and in the act of being pulled out of the water. From the border was also suspended strings holding bottles of champagne and "J. B.," those letters meaning old rye whiskey, which was distilled by Jacob Bear in York County. That was the brand that James Buchanan kept in the Whitehouse when he was President of the United States. Our annual dues were only five dollars, but we paid two dollars extra for a bottle of champagne, which was furnished by the party at the annual dinner. All the other drinks were free, as were also a good line of cigars. Of course, our dishes, linen and silverware could not be bought out of such small dues. They were paid for by the subscriptions of a few generous members of the party. Many of the out-of-town guests and the caterer and his help were brought to the People's Railway Park in special cars, which were put on the siding while the party was being held. I do not have any of our menus. The





*Pottsville Journal* (formerly *Miners Journal*), in 1933, republished, under the title, "43 Years Ago," the following:

The Pottsville Fishing Party had its thirty seventh annual outing at Railway Park on Thursday. George R. Kaercher and Mason Weidman were among the speakers. Guests were present from New York, Philadelphia and Bethlehem. The luncheon menu included snapper soup, deviled crabs, chicken croquettes, cold roast beef, tomatoes, celery, olives, vienna rolls. The dinner which was served at three o'clock was composed of green turtle soup, baked Spanish mackeral, potatoes, cucumber salad, tenderloin of beef with fresh mushrooms, sugar corn, lima beans, lobster salad, roast grouse with currant jelly, charlotte russe, meringue glace, cantaloupe, watermelon, peaches, grapes, pears, cheese and coffee.

That is a fair sample of what we had to eat.

The territory in which our members resided extended from Williamsport to Philadelphia, and from Harrisburg to Easton. Those resident in Schuylkill County lived in Pottsville, Minersville, Cressona, Schuylkill Haven, Tamaqua, Mahanoy City, Shenandoah, Girardville, Girard Manor, and Ashland.

The party had a board of twenty managers, from among whom four officers were chosen: President, vice-president, treasurer, and secretary, and the officers did all the managing. I got on the board of managers in 1884 and was kept there during the balance of the party's life. I think I became the secretary in 1893. For the time being I cannot place my hands on the minute book. I do not recall what I did with it.

When I joined the society, Judge William Donaldson was its very efficient president. He died in 1887 and was succeeded by Judge David B. Green, who died in 1893, and was succeeded by Judge Mason Weidman. After Judge Weidman died in 1897, the officers were Guy E. Farquhar, Judge David C. Henning, Walter S. Sheaffer, and myself. With the passing of Presidents Donaldson, Green, and Weidman went gradually the





old-time spirit of the party. The interest of the members became less and less, and when Walter S. Sheaffer, who had been the treasurer from back in the seventies died in 1908, the flickering light of the party gradually went out, and the annual meetings came to an end.

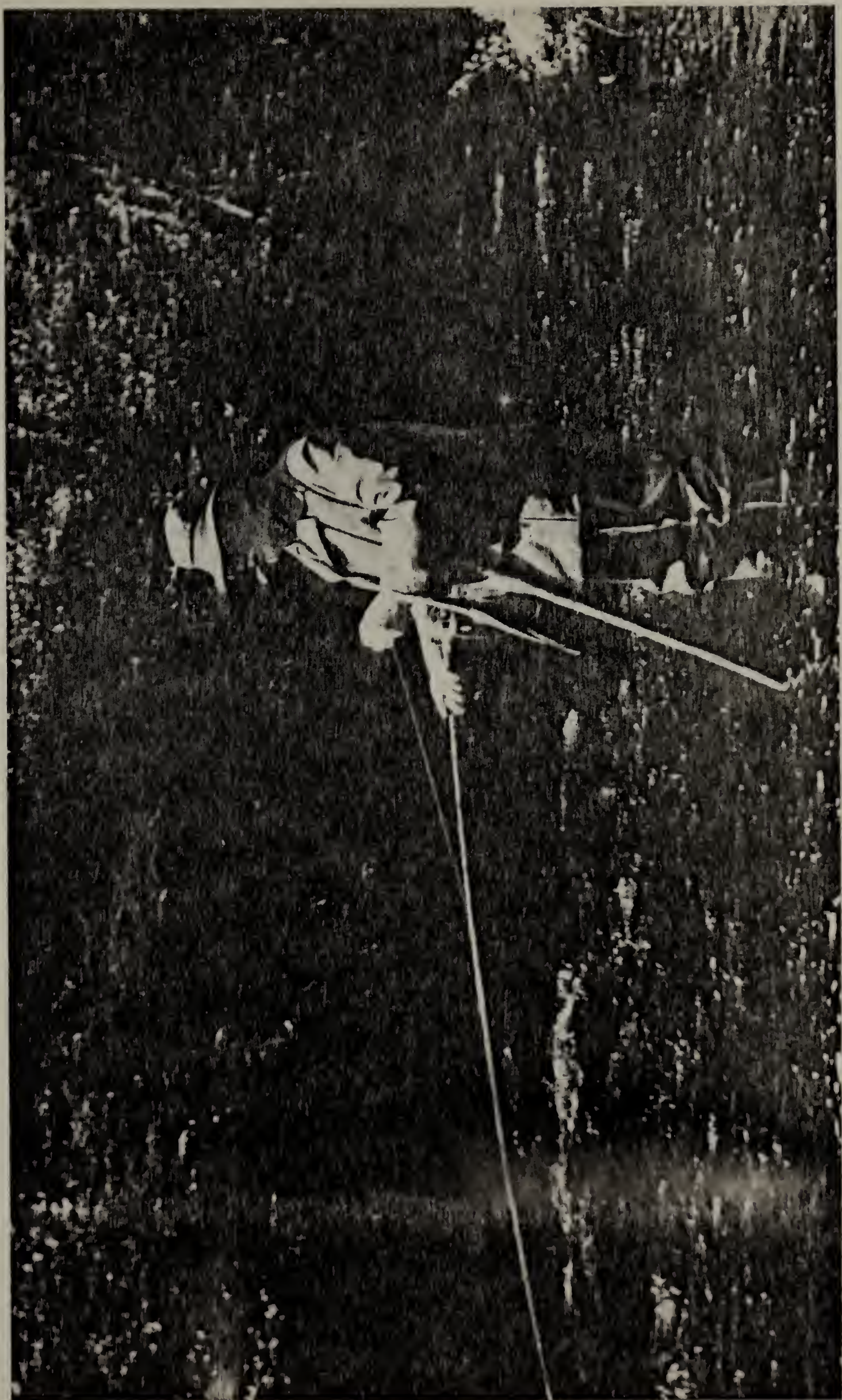
Several years after the annual meetings ceased to be held, I corresponded with or saw the surviving members of the party, and, with their consent, presented to the Pottsville Club all the dishes, linen and silver of the party. By this time all the linen has been worn out, and very few of the dishes and some of the hard-worn silver only remain. I have presented to the Historical Society of Schuylkill County two plates, one knife, one fork, one spoon, the song book and a copy of the invitations that were issued in 1884 and 1892. As the minute book is not at hand, I am unable to furnish a complete list of the members. I knew all of them who were members in my time, and, with the help of William D. Baber, who is the only other surviving member of the party in Schuylkill County, I will here give the names of all that I can recall.

Charles M. Atkins,  
William Atkins,  
Dr. William J. Ashfelter,  
Edward Ash,  
Charles Baber,  
J. C. Bright,  
Judge Charles N. Brumm,  
Wm. D. Baber,  
E. B. Byington,  
Alonzo P. Blakeslee,  
W. C. Butterfield,  
C. A. Blood,  
Willis L. Bryant,  
P. F. Brendlinger,  
S. B. Briscoe,  
Dr. D. W. Bland,  
Asa P. Blakeslee,  
Hon. Simon Cameron.

George S. Clemens,  
David Clarke,  
Harry P. Cooper,  
Judge William Donaldson,  
Frank P. Dewees,  
Cyrus G. Derr, Esq.,  
Henry Eppenheimer,  
Hunter Eckert,  
Guy E. Farquhar, Esq.,  
John David B. Green,  
H. C. Gritinger,  
Theodore Garretson,  
H. Stanley Goodwin,  
Hon. Francis W. Hughes,  
Jesse G. Hawley,  
A. D. Hoffer,  
Judge D. C. Henning,  
W. A. Hewes,













Dr. George H. Halberstadt,  
A. Hess,  
J. M. Harris,  
Frank A. Hill,  
John Hoffer,  
Jacob P. Jones,  
J. Harry James, Esq.,  
George de B. Keim,  
George R. Kaercher, Esq.,  
Hon. Luther R. Keefer,  
Judge Richard H. Koch,  
Samuel H. Kaercher, Esq.,  
Roland C. Luther,  
Dr. W. K. Lineaweaver,  
W. Lorenz,  
Riolla F. Lee,  
John W. Mish,  
A. C. Milliken,  
Ben Bryson McCool,  
Hon. W. C. McConnell,  
Abraham Markle,  
H. A. Muhlenberg,  
Judge William A. Marr,  
William Nolan,  
Henry K. Nichols,  
William D. Pollard,  
Henry C. Russel,  
Oliver J. Roads,

Col. Henry Royer,  
Lewis C. Royer,  
Hon. James B. Reilly,  
Thomas A. Reilly,  
F. Reading,  
Walter S. Sheaffer,  
Alexander Silliman,  
Conrad Seltzer,  
Conrad F. Shindle,  
Charles S. Shindle,  
George B. Schock,  
J. M. Schenk,  
P. A. Taylor,  
C. H. Tyson,  
Hon. William L. Torbert,  
J. T. Valentine,  
R. H. Wilbur,  
Judge Mason Weidman,  
Grant Weidman,  
Col. J. M. Wetherill,  
W. J. Whitehouse,  
Charles E. Webster,  
John H. Weeks,  
Robert F. Weaver,  
W. B. Wells,  
J. Marshall Wright,  
Robert E. Wright,  
Frederick C. Yuengling.

But I did become a member of a real fishing party. Twenty-seven years ago I became a shareholder in the Tunkhanna Fishing Association, which owns the land underneath and a strip thirty feet wide on each side of about six miles of the Little Tunkhannock Creek, on the Pocono Mountains, and I have fished there in every trout fishing season ever since. Judge Gangloff caught me in the act on June 7, 1938, when I was unaware of his intention. A copy of the photograph appears here in this book.

The stream goes through the woods in all of our preserve, but is crossed by two public roads. It is the most





attractive creek that I have ever seen. I think the highest point in our preserve is about 1900 feet above sea level. Our corporation was formed in 1892 and, until within the last few years, its membership was limited to ten, but has been increased to twelve.

The stream is annually well stocked with trout large enough to catch, and is guarded by two wardens against trespassers. The stream has very many fine pools and can be waded in all but a few places. Judges Green and Weidman were two of the original members in this association. The present members reside in Binghamton, New York; New York City, Wilkes-Barre, Hazleton, Allentown, Philadelphia, Haverford, and Mount Carmel. I recently transferred my share to my son, Roscoe, who lives in Haverford, Pennsylvania.

For many years I was a member of the board of trustees of my Alma Mater.

My father was interested in the erection and dedication of the Henry Clay Monument, and I was likewise interested in the Soldiers Monument in Garfield Square, Pottsville, Pennsylvania.

In February, 1891, I joined the Pottsville Club and am still a member of it. I was its president for six years and one of its board of directors for some years. It was during my presidency that the club acquired its present property on Mahantongo Street, and I raised most of the money to purchase and improve the club's property.

I was, for more than a decade, a member of the Blue Mountain Club and for some years a member of the Schuylkill Country Club and of the Pottsville Musical Association.

I did not work all the time. I took vacations and travelled some, both by land and sea.

I am one of the few surviving founders of Lodge No. 207 Benevolent Protective Order of Elks in Pottsville,





in which I still retain my membership. Its quarters are directly opposite those of the Pottsville Club.

I became connected with the local Y. M. C. A. at an early date, and am now, and have been for years, one of its board of trustees.

My parents were raised in the Lutheran Church and became members of it, but in the early fifties they joined the Church of God, in which they were devoted members the balance of their lifetime. My father and mother gained some additional adherents to that faith in Fleetwood soon after we moved there, and it resulted in the formation of a congregation and the building of a church for it. My father donated the land for the purpose and contributed a considerable amount of the cash that was needed to build the church.

I was too skeptical to join the church of my father and mother, although I attended it pretty regularly as a boy while I was living at home. When I came to Pottsville, I started to attend the Second Presbyterian Church, and I continued to do so, until within the last few years I have quit for physical reasons, but I still contribute to its support. My wife was raised in the Methodist Church, but when I brought her to Pottsville she attached herself to the Presbyterian Church and became a member of it, as did also my four children. I was a member of the board of trustees there and was its president for thirteen years. But I belong to the First Unitarian Church of Philadelphia, although I have rarely attended services there, because I have seldom been away from home over Sunday. That church was founded by the Rev. Dr. Joseph Priestly in 1795. The doctor was a scientist. He discovered oxygen, the most abundant element in the world. He was a warm friend of Benjamin Franklin, George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, and other great men of his time. He finally settled at Northumberland, Pennsylvania, where he died and is buried. I have always





been perfectly satisfied with my membership in the Unitarian Church. Our only pledge is to worship God and serve mankind, irrespective of our individual notions or beliefs respecting religious matters that divide the people of the world into so many sects. We cannot and do not quarrel with any of them, but respect them all for their faith and sincerity, whether we agree with them or not. Were all people like Unitarians in their religious notions, there never would have been such a thing as persecution on account of religion. The Spanish Inquisition and the night of St. Bartholomew would never have occurred and would not be a lasting disgrace to history. In my lifetime I have never found anybody whose religious ideas caused me to respect him less on that account, and I have had very good friends among Romanists, Protestants, and Jews. I am sure I could get along as well with pagans, because I am a free thinker and must concede to every other person the right to think freely. No one can think in any other way. Thinking is a free, quiet process of the mind, beyond the ken of all other minds for the time being. However, the thinking of one person may be greatly influenced by the previously expressed thoughts of other persons on the same subject. But, notwithstanding such influence, the thinking still proceeds freely, and the right to think freely is absolutely unalienable. Beliefs are the result of free thinking, although such beliefs are frequently subject to change. We may argue with each other respecting our beliefs, but that is no reason why we should persecute those whose beliefs differ from our own. I, therefore, have respect and tolerance for every one's religious ideas when I believe they are sincere.

About thirty years ago, I joined the Pennsylvania Society in New York, and up to within a few years ago I attended its annual dinner there. I still retain my membership in it, but I have not attended the dinner





for the last three years, because I like to be at home at night, where I can find the door knobs and electric buttons in the dark.

I belong to three historical societies—The Pennsylvania, the one in Berks County, and the one in Schuylkill County. I have also been for many years a member of the Geographical Society of Philadelphia.

In 1929, I joined the Pennsylvania German Society, which was organized in 1891 and incorporated in 1930. Its first president was Hon. George F. Baer, Esq., then president of the Philadelphia & Reading Railroad Company and the Philadelphia & Reading Coal & Iron Company. The next president was Dr. William H. Egle. Among the subsequent presidents were Governors Samuel W. Pennypacker, James A. Beaver, and William G. Brumbaugh. All the past presidents of the society were prominent men. I may name Hon. John Wanamaker, William U. Hensel; Rev. Nathan C. Schaeffer, D. D., who for twenty-six years was superintendent of public instruction in Pennsylvania. Since 1928, Ralph Beaver Strassburger, LL. D., has been the president. The membership has an annual meeting in October, which is always well attended. Its annual publication is of great value, particularly, Vol. XLIX of the *Proceedings of the Society*, published in three volumes in 1934. The title of the books is *Pennsylvania German Pioneers*, and its combined number of pages is 2378. Its publication was made possible by the generosity of Doctor Strassburger, and its preparation was by himself and edited by William John Hinke, Ph. D., D. D. The books are "A Publication of the original lists of arrivals in the Port of Philadelphia from 1727 to 1808." My personal acquaintance with both of those men is slight, but I knew Doctor Strassburger's mother very well. Her name was Mary Jane Beaver, who graduated from the Keystone State Normal School in June, 1874. I was her teacher in





higher arithmetic, algebra, geometry, and civil government.

When our boys went to the Mexican border, W. J. Richards, president of the Philadelphia & Reading Coal & Iron Company, led in the formation of what was called the Patriotic League in Schuylkill County, and I became an active member of it. It did great service during the World War. Mr. Richards is a wonderful organizer, and, under his very able leadership, the membership in the Patriotic League became large, and its work in every direction was most valuable. It was particularly so when we had the great epidemic of influenza. I recall that, at a meeting one night, it was reported that about eighteen thousand people were sick with influenza in Schuylkill County.

During the World War we had what was called the Four-Minute Men, who belonged to the Committee on Public Information. I was selected as one of them, and as such was in the service of the United States. It required me to speak four minutes at each of four movie shows in Pottsville at least once every week, which meant four nights a week, but I frequently spoke outside of the movies at many points in Schuylkill County and at some places outside of it. Some weeks I spoke every night somewhere. Although I was a Four-Minute Man, I sometimes spoke as long as an hour to audiences outside of the theatres. We were in such service for eighteen months, and at the end of it we received a framed certificate of honor.

Mine reads as follows:





This Certificate of Honor  
Is Presented To  
HON. RICHARD H. KOCH  
On the Occasion of his Honorable Discharge  
from the Service of the United States and  
In Recognition of  
Loyal and Devoted Service as a  
FOUR-MINUTE MAN  
of the  
COMMITTEE ON PUBLIC INFORMATION  
During the War of  
1917-18

I have made a great many speeches in my time, but can recall only three that were written and committed to memory before they were delivered. The occasions of their delivery were the night of the 9th of April, 1869, when I graduated from the Keystone State Normal School in June, 1871, and in the Academy of Music in Pottsville on Memorial Day, 1885. And even on the last two of those occasions I was obliged to refer to my manuscript once or twice. I, therefore, have been what is called an extemporaneous speaker. I have no copies of the written speeches, but I think the *Miners Journal* printed the speech I made on Memorial Day, 1885.

In 1933, I visited my daughter, Helen, in Washington, and attended the President's Inauguration on the 4th of March and came home on the 7th. On the 8th of March I was called on the telephone and asked by the county commissioners to speak at the dedication of the new large addition to the Court House on March 11th, and I agreed to do so. As soon as I could clear my desk of some accumulated letters and other work I began to gather data for the speech and made necessary notes of dates and names which I had before me when I spoke in the new Orphans' Court Room. They had a loud speaker connected with Court Rooms One and Two, and the three rooms were crowded with people. I spoke extemporaneously for





about fifty-five minutes and saw no one leave the room while I was talking. The county commissioners had the chief court stenographer there to note everything that was said on that occasion. They then had him put his notes in typewritten form, and, I understand, it was then filed in the prothonotary's office. The stenographer kindly supplied me with a copy of it, and as it is the only preserved speech I have, and outside of it I can point to no other, unless some of my charges to juries which appear in paper books may be called speeches. They were always extemporaneous.

As at least half a century of my lifetime has been closely associated with the Court House and the Courts and is a part of my own history and as my remarks at said dedication refer to some local history that may be interesting to others, I will here quote what was said by the President of the Board of County Commissioners and myself on that occasion.

Chairman Adamson introduced Honorable Richard Henry Koch, former President Judge, retired, in the following words:

Every worthy movement has its directing genius. Just so, we can point to-day to the man who has contributed most, because of his loyalty, his ability and his fairness as a public official, in the Judiciary of Schuylkill County, over a period of twenty years; who has served his country, his county and fellowmen well. No man can boast of a more zealous desire to see this improvement to a successful conclusion than the man whom I am about to introduce; and to-day, while facing the sunset hills of his life, the people of Schuylkill County can look upon him and do him honor, as he views and looks upon the masterpiece of his design; and, therefore, I have the extreme pleasure of presenting the Honorable Richard Henry Koch, Judge of the courts of Schuylkill County.

Judge Koch said:

Mr. President of the Board of County Commissioners, and Chairman of the meeting; fellow Judges; Ladies and Gentlemen: That introduction is a little bit embarrassing. It reminds me of a negro down in Georgia, who was asked what would he do if he got a letter from the Ku Klu Klan. He said, "I'd read





it on the train." So I will postpone my further consideration of that introduction until I am all alone in my library, and will then think it over. But I feel a sense of obligation for the high honor paid, Mr. Chairman, by your form of introduction.

This is the sixth building that has been erected in this county for the preservation of the public records and the holding of its several courts. By the Act of March 1, 1811, the townships of Manheim, Brunswick, Schuylkill, Norwegian, Lower Mahantongo, Upper Mahantongo and Pine Grove were taken from the County of Berks, and the townships of West Penn and Rush were taken from the County of Northampton and erected into what is known as the County of Schuylkill. Seven years later, by an Act, a part of Columbia County and a part of Luzerne County were put together and called Union Township, and added to the territory of Schuylkill County. That is its territory to-day, and has been ever since 1818.

By the Act of 1811, it was provided that until a site would be selected for the building of a court house, the court should be held in the house of Abraham Reifsnnyder, in the township of Brunswick. At that time, there was no incorporated town within the territory that composed Schuylkill County. There were three rivals for the county-seat — McKeansburg, named after Governor McKean, and the oldest town or village in the county; Orwigsburg and Schuylkill Haven. By the terms of the Act, the Governor of the Commonwealth was to appoint three men as a committee to select the site for the court house, none of which men could then be a resident of Berks or of Northampton County, or, of course, of Schuylkill County.

This committee of three came into the vicinity to look over these rival places; and certain citizens, enterprising, of course, in the little village of Orwigsburg, who were most ambitious to have that place made the county-seat, had gotten the owners of the sawmills up along the Mohannon Creek to let their dams fill with water, and, at about the time the committee was expected to come, to open the flood gates, so as to make a great stream to show them as a reminder of what facilities Orwigsburg would have as a manufacturing site; and the committee went away, and Orwigsburg became the county-seat.

Of course, there could be no provision for the calling of a jury, or of grand jurors, for the third Monday of December, which was fixed for the first holding of the court.





Think of the territory then covered by the Third Judicial District of Pennsylvania — The County of Schuylkill, the County of Berks, the big County of Northampton, which then included the present territory of Lehigh, Carbon, Monroe and Pike Counties, and the County of Wayne. It took in all that territory running up in the northeastern part of the State.

The County of Schuylkill was, as I said, part of the Third Judicial District. So the term had to be fixed to have its starting time after the courts were held in the County of Wayne. Think of the distance they had to travel in all that country. So they fixed the third Monday of December, 1811, as the time for our first court. The constables for the various townships, except Rush put in an appearance; but, as the Act provided that for all cases that had been started prior to the opening of the court on the third Monday of December, 1811, the business should be done in the respective counties of Berks and Northampton, from which this county was taken, no cases were tried at that court. The next criminal court was held in February, and then they had seven cases.

Of course, business kept on developing, and Orwigsburg remained the county-seat. But the time came when the county-seat was changed; it was shifted, and a new court house was erected. Now, that is a long and interesting story, but I think I will have to tell it to you.

The first road built or made up through this region was not any better than a bridle path, from Philadelphia to what was known as Fort Augusta, where Sunbury stands. The next through road was the Centre Turnpike. That was started about 1805. It had first been constructed to Reading, and then from Reading it was to come north and go to Fort Augusta. That created a through route, and it came through Orwigsburg and up into Pottsville and up to Ashland and then into Mahantongo Township and over to Sunbury.

Coal was discovered hereabouts, and the question of its transportation to the city and to tidewater became very important. So certain men (White & Hazzard were at the head of it) applied to the Legislature for a charter to improve the navigation of the Schuylkill River. That was away back in 1812. The Senator from Schuylkill County opposed the incorporation of the canal company saying that "they had found a hard, black stone that they call coal, but it won't burn," and therefore the canal company was not incorporated. But they kept at it, and three years later they got a charter for the building of the Schuylkill Canal. That, in time,





was constructed, and finally opened for full operation in 1825. They shipped coal as early as 1821, but they poled it down the canal; the banks had not been completed — the towpath and all that. So they had a canal running from Pottsville down along the Schuylkill River, past Port Clinton, and thence to Philadelphia.

Coal was discovered, and in order to get it down to this canal, they incorporated the Schuylkill Valley Railroad, running from Port Carbon to Tuscarora. Port Carbon was the head of the canal. A branch of the canal came up into Pottsville, to just about where Market Street touches the Reading railroad; that was the end of the canal in Pottsville. They incorporated and built a railroad from Port Carbon up along the Mill Creek. That ran up there for about four miles, up toward New Castle, for the purpose of getting the coal down to the canal docks at Port Carbon. They built another railroad, from Mount Carbon up through Pottsville, paralleling Norwegian Creek and both of its branches. They built another railroad, beginning at Schuylkill Haven, called Mine Hill & Schuylkill Haven Railroad, and that ran away up to the Broad Mountain, a distance of thirteen miles. So, you see, they had all these railroads to carry coal down to this canal. It was hauled down on wooden rails that were topped with pieces of iron.

At that time, people were speculating in this community. Pottsville became an El Dorado. It resembled later places like Oil City and Cripple Creek; places in California during the gold fever, and Leadville in Colorado. Speculation ran high, and fortunes were made and fortunes were lost, and they had a panic, exactly one hundred years before we had ours in 1929 — namely, in 1829. There was a terrific panic here, because of over-speculation.

These railroads had been projected just about that time, 1829, and they had all been completed by 1831; even the one running from Tamaqua down to the canal at Port Carbon was completed about 1831. This community here, Port Carbon, and all around, became the settled community of the county. The population was only between six and seven thousand when the county was erected. Then the people of Pottsville met down at the Exchange Hotel (which was later conducted by Cyrus Palmer's grandfather for many years), in 1831, and passed a resolution to set a movement on foot to make Pottsville the county-seat. Well, down in Orwigsburg they were almost as smart, and they got together about in January, 1832, and passed a resolution that they would not put





the county-seat up in Pottsville, where there were a lot of "Idlers and lot holders and speculators," and it didn't go through.

Samuel Potts had used anthracite coal as early as 1827 to run a sawmill in the neighborhood of Pottsville. It was found that they could use the anthracite coal to make steam; and in 1839 the Pioneer Furnace down on Humane Island, just across the Schuylkill River, began to use anthracite coal for smelting purposes, for iron ore, and in the first year thirty thousand tons were used for that purpose. The result of the matter was that the Lehigh Valley and the Schuylkill Valley became the center of the iron trade in North America.

The next thing we had was a railroad — a real railroad, incorporated under the name of the Philadelphia and Reading Railroad, from Philadelphia up to Mount Carbon. It was opened on the first of January, 1842, when the first passenger train came up; and as early as March in 1843, one hundred and fifty cars of coal were brought down the Mine Hill Railroad and taken down to Philadelphia over the Reading Railroad. That time the cars held only three tons; they were not as big as they are now. That reminds me of what Rolaid C. Luther told me one time. He saw one of those big cars on the railroad, on which some fellow had written:

"Hopper, hopper, don't you cry;  
You'll be a box car by and by."

And that is what they have become. They now hold fifty tons, perhaps a hundred tons; I don't know how much. They are getting almost as big as some of our automobiles that are running on the highways.

That gave the people of this vicinity new courage and a new motive for bringing the county-seat up here, and in 1847 they got a bill through the Legislature, providing for the transference of the county-seat from Orwigsburg to Pottsville. In the meantime, the original court house had been added to, by putting, back of it about thirty feet, a brick building of the same width, with two vaults in it for the purpose of keeping the public records. That was in 1827; and in 1846, nineteen years later, they filled up that gap of thirty feet, so it made the Court House as you see it to-day, down at Orwigsburg.

Now, however, after they had spent that money in 1846 to build the last addition to it, they made conditions in the Act of 1847, and among those conditions were, first, that the people of the County should vote upon the question of changing the location





of the court house. Secondly, that, if changed, the people of Pottsville who wanted it should build it themselves. That was one of the most exciting elections in the history of our county. When the vote was counted, 3551 voted in favor of the removal, and 3092 voted against it, and it carried. Orwigsburg, not satisfied, then raised the question of the constitutionality of the Act; so, in 1848, the Legislature put through another Act, that was assuredly constitutional, which provided for the shifting of the county-seat from Orwigsburg to Pottsville.

About forty years ago, or forty-five years ago, I was coming up the hill to the court house, and an old client of mine (some of you may remember him) told me he came up here to work when he was a young man, and that the roughest place he ever saw in his life was this hill, beginning down at the Grammar School and coming up over this place here. But, by the time these Acts were passed, George Farquhar, a lawyer, the grandfather of Otto, had his house right out here on that corner of the lot, and that is where he lived, and that is where Otto Farquhar's father, Guy E. Farquhar, was born.

They secured this lot and put the new court house here. In the course of time the money was collected. The Act provided that every subscriber had to pay; if he didn't pay, the County Commissioners could sue him.

So the new court house was put up. It was opened on the 8th of December, 1851. Charles W. Hegins was the Judge. Schuylkill County had, in the meantime, been made the Twenty-first Judicial District of Pennsylvania. They got together down town and marched up to what they called "Summit Hill." The court house was on "Summit Hill." It has lost that name. But they got here, and the court was opened and things ran along all right.

It was a magnificent old court house. Colonel Wood's remarks about the acoustic properties of this sort of wall remind me of it. It had splendid acoustics, that old courtroom. It was used not only for court purposes, but conventions met there, Democratic and Republican. That time we didn't have these other kinds. It was a magnificent old courtroom. But the business of the county was growing, so it became necessary to put up a new court house, and they put up the one that stands at the other end of this building, right on the side of the old one, only a few feet south of it. I was nominated as District Attorney in the year that the foundations were laid, in 1889.





That court house was finally finished, and on Thursday, the third of September, 1891, it was opened. We had a very formal proceeding, somewhat after the manner adopted to-day. Judge Pershing, in the course of his remarks, made this sort of prophecy: "The public building will crown this hill for centuries as a monument to the wealth, the enterprise, and the intelligence of the people of this grand county." At that time it was thought that what we called the new court house, in 1891, would answer all purposes for a long, long time to come. But, in the course of time, that court house became so crowded in its offices, so stuffed, that it became inconvenient there to do the public business. Something had to be done, and that has been the case for years.

When the county was formed, the population was less than 7,000. In 1830 it was over 20,000; in 1840 it was 29,053; and in the next decade, the next ten years, because of the Reading Railroad coming in here, and the canal, and the good highway, the Centre Turnpike, this county had increased in its population by 31,660; more than doubled; the greatest gain, by percentage and numerically, in the history of Schuylkill County, occurred in the decade between 1840 and 1850. But from 1891 to 1930, the population of Schuylkill County had increased by about 81,000, and, therefore, the public business was beginning to crowd us so much in the court house that something had to be done.

We all had various ideas as to exactly what should be done. I didn't get all I stood for, or wanted; but I said, "We need this court house. If I can't get the majority, I will go with the majority. We must have the court house; something must be done," because we could not get along the way things were; we could not continue many years with such conditions. Therefore, finally, it was agreed to by the Judges; it was affirmed by the Grand Juries; the thing was demanded and called for; it was agreed to by the County Commissioners, and we have been exceedingly fortunate in the selection of the architects who designed this building, and the Commissioners' selection of the contractor who put it up. I want to say, it is a magnificent building; it is a beautiful building; it is a credit to Pennsylvania, not only to Schuylkill County. I won't say, as Judge Pershing did, that it will crown this hill for centuries, because I don't know how many millions of people there may be in Schuylkill County in forty years more; we may have to have something new then, but I do know it is going to last a long time.





Now let me say just a word or two about the courts. When the first criminal court was held, as I told you, in February, 1812, because we had no Grand Jury or jurors in December of 1811, Judge Porter had before him only seven cases. Yesterday I inquired downstairs and I found that the District Attorney has two hundred and fifty-nine for March. Compare that, if you will: They had thirty-four cases in the civil court. I inquired of the Prothonotary yesterday, and he told me they have 756 for March.

Well, I was going to say, Judge Porter had seven criminal cases. The first one he called was that of Amos Yarnall. Amos was charged with assault and battery, and entered a plea of guilty. Judge Porter sentenced him to pay a fine of fifty cents and the costs of prosecution. The first case tried was that of George Bussert, who was prosecuted by his wife for assault and battery. He was convicted, and the Judge was so hard-hearted that he sentenced him to pay a fine of twenty-five cents and costs. When Judge Hegins opened his first court (and criminal court was always first), in the court house in Pottsville, he had a surety case, in which William Lawton prosecuted Mary Lawton, his wife. Well, you know, the idea of a husband prosecuting his wife for surety seems ridiculous; but William swore that "when Mary had a stick she couldn't be trusted," and the Court had pity on William and directed Mary to pay the costs of prosecution.

The first case tried before a jury in the present court house was on the 8th of September, 1891. I was the District Attorney, and I thought I would call a case in which there would surely be a conviction. It was a case against a party by the name of Stephen Lehr, who had been a hotel keeper in North Union Township. He was charged with violating the liquor law. I don't remember whether he sold to minors or to a fellow drunk, but I do know I had a good, strong case, and I went at it with all the energy I possessed — but the jury acquitted him and put on him only one-third of the costs. I said to a gentleman on the jury, who had been a County Commissioner, "What in the world did you mean by acquitting that fellow?" "Oh," he said, "Dick, you didn't want to convict the first fellow you tried in the new court house, did you?" It only shows how liberal and generous the judges and juries of those days were. It wasn't like a case that was brought before Judge Brumm, when you compare those cases with his case. Judge Brumm told me the story himself, right after it happened. He tried the case in Number One courtroom. The defendant was





an Irishman from out in Cass Township. I forget what the crime was, but Judge Brumm sentenced him to prison for two years and fined him five dollars and directed him to pay the costs of prosecution; and, as the Sheriff was taking him out, he looked up at the Judge and said, "Charley, you're damn liberal with my time." The old Judges were not quite as liberal with culprits cash as Judge Brumm was with that fellow's time.

After they disposed of the question of changing the county-seat, the next question that arose was, What will we do with the old courthouse? In the Acts of 1847 and 1848 it was provided that the County Commissioners could make a deed to the Borough of Orwigsburg, in trust, for those buildings, and the income therefrom was to be used for school purposes. The original jail had been down in the cellar of the hotel; but Judge Rausch, Associate Judge, thought it was too inhuman, so finally they used part of his house for the jail, and in 1814 they built a jail up on Mifflin Street in the Borough of Orwigsburg.

In 1853 the County Commissioners made a deed to the Borough of Orwigsburg, for the old court house and the jail, to be used for school purposes. In the same year that the Borough of Orwigsburg was incorporated, namely, in 1813, there was an Act passed, incorporating the Orwigsburg Academy; and in 1838, when they passed an Act creating a great many female seminaries, they incorporated the Orwigsburg Female Seminary. But, somehow or other, this had passed out of existence; it had not been a great success. So, to meet the question of what disposition to make of the old jail and the old court house, they passed an Act in 1854, creating the Arcadian Institute; made the Burgess of Orwigsburg one of its trustees, and named thirty-two more (What do you think of that, County Commissioners?) — thirty-two trustees for the new institute.

The old stone jail up on Mifflin Street was used as a common schoolhouse. The old courthouse stayed there and the Arcadian Institute went along. Professor Snyder — I forget his first name now — was in charge of it. He was a very learned man; he became highly reputed among the educated people of the world for his theory of tides and his article on tides. But the Arcadian Institute failed; so in 1870 they passed an Act authorizing the sale of the court house. Nobody would buy it, however, so in 1872 they passed another Act, providing that it might be leased; and they appointed three men (I knew two of them, I think); and Solomon R. Moyer, Thomas H. Hoy and several others got together, and induced them to make a lease for the purpose of





converting the old court house into a shoe factory. Later, those men were incorporated as the Orwigsburg Shoe Manufacturing Company. I happen to know these facts because I became their counsel later on. That was the beginning of the making of Orwigsburg a small Lowell. It became a manufacturing town. I don't know what all they made, but from the square that used to be almost as grassy as a field, the grass was worn away by the traffic that was imposed upon that square.

I might say a word about the Judges. Under the Constitution of 1790, all the Judges of the State were appointed by the Governor. They had one Judge in a district, learned in the law; he might have a number of counties, as Judge Porter had four counties in our district, the Third. Then they had two associates unlearned in the law, all appointed by the Governor. That was changed in 1850 by an amendment to the Constitution of 1837 and 1838, so that from then on the Judges were elected. Judge Luther Kidder was the last Judge, appointed by the Governor, to sit in this district; and Charles W. Hegins was elected in 1851 and became the President Judge of the Court.

The Judges who were appointed by the Governor were Robert Porter, David Scott, Samuel D. Franks, Calvin Blythe, James M. Porter, Anson V. Parsons, Nathaniel B. Eldred, and Luther R. Kidder. Those elected (or appointed during some short interim because of the death of a Judge) were Charles W. Hegins, elected in 1851. He died in 1862, and Edwin Owen Parry, whose grandson is now a Judge in Philadelphia, was appointed by the Governor of the State. James Ryon was elected in 1862. Then, in 1871, they passed an Act to increase the number of Common Pleas Judges here, and Henry S. Souther was appointed, but he was defeated in the fall by Thomas H. Walker, who sat for ten years.

In 1867 the Legislature passed an act that was entirely new in the history of criminal legislation in this State, and perhaps, in the country. They created what was known as the First District of Criminal Jurisdiction, by taking the Counties of Schuylkill, Lebanon and Dauphin, and making them one judicial district for the trial of criminal cases; and Judge David B. Green, who had been a Colonel in the Civil War, was appointed, and was subsequently elected. I think there was some politics in it. They put two Republican counties, as strong as Lebanon and Dauphin with Schuylkill, so as to overcome Schuylkill, and Green was elected, and held the office for ten years. But in the Constitution of 1873





that district was abolished, and Judge Green was made a Judge of the Common Pleas; so that then we had three Judges of the Common Pleas, as we have now. That is the only thing that has not increased. We have been putting up new court houses, and the population has been increasing immensely, but we only have three Judges of the Common Pleas now, as we had away back in 1874, nearly sixty years ago.

Following these Judges came Cyrus L. Pershing, Oliver P. Bechtel, Mason Weidman, Richard Henry Koch, William A. Marr, David C. Henning, George J. Wadlinger, Arthur L. Shay, Harry O. Bechtel, Charles N. Brumm, Charles E. Berger, Roy P. Hicks, Clarence A. Whitehouse, Henry Houck and Cyrus M. Palmer.

Those are the Judges who have sat upon the Bench of Schuylkill County; and some still do — Judge Hicks, who is your President Judge; Judge Houck, and Judge Palmer.

These Judges were not all elected, or else I would still be there! Some of them were appointed. I was first appointed in 1897. Then I was elected in 1911, and again in 1921, and sat in all over twenty-one years.

Now I will name some of the Associate Judges. They were Judges George Rahn, Francis S. Hubley, Solomon Foster, Charles Frailey, Brenard Reilly, and Jacob Kline. Now, watch when you are going over the County map. Here you have the Townships of Porter, Blythe, Eldred, Hegins, Ryan and Walker — all named after Judges of the Court. Judge Kidder, who had been a judge of the district has a township over in Carbon County named after him; and that being the fact, I suppose he didn't want any in Schuylkill County named after him. Then there are other townships, named after Associate Judges Hubley, Foster, Frailey, Reilly, Rahn and Kline.

In 1895 the Court of Common Pleas was relieved of a good bit of its work by making Schuylkill County a separate Orphans' Court district, and Thomas H. B. Lyon of Mahanoy City was appointed the first Judge. He was succeeded by Patrick M. Dunn, who died in 1907. MacHenry Wilhelm was then appointed, and was elected three times and served until January of last year, when he resigned owing to ill health, and the present Judge, who spoke to you in accepting the Flag, the Honorable G. Edward Gangloff, was appointed as President Judge of the Orphans' Court.





This constitutes the personnel, thus far, for the administration of justice in Schuylkill County.

I don't want to talk too long to you people; I don't know how much time I am using up. I am afraid I am getting as liberal with your time as "Charley" Brumm was with that Irishman's.

I was coming down on the train from Shenandoah some years ago; I cannot tell when it was; perhaps a dozen or fifteen years ago, and there was some flippant, loud-mouthed fellow who said, possibly for my benefit, I don't know, but loud enough to be heard by everybody in the car, "There's a hell of a lot of law, but damn little justice, in the court house at Pottsville." Well, I wasn't going to introduce myself, or ask for an introduction, but that flippant talker started me to thinking—"a lot of law, but little justice"; and I am thinking of it now.

This continuous building, as at present constituted, is the temple of justice in Schuylkill County. It is a temple into which may come the poorest and the lowest of all human beings to seek justice. Here he need fear no mob; no autocratic power; no muscular superiority—nothing. He may come here hopeful that justice will be done to him. Justice is the rendering to each person what is his due. We have enough justice in the world for the ordinary purposes of business. We do, in our daily lives, render to each other what is due, except occasionally we have differences of opinion as to whether it is due from us or due to us; and then the controversy is on, and we have a suit and come into court.

Now, that fellow said, there is a lot of law, but little justice; and in thinking over it, and having had the experience that I have, he was very much wrong, but he was partly right. Not always is justice done in its administration in the temple such as we have. You have four personal instrumentalities through which justice is obtained. You have the Judge, you have the lawyer, you have the witness, you have the jury. If each of these conceives the truth and is intellectually and otherwise honest and fit, so as to exercise his judgment upon it, justice is done. If any of these four fail, then justice miscarries. If the Judge be corrupt and unfair, justice is very likely to miscarry. If the lawyer suborns his witnesses and his client, and tries to hide the truth and succeeds in it, so that it does not come to the light of day, he defeats justice. If the witness who takes the stand and swears he will tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, lies in the telling of his story, justice will miscarry; and if the jurors are unfair and regardless of the testimony or of the truth of it, or of the law,





justice will miscarry. There is nothing wrong with the Temple of Justice. In theory it is absolutely right. It is merely in the practice, in the exercise of the means by which justice is to be effected, that it miscarries.

In the eleventh month of the fortieth year of their struggle through the wilderness, Moses spoke to the Israelites, and he told them to choose the wise and the understanding as their rulers. He said, "You have become as multitudinous as the stars, and you have become too much of a burden to me. I cannot carry this great mass alone," and he had them select captains of thousands, and captains of hundreds, and captains of fifties and captains of tens, and their chiefs and their rulers; and then he charged the Judges, saying, "Hear the causes between your brethern and judge righteously between every man and his brother and the stranger that is with him. Ye shall not respect persons in judgment; but ye shall hear the small as well as the great. Ye shall not be afraid of the face of man, for the judgment is God's."

That is the standard for the Judges to attain — to judge righteously; to hear with patience, indifferent as to who the people are, whether they form a corporate body or whether they stand in their individual capacity; always to judge righteously, and to fear the face of no man. That is the standard for the Judges; and the standard for the lawyer ought to be that of highest excellence.

I once heard John W. Ryon say that the more religion a man has, the better he is as a lawyer; and I believe it is true. The Bar should be ever mindful, in the admission of its members, that they be men and women of the right character. A lawyer who is untruthful and will surpress the truth is not fit to practice law. The lawyer who will do that, who will win because of falsehood, is, in my mind, worse than the highwayman or footpad who meets you in a dark alley and knocks you down with a bludgeon and takes your money away from you; for the reason that, under the forms of law and under the pretence of trying to do justice, he is doing an injustice, whether it be to another individual, or to a corporation.

Then, witnesses ought to have regard for the oath they take to tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth. If they don't know the truth, they should not undertake to tell it. Truth is the perception of things as they are and the representation of things as they are; and the individual who has not perceived the things as they were or are, and undertakes to represent them otherwise, is not telling the truth.





nobler than those of justice — organizations of love. It is inspiring to think of some far-off centuries as destined to witness the birth, the progress, and the completion of such a blessing for our race."

By this time the reader knows who R. H. Koch is; knows when he was born; where he has lived; how he has spent most of a fairly busy life, and knows the full names of thirty of his ancestors; knows that he has many relatives and that he wrote this book for their information and for the information of their descendants.

It is published for free distribution. There are only one hundred copies of it. They will be given to my children, grandchildren, six public libraries, six historical societies, and some of my blood relatives.

I will quit here; my self-assigned work is done.





## LIST OF DISTRIBUTEES

- 1 ROSCOE R. KOCH.....Haverford, Pa.
- 2 RICHARD HENRY KOCH, 2nd.....Haverford, Pa.
- 3 MARY LOUISE KOCH.....Haverford, Pa.
- 4 HELEN K. BOONE....Wife of Captain Joel T. Boone, U. S. Navy
- 5 SUZANNE BOONE.Daughter of Captain Joel T. Boone, U. S. Navy
- 6 MARSHALL MCKINLEY KOCH.....Denver, Colorado
- 7 RICHARD COLLIER KOCH.....Denver, Colorado
- 8 MARSHALL KOCH.....Denver, Colorado
- 9 JOHN ALLEN KOCH.....Denver, Colorado
- 10 MARJORIE K. HOOD.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 11 JOHN PARKE HOOD, 3rd.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 12 MARJORIE HOOD.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 13 GEORGIANNA JACOBS.....Bala, Pa.
- 14 SALLIE G. JACOBS.....Bala, Pa.
- 15 HOWARD CLANCY KOCH.....Conshohocken, Pa.
- 16 JAMES FRANCIS KOCH.....Hazleton, Pa.
- 17 BENJAMIN DANIEL KOCH.....Conshohocken, Pa.
- 18 BENJAMIN CARL KOCH.....Binghampton, N. Y.
- 19 REV. HAROLD CHRISTIAN KOCH.....Pine Grove, Pa.
- 20 GEORGE RICHARD KOCH.....Conshohocken, Pa.
- 21 HARRY A. KOCH.....Omaha, Nebraska
- 22 RICHARD W. KOCH.....Omaha, Nebraska
- 23 ERNA K. STOVER.....Marietta, Pa.
- 24 SARAH M. FELT.....Reading, Pa.
- 25 OLIVER LENTZ.....Reading, Pa.
- 26 ARENIUS G. KOCH.....Charlotte, N. C.
- 27 SCOTT A. MELOT.....Kutztown, Pa.
- 28 EARL MELOT.....Aberdeen, Md.
- 29 RUTH M. WAHL.....Aberdeen, Md.
- 30 HOWARD K. MOYER.....Waverly, Va.
- 31 MARGARET BUICK.....Philadelphia, Pa.
- 32 ELIZABETH K. BOCK.....Altoona, Pa.
- 33 DR. CHARLES R. MILLER.....Harrisburg, Pa.
- 34 RICHARD MILLER.....Orwigsburg, Pa.
- 35 ELVA KING.....Atlantic City, N. J.
- 36 HARRIET M. GILFORD.....Lansford, Pa.
- 37 FRANKLIN E. MILLER.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 38 EDGAR STANLEY MILLER.....Flemington, N. J.
- 39 SARAH BOWEN.....Pottsville, Pa.





- 40 SUE RICHARDS.....Reading, Pa.
- 41 GERTRUDE NUSS.....Weatherly, Pa.
- 42 NORMAN KOCH.....Weatherly, Pa.
- 43 ESTHER REED.....Quakake, Pa.
- 44 IRA ALLEN HORN.....Hazleton, Pa.
- 45 SADIE FLORENCE STEVENS.....Aliquippa, Pa.
- 46 BLANCHE IRENE WAGNER.....Fremont, Nebraska
- 47 ELIZABETH A. STEPHENS.....Glendale, California
- 48 SUSANNA PYLE.....Pasadena, California
- 49 AMANDA SHELLENBERGER.....Wynnewood, Pa.
- 50 THEODORE W. KOCH.....Evanston, Illinois
- 51 MABEL BERTHA KOCH.....Germantown, Pa.
- 52 AMY E. STEPHENS.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 53 CHARLES H. KOCH.....McKeansburg, Pa.
- 54 DAVID BAUSCHER.....McKeansburg, Pa.
- 55 DR. C. W. BANKES.....Middleport, Pa.
- 56 EMMA SCHOCK SPEIDEL.....Tamaqua, Pa.
- 57 REUBEN A. SCHOCK.....Tamaqua, Pa.
- 58 EMMA B. KRICK.....Shenandoah, Pa.
- 59 CHARLES M. BOLICH.....Allentown, Pa.
- 60 DANIEL M. SMITH.....Mowry, Pa.
- 61 MARGARET A. BOYER.....Pine Grove, Pa.
- 62 JACOB H. BOLICH.....R. D. No. 1, Orwigsburg, Pa.
- 63 FRANCES KEARCHER KEISER.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 64 GRACE YOUNG KISTLER.....Lehighton, Pa.
- 65 BARBARA SCHOCK HEISLER.....Orwigsburg, Pa.
- 66 ANNIE SARA BOCK.....Chicago, Illinois
- 67 CHARLES SCHOCK.....Reevesdale, Pa.
- 68 ANNA M. KEYSER.....Parsons, Kansas
- 69 JOHN ALLEN FEGLEY.....Lewisburg, Pa.
- 70 WILLIAM R. SMITH.....Milton, Pa.
- 71 JOHN ALLEN BECK.....New Columbia, Pa.
- 72 GERTRUDE K. DRESHMAN.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 73 ARTHUR H. DEIBERT.....Washington, D. C.
- 74 CLARA BOCK MORGAN.....New Ringgold, Pa.
- 75 LEVI SCHOCK.....Tamaqua, Pa.
- 76 JOHN EDWARD BUSH.....Elmira, N. Y.
- 77 JAMES H. BOCK.....Muskogee, Oklahoma
- 78 PAUL J. BICKEL.....Cleveland, Ohio





# LIST OF DISTRIBUTEES

327

- 79 PHAROS SCHOCK.....Lewistown, Schuylkill County, Pa.
- 80 CLAUDE BOLICH.....Auburn, Pa.
- 81 J. H. ZERBEY.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 82 CHARLES F. SNYDER.....Sunbury, Pa.
- 83 H. I. SILLIMAN.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 84 STATE TEACHERS' COLLEGE.....Kutztown, Pa.
- 85 POTTSVILLE PUBLIC LIBRARY.....Pottsville, Pa.
- 86 TAMAQUA PUBLIC LIBRARY.....Tamaqua, Pa.
- 87 SHENANDOAH PUBLIC LIBRARY.....Shenandoah, Pa.
- 88 MAHANOEY CITY PUBLIC LIBRARY.....Mahanoy City, Pa.
- 89 STATE LIBRARY.....Harrisburg, Pa.
- 90 LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.....Washington, D. C.
- 91 HISTORICAL SOCIETY OF SCHUYLKILL COUNTY....Pottsville, Pa.
- 92 HISTORICAL SOCIETY OF BERKS COUNTY.....Reading, Pa.
- 93 LANCASTER COUNTY HISTORICAL SOCIETY.....Lancaster, Pa.
- 94 NORTHUMBERLAND COUNTY HISTORICAL SOCIETY..Sunbury, Pa.
- 95 LEBANON COUNTY HISTORICAL SOCIETY.....Lebanon, Pa.
- 96 HISTORICAL SOCIETY OF PENNSYLVANIA.....Philadelphia, Pa.
- 97 PENNSYLVANIA GERMAN SOCIETY.....Norristown, Pa.
- 98 MYSELF
- 99 MYSELF
- 100 MYSELF

---

NOTE:—All the personal distributees, excepting the last one above named, are related to me.

R. H. KOCH.



















